

# Knowing and Seeing

(Revised Edition)

Talks and Questions-and-Answers  
at a Meditation Retreat in Taiwan

by  
The Venerable  
Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw

---

**A G I F T – N O T F O R S A L E**

©(First Edition) W.K.Ng (Private), Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia:  
1999: Free Distribution  
(First Reprint) *WAVE Publications*, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia:  
1999: Free Distribution  
(Second Reprint) Penang Buddhist Association, Penang, Malaysia:  
2000: Free Distribution  
©(Revised Edition) *WAVE Publications*, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia:  
2003: a gift in the public domain, the material cannot be copyrighted.

The material in this book may be reproduced without the author's permission. It is strongly recommended, however, that unauthorized changes and other misrepresentation of the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw's teachings be avoided.

---

**A G I F T – N O T F O R S A L E**

## Contents

	<b>page</b>
<i>Contents in Detail</i> .....	v
<i>Index of Questions from Yogis</i> .....	xi
<i>Bibliographical Abbreviations</i> .....	xvii
<i>List of Charts</i> .....	xviii
<i>Editorial Note</i> .....(Revised Edition).....	xix
<i>Foreword</i> .....(First Edition) .....	xxiii
<i>Editorial Note</i> .....(First Edition) .....	xxv
<b>Introduction</b> .....(Revised Edition).....	1
<b>1: How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing to Absorption</b> .....	37
Questions and Answers 1.....	59
<b>2: How You Develop Absorption on Other Subjects</b> .....	67
Questions and Answers 2.....	85
<b>3: How You Develop the Sublime Abidings and Protective meditations</b> .....	97
Questions and Answers 3.....	115
<b>4: How You Discern Materiality</b> .....	131
Questions and Answers 4.....	175
<b>5: How You Discern Mentality</b> .....	199
Questions and Answers 5.....	215
<b>6: How You See the Links of Dependent-Origination</b> .....	227
Questions and Answers 6.....	237
<b>7: How You Develop the Insight-Knowledges to See Nibbāna</b> .....	255
Questions and Answers 7.....	279
<b>8: The Buddha’s Wishes for His Disciples and His Teachings</b> .....	297
<b>9: The Most Superior Type of Offering</b> .....	317
<i>Appendix 1: Glossary of Untranslated Pāli Terms</i> .....	341
<i>Appendix 2: Contact Addresses</i> .....	345

**Contents**  
(in Detail)

	page
<i>Index of Questions from Yogis</i> .....	xi
Meditation (Practical) .....	xi
Meditation (Doctrinal) .....	xii
Doctrine (Bodhisatta <sup>1</sup> Path etc.) .....	xiii
Sundry .....	xiii
Introduction .....	1
The Buddha's Dispensation .....	1
What Needs to be Fully Realized .....	2
The First and Second Noble Truth .....	4
Knowing and Seeing the First Noble Truth .....	11
How You Know and See the First and Second Noble Truth .....	14
You Develop Concentration .....	14
" Develop the Light of Wisdom .....	15
" Protect Your Concentration .....	16
" Penetrate to Ultimate Reality .....	17
Penetrating to Ultimate Materiality .....	17
—" — Ultimate Mentality .....	19
The Three Purifications .....	24
Knowing and Seeing the Second and Third Noble Truth .....	25
How You Know and See the Third Noble Truth .....	26
You Know and See Dependent Origination .....	29
" Practise Vipassanā .....	31
" Know and See the Unformed .....	33
" Fully Realize the Four Noble Truths .....	34
1: How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing to Absorption .....	37
Introduction .....	37
Why Meditate? .....	37
What is Meditation? .....	38
The Noble Eightfold Path .....	38
How You Develop Concentration .....	41
How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing .....	42
The Nimitta .....	47
How You Balance the Five Controlling Faculties .....	50
—" — Seven Factors of Enlightenment .....	54
How You Attain Jhāna .....	55

<sup>1</sup> For untranslated Pāli, please see Appendix 1, p.341

Questions and Answers 1 <sup>1</sup> .....	59
2: How You Develop Absorption on Other Subjects .....	67
How You Develop the Thirty-Two Parts of the Body .....	67
The Three Entrances to Nibbāna .....	69
How You Develop Skeleton Meditation .....	70
—" — the Ten Kasinas .....	73
The Colour Kasinas .....	73
How You Develop the White Kasina .....	73
—" — Remaining Colour Kasinas .....	76
How You Develop the Earth Kasina .....	77
—" — Water Kasina .....	77
—" — Fire Kasina .....	78
—" — Wind Kasina .....	78
—" — Light Kasina .....	78
—" — Space Kasina .....	79
The Four Immaterial Jhānas .....	79
How You Develop the Base of Boundless Space .....	79
—" — Base of Boundless Consciousness .....	81
—" — Base of Nothingness .....	81
—" — Base of Neither-perception-nor-non-perception .....	82
Questions and Answers 2 <sup>1</sup> .....	85
3: How You Develop the Sublime Abidings and Protective meditations .....	97
Introduction .....	97
How You Develop Lovingkindness .....	97
Introduction .....	97
How You Develop Lovingkindness Person by Person .....	99
—" — Break Down the Barriers .....	102
The Twenty-Two Categories .....	103
How You Develop the Unspecified and Specified .....	104
—" — Ten Directional Categories .....	105
How You Develop Compassion .....	106
—" — Appreciative Joy .....	107
—" — Equanimity .....	107
—" — The Four Protective Meditations .....	108
How You Develop Recollection-of-the-Buddha .....	109
—" — Foulness Meditation .....	111
—" — Recollection of Death .....	111
Summary .....	112
Questions and Answers 3 <sup>1</sup> .....	115

<sup>1</sup> Please see index of questions from yogis, p. xi

<b>4: How You Discern Materiality</b> .....	131
Introduction.....	131
Three Types of Rūpa-Kalāpa.....	132
The Elements of the Three Types of Rūpa-Kalāpa.....	132
Materiality's Four Types of Origin.....	135
Kamma-Produced Materiality.....	136
Temperature- —" —.....	139
Consciousness- —" —.....	138
Nutriment- —" —.....	140
The Beginning of Vipassanā.....	142
How You Develop Four-Elements Meditation.....	142
How You See the Twelve Characteristics.....	144
The Ten Ways to Develop Your Concentration.....	148
How You See Ultimate Materiality.....	150
Seeing the Body Transparent-element as One Block.....	150
How You See the Rūpa-kalāpas.....	151
(Benefits of Concentration).....	151
Transparent and Opaque Rūpa-kalāpas.....	152
How You Analyse the Rūpa-kalāpas.....	152
How You See the Four Elements.....	152
—" — Colour.....	155
—" — Odour.....	155
—" — Flavour.....	156
—" — Nutritive Essence.....	157
—" — Life-Faculty- and Sex-materiality.....	157
How You Analyse Transparent-elements Materiality.....	159
All the Elements in a Sense-Organ.....	161
How You See Consciousness-Produced Materiality.....	163
—" — Temperature- —" —.....	164
—" — Nutriment- —" —.....	164
Summary.....	167
Table 1: The Twenty-Eight Material Elements.....	169
—" —2: The Basic Elements of the Eye.....	171
—" —3: —" — Body.....	172
—" —4: —" — Heart.....	173
Questions and Answers 4 <sup>1</sup> .....	175
<b>5: How You Discern Mentality</b> .....	199
Introduction.....	199
The Four Stages to Discerning Mentality.....	200
How You Discern Jhāna Cognitive-processes.....	201
—" — Sensual Realm Cognitive-processes.....	204
Wise and Unwise Attention.....	204

<sup>1</sup> Please see index of questions from yogis, p. xi

How You Discern Mind-Door Cognitive-processes.....	205
—" — Five-Door Cognitive-processes.....	206
How You Discern External Mentality.....	208
Table 5: The Five-Door Cognitive Process.....	211
Table 6: The Mind-Door Cognitive Process.....	213
Questions and Answers 5 <sup>1</sup> .....	215
<b>6: How You See the Links of Dependent-Origination</b> .....	227
Introduction.....	227
The Fifth Method.....	228
The Three Rounds of Dependent-Origination.....	228
How You Discern Your Past Life.....	229
Examples.....	232
What a Female Yogi Discerned.....	232
—" —a Male Yogi Discerned.....	232
How You Discern More Past Lives.....	233
How You Discern Your Future.....	234
The First Method.....	235
Questions and Answers 6 <sup>1</sup> .....	237
<b>7: How You Develop the Insight-Knowledges to See Nibbāna</b> .....	255
Introduction.....	255
How You Develop the Knowledge of Comprehension.....	256
—" — Promote Your Insight Knowledge.....	258
The Forty Perceptions.....	258
The Seven Ways for Materiality.....	260
The Seven Ways for Mentality.....	262
How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away.....	264
Introduction.....	264
How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away According to the Fifth Method of Dependent Origination.....	265
The Observation of the Nature of Arising.....	265
—" — Passing-Away.....	266
—" — Arising And Passing-Away.....	268
How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away According to the First Method of Dependent Origination.....	269
How You Overcome the Ten Imperfections of Insight.....	271
—" — Develop the Knowledge of Dissolution.....	272
You Know the First Eleven Knowledges.....	273
You Know and See Nibbāna.....	274
You Review Your Knowledge.....	276

<sup>1</sup> Please see index of questions from yogis, p. xi

Questions and Answers 7 <sup>1</sup> .....	279
<b>8: The Buddha's Wishes for His Disciples and His Teachings.....</b>	<b>297</b>
The Buddha Relinquishes the Will to Live .....	297
The Buddha Declares His Wishes .....	298
Our Duty as Buddhists .....	300
How We May Benefit the World.....	300
How We May Show Our Faith .....	301
What We Must Learn and Practise .....	302
The Basis for Practice.....	302
Samatha and Vipassanā Meditation .....	305
The Buddha's Exhortations to the Saṅgha .....	310
The Buddha's Advice to Bhikkhus.....	312
<b>9: The Most Superior Kind of Offering.....</b>	<b>317</b>
Introduction.....	317
The Disciple's Debts to His Teacher.....	318
Opportunities Not to Be Missed .....	321
The Fourteen Types of Personal Offering .....	323
" Seven Kinds of Offering to the Saṅgha .....	326
" Four Kinds of Purification of Offering .....	327
" Six Qualities of an Immeasurable Offering .....	331
Offerings at Retreat.....	333
The Giver's Wishes.....	334
The Most Superior of All Worldly Offerings.....	335
How You Make a Most Superior Offering.....	338
<i>Appendix 1: Glossary of Untranslated Pāli .....</i>	<i>341</i>
<i>Appendix 2: Contact Addresses.....</i>	<i>345</i>

## Index of Questions from Yogis

(Arranged sequentially according to subject.)

The first number refers to the talk; the second number to the question.

e.g. **1.2** = *Questions-&-Answers* No. 1, Question No.2

**2.1** = *Questions-&-Answers* No. 2, Question No.1

### Meditation (Practical)

page

1.1: How do we, in the four stages of <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing), decide when to go from one stage to another?.....	59
1.2: Is it necessary, in meditation, to have a nimitta? .....	59
1.4: Where does the ( <i>ānāpāna</i> ) nimitta come from? What makes it appear?.....	62
2.1: How should beginners balance the faculties ( <i>indriya</i> ) of concentration and wisdom? How should they practise wisdom in <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing)? .....	85
2.2: Why don't we, after attaining the fourth jhāna, go straight to discern the five aggregates, their nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self, and attain Nibbāna? Why do we before attaining Nibbāna need to practise meditation on the thirty-two parts of body, skeleton, white kasiṇa, four elements, materiality, mentality, dependent-origination, and Vipassanā? .....	86
2.3: Why, after having discerned materiality and mentality, must one practise the first and fifth methods of dependent-origination ( <i>paṭ iccasamuppāda</i> )? What are the first and fifth methods? .....	92
3.5: Under what conditions does a yogi drop, or regress from absorption to access concentration? Under what conditions does a yogi in access concentration attain absorption concentration? .....	121
3.7: While meditating, images of events from more than thirty years back, which the yogi had forgotten, appear. Is this due to lack of mindfulness, which lets the mind leave the object? .....	122
3.11: Before we attain the fourth jhāna, and eradicate ignorance ( <i>avijjā</i> ), many unwholesome thoughts still arise due to bad habits. For example, in our daily life (outside a meditation retreat) we know that greed or hatred arises. Can we use foulness meditation ( <i>asubha</i> ), or lovingkindness meditation ( <i>mettā bhāvanā</i> ) to remove them? Or should we ignore them and just concentrate on our meditation subject, and let them disappear automatically? .....	126
4.2: After finishing the meditation course, can a yogi attain Path and Fruition Knowledges ( <i>magga nāṇa</i> and <i>phala nāṇa</i> )? If not, why not? .....	177
4.4: Can a yogi who has finished the course, but not yet attained Nibbāna, attain the Knowledge Standing on Phenomena ( <i>dhammāṅgi hīti nāṇa</i> )? If so, can it regress? .....	184
4.5: Can one attain supramundane states with only access concentration? .....	186
4.6: Can one with only momentary concentration ( <i>khaṇika samādhi</i> ), practise mindfulness of feeling ( <i>vedānupassanā satipañhāna</i> ) to attain supramundane states? .....	186
4.9: Are the methods for <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing) and four-elements meditation the same? Why must we practise four-elements meditation only after <i>ānāpānasati</i> ? .....	194
4.10: Could the Sayadaw please explain the light experienced in meditation scientifically? .....	194

5.2: Which is easiest and quickest for the attainment of Nibbāna: using theory to perceive impermanence, suffering, and non-self, or using concentration to discern ultimate phenomena ( <i>paramattha dhamma</i> )?.....	219
6.1: How should a yogi who practises <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing), but who cannot see a nimitta, check himself physically and mentally, so that he can improve and enter jhāna? In other words, what are the conditions needed to have a nimitta?.....	237
6.2: Does the sitting posture affect the ability for beginners to concentrate, and enter jhāna? There are many yogis who sit on a small stool to meditate; can they enter jhāna? .....	237
6.3: What is the object of the fourth <i>ānāpānā</i> jhāna? If there is no breath in the fourth jhāna, how can there be a nimitta? .....	238
6.4: Can one enter an immaterial jhāna attainment ( <i>arūpa jhāna samāpatti</i> ), or practise lovingkindness meditation directly from <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing)? .....	238
6.10: Can one practise Vipassanā while in the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception attainment ( <i>nevasaññā-nāsaññāyatana samāpatti</i> )? In which sutta or other source can the answer be found? .....	249
7.4: Does work for the Saṅgha affect one's meditation? Does it depend on the individual, or can one achieve a certain degree of concentration, after which work has no effect?.....	280
7.9: How does Vipassanā purify view ( <i>dīṭṭhi visuddhi</i> )? What kinds of defilement ( <i>kilesa</i> ) are removed by Vipassanā? .....	285
7.11: How should a yogi practise wise attention ( <i>yoniso manasikāra</i> ) in his daily life, and how in his Samatha-Vipassanā practice? .....	288
7.16: How to overcome the uninterested and bored mind state that occurs during long periods of meditation, or staying alone in the forest? Is this kind of mind state an unwholesome dhamma?.....	292

### Meditation (Doctrinal)

1.5: What are the seven stages of purification and sixteen insight-knowledges?.....	62
3.1: In <i>ānāpānasati</i> (mindfulness-of-breathing), there are the parikamma-nimitta, the uggaha-nimitta, and the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta. What is the parikamma-nimitta? Is the parikamma-nimitta always grey? What is the difference between the parikamma-nimitta and the uggaha-nimitta?.....	115
3.2: What is the difference between access concentration and absorption concentration? .....	117
3.3: Under what conditions, or in what state, can we say that a meditation experience is access concentration or absorption concentration? .....	120
3.4: Is there access concentration, as well as absorption concentration at each of the four jhānas? What are their characteristics?.....	120
3.9: Is it necessary when discerning the twelve characteristics in four-elements meditation, to start with hardness, roughness, and heaviness in that sequence? Can one choose to start with any one of the characteristics?.....	125
3.13: What is the difference between mundane jhānas ( <i>lokiya jhāna</i> ) and supramundane jhānas ( <i>lokuttara jhāna</i> )? .....	128
7.7: When a yogi is able to discern rūpa-kalāpas or ultimate materiality, will his mind ( <i>citta</i> ) and view ( <i>dīṭṭhi</i> ) change?.....	285
7.8: How does concentration purify the mind ( <i>citta visuddhi</i> )? What kinds of defilement ( <i>kilesa</i> ) are removed by concentration?.....	285

**7.12:** What is the difference between attention (*manasikāra*) and practising the seven enlightenment factors (*bojjhaṅga*)? .....289

**7.13:** Could the Sayadaw please explain the diagram? Is it necessary, in this system of meditation, to practise the more than thirty types of meditation subject (*kammaṭ ṭ hāna*)? What are the benefits in doing so?.....289

**7.15:** Is the discerning mind that discerns mentality-materiality itself included in mentality-materiality? Is it included in wisdom? .....291

## Doctrine (Bodhisatta Path etc.)

**4.1:** Is a bodhisatta, including Arimetteyya Bodhisatta, a worldling (*puthujjana*)? If Arimetteyya Bodhisatta is a worldling like us, then at the time for him to come down to become Metteyya Buddha, what is the difference between the conditions for him to become a Buddha and for us?.....175

**4.3:** A yogi who has finished the meditation course, but not yet attained the Path Knowledge (*maggañāṇa*) and Fruition Knowledge (*phalañāṇa*), if his concentration drops, will his insight-knowledge also drop? Can he be reborn in a woeful state (*apāya*)?.....179

**4.7:** The Buddha was a great arahant. What was the difference between Him, and disciples like the Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna who were also arahants? .....192

**5.4:** (The following questions are all covered by the same answer.) .....221

Was there a bodhisatta during The Buddha's time? If so, did he attain a path or was he just a worldling (*puthujjana*)?

Why can a noble one (*ariya*) not become a bodhisatta?

Can a disciple (*sāvaka*) change to become a bodhisatta? If not, why not?

When by following the Sayadaw's teaching one is able to attain the Path and Fruition Knowledges of Stream-Entry (*sotāpatti maggañāṇa* and *sotāpatti phalañāṇa*), can one choose to not do so, because of a desire and vow to practise the bodhisatta path?

**5.5:** Is it possible to practise the path to liberation (*vimuttimaggā*) and the path of bodhisatta [path to Buddhahood] at the same time? If so, what is the method?.....223

**5.6:** Is this method [of meditation] for liberation only, or is it also for the bodhisatta path? .....224

**6.9:** An arahant can also give a definite prophecy; what is the definition of definite prophecy here? In which sutta or other source can this information be found?.....249

## Sundry

**1.3:** Some say that while practising *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) their soul goes out of the body. Is that true, or are they on the wrong path? .....60

**3.6:** When a person dies, a kamma-nimitta may arise because of past wholesome or unwholesome kamma. Is this phenomenon similar to that which occurs during meditation, when images of past events, which the yogi had forgotten, appear? .....122

**3.8:** If, when dying, a person has strong mindfulness, can he prevent a kamma sign (*kamma nimitta*) of previous unwholesome or wholesome kamma from arising? .....123

**3.10:** Practising four-elements meditation enables one to balance the four elements in the body. One may at some time get sick because the four elements are out of balance. When

one is sick, can one practise four-elements meditation with strong mindfulness to cure the sickness?.....126

**3.12:** How does the bhavaṅga function in the sensual realms, fine-material realms, immaterial realms and supramundane realm? Would the Sayadaw please explain with examples? .....127

**4.8:** What is the 'intermediate life' (*antara bhava*)?.....193

**4.11:** Can those who have discerned the thirty-two parts of the body see them in someone else, with their eyes open? .....196

**5.1:** The eight attainments (*samāpatti*) make it possible to attain the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāmarūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*), and to see their subtle arising and passing-away, so as to become disgusted with them, and attain the Path Knowledge (*maggañāṇa*). Are there, apart from this, other benefits to the eight attainments? .....215

**5.3:** The round of rebirths (*samsāra*) is without beginning or end. Beings are also infinite in number, so those who have been our mother are infinite too. How can we develop loving-kindness by contemplating that all beings have been our mother? Can we attain loving-kindness *jhāna* (*mettā jhāna*) by contemplating that all beings have been our mother? ..221

**5.7:** Do all the good and bad kammās of an arahant mature prior to his Parinibbāna? ..224

**5.8:** After His enlightenment, did The Buddha say, 'Originally all beings have the Tathāgata's wisdom and other qualities'? .....225

**5.9:** Is the arahant's perception of voidness (*suññata*) in his own five aggregates the same as his perception of voidness in outside inanimate things? Is Nibbāna the same as entering voidness? .....225

**5.10:** Are all suttas taught by The Buddha only? .....225

**5.11:** Since we cannot see The Buddha while in concentration, can we see Him by psychic powers to discuss Dhamma with Him? .....226

**6.5:** How can one decide when to die, that is, choose the time of one's death? .....239

**6.6:** If one day we were to die in an accident, for example in an air crash, could our mind at that time 'leave' so that we would not have any bodily pain? How? Can one, depending on the power of one's meditation, be without fear at that time, and be liberated? What degree of concentration is required? .....240

**6.7:** After attaining the path and fruition, a noble (*ariya*) does not regress to become a worldling (*puthujjana*), this is a law of nature (*sammatta niyāma*). Similarly, one who has received a definite prophecy cannot abandon his bodhisatta practice. This too is a natural fixed law. But The Buddha declared that everything is impermanent. Are these fixed laws in accordance with the law of impermanence?.....242

**6.8:** When an ordinary disciple has practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition, the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, or the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, he will not be reborn on any of the four woeful realms. Even if he loses his Samatha-Vipassanā due to negligence, the kamma of having practised Samatha-Vipassanā still exists. The '*Sotānugata Sutta*' says also that he will attain Nibbāna quickly. So, why did the Sayadaw, in the Question-and-Answer session of June 2nd, say that a bodhisatta who has received a definite prophecy from a Buddha can, even if he has practised meditation up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, be reborn in a woeful state? In which sutta is this mentioned? .....247

**6.11:** Can a person who is mentally abnormal, hears voices, has schizophrenia, a brain disease, stroke or malfunction of the brain and nerves, practise this type of meditation? If he can, what kinds of precaution should he take? .....250

6.12: If a person, who does not have good human relations, succeeds in attaining the fourth jhāna, will this improve his skill in communicating with others? Can attaining jhāna correct such problems? .....	252
7.1: What is the difference between perception ( <i>saññā</i> ) and the perception aggregate ( <i>saññākhandha</i> ), and between feeling ( <i>vedāna</i> ) and the feeling aggregate ( <i>vedānakhandha</i> )? .....	279
7.2: To which associated mental factors do memory, inference and creativity belong? They are part of the five aggregates, but how do they become suffering ( <i>dukkha</i> )? .....	279
7.3: Which associated mental factor does 'Taking an object' involve? .....	280
7.5: Can a person who develops the jhānas with evil intent benefit from attaining them? And how about a person who has, for example, spent the money of a Saṅgha for his personal use, and does not think it is wrong. When he attains jhāna up to the fourth jhāna, does his mind or view change? .....	281
7.6: What is the difference between rūpa-kalāpas and ultimate materiality ( <i>paramattha rūpa</i> )? .....	284
7.10: What is the difference between <i>citta</i> and <i>dīṭṭhi</i> ? .....	286
7.14: Can a hating mind produce many generations of temperature-produced octad-kalāpas ( <i>utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa</i> ), and make the eyes flash? .....	291
7.17: Could the Sayadaw please give an example of a wish that is not associated with ignorance ( <i>avijjā</i> ), craving ( <i>taṇhā</i> ) and clinging ( <i>upādāna</i> )? .....	293
7.18: If the five aggregates are non-self, then who, Sayadaw, is giving a Dhamma talk? In other words, if the five aggregates are non-self, no Sayadaw is giving a Dhamma talk. So is there a relationship between the five aggregates and the self? .....	293
7.19: The Buddha taught the Snake Mantra to bhikkhus. Is chanting the Snake Mantra the same as loving-kindness? Is chanting a mantra a Brahmanic tradition brought into Buddhism? .....	294



**Bibliographical Abbreviations etc.**

(Used in Source References)

A	<i>Aṅguttara Nikāya</i> .....	(Numerical Collection)
AA.	—”—	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> ..... (Commentary) <sup>1</sup>
Dhs.	<i>Dhamma Saṅgaṇī</i> .....	(Dhamma Compendium)
Dh.	<i>Dhamma Pada</i> .....	(Dhamma Path)
DhA.	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> .....	(Commentary)
D.	<i>Dīgha Nikāya</i> .....	(Long Collection)
DA.	—”—	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> ..... (Commentary)
M.	<i>Majjhima Nikāya</i> .....	(Middle-Length Collection)
MA.	—”—	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> ..... (Commentary)
Ps.	<i>Paṭisambhidā Magga</i> .....	(Discrimination Path)
S.	<i>Saṃyutta Nikāya</i> .....	(Connected Collection)
SA.	—”—	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> ..... (Commentary)
Sn.	<i>Sutta Nīpāta</i> .....	(Sutta Book)
U.	<i>Udāna</i> .....	(Inspiration)
Vbh.	<i>Vibhaṅga</i> .....	(Analysis)
VbhA.	—”—	<i>Aṭṭhakathā</i> ..... (Commentary)
VbhTi.	—”—	<i>Ṭīkā</i> ..... (Sub-commentary) <sup>2</sup>
Vs.	<i>Visuddhi Magga</i> .....	(Commentary) ..... (Purification Path) <sup>3</sup>
VsTi.	—”—	<i>Ṭīkā</i> ..... (Sub-commentary)

<sup>1</sup> The Pāli titles for the commentaries are: AA = *Manorathapūraṇī*; DA = *Sumaṅgalavilāsīnī*; MA = *Papañcasūdanī*; SA = *Sāratthappakāsinī*; VbhA = *Sammohavinodanī*

<sup>2</sup> The Pāli titles for the sub-commentaries are: VbhTi = *Mūla-Ṭīkā*; VsTi = *Paramattha Mañjūsā*

<sup>3</sup> *Visuddhi Magga (Purification Path)* is a commentary, and when the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw refers to the ‘*Visuddhi Magga* Commentary’, he is referring to the commentary to the *Visuddhimagga* = the sub-commentary.

Source references are according to the standard divisions in the Pāli: Collection • Book • Section • Chapter • Sutta.

For example:<sup>1</sup>

**M.I.ii.2**

M	=	<i>Majjhima Nikāya</i> .....	(Middle-Length Suttas)
I	=	Book 1	‘ <i>Mūla Paṇṇāsa Pāḷi</i> ’ ..... (‘Root Fifty Texts’)
i	=	Chapter 1	‘ <i>Mūlapariyāya Vagga</i> ’ ..... (‘Root Series Chapter’)
2	=	Sutta 2	‘ <i>Sabbāsava Sutta</i> ’ ..... (‘All the Taints Sutta’)

**S.III.I.i.5**

S	=	<i>Saṃyutta Nikāya</i> .....	(Connected Suttas)
III	=	Book 3	‘ <i>Khandha Vagga</i> ’ ..... (‘Aggregates Book’)
I	=	Section 1	‘ <i>Khandha Saṃyutta</i> ’ ..... (‘Aggregates Section’)
i	=	Chapter 1	‘ <i>Nakulapitu Vagga</i> ’ ..... (‘Nakulapita Chapter’)
5	=	Sutta 5	‘ <i>Samādhi Sutta</i> ’ ..... (‘Concentration Sutta’)

**Vs.viii B223/Ñ90**

Vs	=	<i>Visuddhi Magga</i> .....	(Purification Path)
viii	=	Chapter 8	‘ <i>Ānāpānasati Kathā</i> ’ .. (‘Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation’)
B223	=	§ 223	..... (Venerable B-uddhaghosa’s Pāli Text)
Ñ90	=	§ 90	..... (Venerable Ñ-ānamoli’s Path of Purification)

**Charts**

	page
<b>Table 1:</b> The Twenty-Eight Material Elements .....	169
<b>Table 2:</b> The Basic Elements of the Eye .....	171
<b>Table 3:</b> The Basic Elements of the Body .....	172
<b>Table 4:</b> The Basic Elements of the Heart .....	173
<b>Table 5:</b> The Five-Door Cognitive Process .....	211
<b>Table 5:</b> The Mind-Door Cognitive Process .....	213

<sup>1</sup> Please note also references to section numbers in *Visuddhi Magga* (third example).

## Editorial Note

(Revised Edition)

The first edition of *Knowing and Seeing*, a collection of talks given in Taiwan by the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw<sup>1</sup> was, in spite of the best intentions, published with regrettably very many flaws and errors. They were almost only of language, which could not unfortunately but have an adverse effect on the contents. An attempt has been made, with this revised edition, not only to put things right, but to give the entire text an overhaul, so as to make it less inaccessible to newcomers.

Endeavours have thus been made to streamline the language (one thing referred to by only one term: as far as possible), and on the one hand to remove unnecessary repetitions,<sup>2</sup> and other excess text (incl. the many hyphens); on the other hand to add information where deemed necessary (charts, footnotes, source references, a detailed table of contents, and an index of the questions from meditators),<sup>3</sup> and in some cases even to re-arrange the text. Furthermore, the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw added an introduction to the entire course of meditation, with continual reference to pertinent Pāḷi Texts.<sup>4</sup>

The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw has also made adjustments in terminology, for example, ‘cognitive-process’ for *citta vīthi* (instead of ‘thought-process’), and ‘consciousness’ as a countable noun (one consciousness, two consciousnesses) has been adopted. Capitalization of ‘the Buddha’ to ‘The Buddha’ has been adopted as an orthographical sign of respect, since the Asian appellations (which can be translated as *Lord* or *His Majesty King* etc. *Buddha*) are in standard English too restricted in meaning. A

<sup>1</sup> As there are several ‘Pa-Auk’ monasteries, the Venerable Pa-Auk Sayadaw has adopted *Tawya* (Forest) into his name, to specify which one he belongs to.

<sup>2</sup> From an English point-of-view, Burmese (and Pāḷi) are pleonastic languages.

<sup>3</sup> This includes an introduction to Talk 4 ‘How You Discern Materiality’.

<sup>4</sup> Written by a ‘ghost-writer’ under the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s close guidance and supervision.

Burmese element of proper usage has also been added, namely, the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s reference to himself in the first person plural instead of the first person singular (*we* and *our* instead of *I* and *mine*): in Burmese, it is considered immodest to refer to oneself in the first person singular.<sup>1</sup>

For this edition too the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw was consulted, and again he read through the material, adding comments, further explanations, making corrections etc.

Given some of the responses to the first editions of this book, and to the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s teachings as a whole, the following four points need perhaps be made.

1. Although the Pa-Auk system may be used as a convenient term to refer to the teachings of the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw, there is no such thing. The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s system of instruction is by no means ‘his’. It is borne out by, drawn directly and unadulterated from, and in strict accordance with, the authoritative texts of the Theravāda tradition:<sup>2</sup> the ancient Theravāda Canon, Commentaries and Sub-Commentaries: most notably the ancient commentary and meditation manual, the *Visuddhi Magga*.<sup>3</sup>
2. Yogis who have taken the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw or one of his authorized teachers as teacher have and do fully or partly put into practice the system of instruction that

<sup>1</sup> Modesty by way of the first person plural may be found in also the Commentaries to the Pāḷi Texts. Furthermore, as one of the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s disciples has pointed out, since the Sayadaw’s teaching is nothing other than what is stated in the Pāḷi Texts, his voice is in fact not his own: it is the voice of the tradition handed down through generations of bhikkhus, harking back to the bhikkhus who received instruction from The Buddha Himself.

<sup>2</sup> Attention to this was drawn already in the first edition by quoting the Venerable Buddhaghosa’s and the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw’s own words on the matter (now given on the left inside cover). Please see also the source references inserted throughout the talks.

<sup>3</sup> *Visuddhi Magga (Purification Path)*: authoritative and extensive instruction manual on meditation, compiled from ancient, orthodox Sinhalese translations of the even earlier Pāḷi Commentaries (predominantly ‘The Ancients’ (*Porāṇā*), dating back to the time of The Buddha and the First Council), as well as later Sinhalese Commentaries, translated back into Pāḷi by Indian scholar monk Venerable Buddhaghosa (approx. 500 A.C.)

is presented here. The Pāḷi Texts (Vinaya, Suttas and Abhidhamma) are, says the Venerable Pa-Auk Sayadaw, aimed entirely at practice. As advised by The Buddha, learning (*pariyatti*) goes hand-in-hand with practice (*paṭipatti*), practical experience of that knowledge, which leads eventually to realization (*paṭivedha*) of it.

3. The main talks are not descriptive so much as prescriptive. Nevertheless, the book is not to be regarded as a manual but as an overview.
4. Yogis who take the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw or one of his authorized teachers as their teacher should know that there are no hard and fast rules about how he guides the individual yogi: in each case the yogi's preferences, strengths and weaknesses etc. are taken into account. The individual yogi's practice may therefore, in sequence and detail, very well differ from what is presented here.

Once again, the editors beg forgiveness from their readers and from their teacher, the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw, for whatever scratches that still remain after this final polish.

May absolutely all parties involved in the production of this material, from its very inception, reap much merit from their labours. May all the merit of that work; the merit of reading these talks by future readers; the merit of the meditation assisted and perhaps engendered by these talks; and the merit of the attainments, mundane and supramundane, attained thereby all go towards keeping the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw healthy and happy for long to come.

Editors  
of Pa-Auk Forest Monastery

## Foreword

(First Edition)

As most of us know, the three trainings of morality, concentration, and wisdom, are the three stages of Buddhist practice.

Through the practice of the three trainings, an ordinary person can attain supreme Nibbāna,<sup>1</sup> and become a noble one.

The *Visuddhi Magga* compiled by the Venerable Buddhaghosa is an exposition of the three trainings. It is based on the Pāḷi texts and commentaries, and explains the seven stages of purification, and sixteen insight-knowledges. But how to attain them has been a difficult question for all Buddhists over many generations. For this, we are fortunate to have the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw of Pa-Auk Forest Monastery. His teaching is the same as, indeed it is in much more detail than, what is described in the *Visuddhi Magga*. Based on the very same sources, the Pāḷi texts, commentaries and the *Visuddhi Magga* itself, the Sayadaw teaches yogis, step by step, how to attain those stages of purification, and insight-knowledges.

The goal of the teaching at Pa-Auk Forest Monastery is, in accordance with the ancient texts, to realize Nibbāna in this very life. To achieve that end, yogis must comprehend all mentality-materiality, also known as the five aggregates, as impermanence, suffering, and non-self. As for the objects of Vipassanā meditation, they are not only the internal and external five aggregates, but also the five aggregates of past, future and present, gross and subtle, superior and inferior, far and near. Only after comprehending all of them penetratively as impermanence, suffering, and non-self, can yogis attain the noble paths and fruitions, and thereby gradually eradicate or reduce various defilements. After having seen Nibbana for the first time, yogis can see clearly that they have attained the first path and fruition; what defilements they have abandoned; and what defilements they still need to aban-

<sup>1</sup> For untranslated Pāḷi, please see Appendix I, p.341

don.<sup>1</sup> Then they continue to practise Vipassanā to attain the higher paths and fruitions up to Arahantship, whereby they are no longer subject to rebirth, and will attain final Nibbāna after death.

It is very fortunate that I still have the opportunity, in this age wherein Buddhism is degenerating, to practise the original system of Buddhist meditation. It makes me feel as if I were back in the Buddha's time. For this I am very grateful to the Sayadaw, who spent many years practising in the forest, and studying the Pāḷi texts and commentaries to rediscover this teaching. It is out of compassion that he sacrifices much of his time to teach meditation for the benefit of humankind. His teaching is markedly clear and detailed throughout the seven stages of purification. This is a rare teaching and hard to come by, not only in Taiwan, but in the whole world.

From April to June, the Sayadaw conducted a two-month meditation retreat for the first time in Taiwan, at Yi-Tung Temple. Among many Taiwanese, his teaching will definitely arouse interest in the original meditation. It is also a great help to fill in some gaps in Mahāyāna meditation. Hopefully the reader will, after reading the profound talks, and answers to questions, given in Taiwan by the Sayadaw, be able to have a deeper understanding of the Buddha's teachings.

May the true Dhamma endure long. May the publication of this book help provide a refuge for those who wish to know what the rounds of birth-and-death are, and who wish to attain liberation. May this book guide more people onto the right path to liberation, so that they can realize for themselves: 'All formations are impermanent, all dhammas are non-self, and Nibbāna is utterly peaceful.' To see that is certainly not something impracticable, but something absolutely practical. Only one who sees it knows it, and only one who experiences it can enjoy the bliss of the Dhamma.

A Taiwanese Bhikshuni<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For details on how the yogi sees this, please see further p.276

<sup>2</sup> Yogi at said retreat, who then went to Pa-Auk Tawya Monastery to continue.

**Editorial Note**

(First Edition)

The talks in this book were given by the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw of Pa-Auk Forest Monastery, Pa-Auk, Mawlamyine, Myanmar, while he conducted a two-month meditation retreat at Yi-Tung Temple, Sing Choo City, Taiwan. In the course of those two months, apart from giving daily meditation instructions to individual yogis, the Sayadaw read seven main talks, which had been prepared at Pa-Auk prior to the retreat. Those talks were interspersed with seven Question-and-Answer talks; the questions having been given beforehand by the yogis at the retreat, and the answers then having been likewise prepared beforehand by the Sayadaw. The Sayadaw read a further two talks. One was read to the general public on the occasion of Vesākha day (the anniversary of the Buddha's birth, enlightenment and final passing away). The other was read at the end of the retreat, and was the traditional talk on offerings, for the chief donor, the abbess of Yi-Tung Temple, other donors, and the organizers and helpers at the retreat. All sixteen talks had been prepared in English, and then read in English by the Sayadaw. For the benefit of the audience, who were all Chinese, the talks were also translated beforehand into Chinese, and the Chinese read concurrently with the Sayadaw's reading.

The talks are concerned mainly with the Sayadaw's principal approach to insight meditation: to practise tranquillity meditation first, after which to use it as a vehicle for insight meditation. The Sayadaw teaches also pure-insight meditation, which is why he provides an exposition of the orthodox instructions for both methods.

The talks, as they appear here, are not word-perfect versions of the talks as they were given in Taiwan. This is because the Sayadaw decided that the material should be edited prior to publication. To that end, the Sayadaw requested that the language and contents be changed in any way deemed necessary, and himself added further details etc. The Sayadaw was very frequently con-

sulted during the entire editing process, and his approval secured for changes other than those of only form.

The editing has been mostly of form and not content. Efforts have been made to retain the Sayadaw's particular way of speaking English, when he discusses with and instructs yogis. Since the Sayadaw was addressing Taiwanese and Malaysian-Chinese Mahāyāna Buddhists, there are considerably fewer of his usual copious references from the Theravāda texts and commentaries. It should here be mentioned that, when the Sayadaw translates a Pāḷi quotation, he usually follows the Burmese custom of including a gloss from the commentaries.

Most of the Pāḷi terms used by the Sayadaw have been translated. The Pāḷi has initially been retained in brackets, after which it has usually been omitted: for example, initially, 'impermanence (*anicca*)', subsequently, 'impermanence'. Conversely, some terms, awkward in English, have been left untranslated, such as: *kasiṇa* (totality? device?), *deva* (god? deity?), *Brahmā* (supreme being in a very high realm of existence?). Appendix 1 is a glossary, which defines rather than translates those terms.

The editorial priorities have been to maintain the required degree of accuracy, and to try to make the talks readable to newcomer, yogi, and scholar alike. Complete uniformity in editing has, for those reasons, been somewhat compromised. In the genesis of this book, diverse helping hands have been involved in the translating, composing, and editing. For any errors or faults in the material, the helping hands alone are responsible.

Editors,  
Pa-Auk Forest Monastery

<i>Namo Tassa,</i>	Homage to Him,
<i>Bhagavato,</i>	the Blessed,
<i>Arahato,</i>	the Worthy,
<i>Sammā-</i>	the Perfectly
<i>Sambuddhassa.</i>	Self-Enlightened One.

## Introduction<sup>1</sup>

### The Buddha's Dispensation

On one occasion, the Blessed One was dwelling among the Vajjians at Koṭigāma. There the Blessed One addressed the bhikkhus<sup>2</sup> thus:<sup>3</sup>

**Bhikkhus, it is because of not understanding (*ananubodhā*) and not penetrating (*appaṭivedhā*) the Four Noble Truths ..... (*Catunnaṃ Ariyasaccānaṃ*) that you and I have for a long time wandered the round of rebirth.**

What four?

[1] **It is, bhikkhus, because of not understanding and not penetrating the Noble Truth of Suffering ..... (*Dukkhasa Ariyasaccassa*) that you and I have for a long time wandered the round of rebirth.**

[2] **It is, bhikkhus, because of not understanding and not penetrating the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering ..... (*Dukkhasamudayassa Ariyasaccassa*) that you and I have for a long time wandered the round of rebirth.**

[3] **It is, bhikkhus, because of not understanding and not penetrating the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering ..... (*Dukkhanirodhassa Ariyasaccassa*) that you and I have for a long time wandered the round of rebirth.**

[4] **It is, bhikkhus, because of not understanding and not penetrating the Noble Truth of the Path to the Cessation of Suffering ..... (*Dukkhanirodhagāminīya Paṭipadāya Ariyasaccassa*) that you and I have for a long time wandered the round of rebirth.**

The Four Noble Truths are thus the foundations of The Buddha's Teaching, His Dispensation. He then explains:

<sup>1</sup> This introduction is an addition to the revised edition of *Knowing and Seeing*.

<sup>2</sup> For untranslated Pāli, please see Appendix 1 'Glossary of Untranslated Pāli Terms', p.341ff

<sup>3</sup> S.V.XII.iii.1 '*Paṭhamakoṭigāma Sutta*' ('First Koṭigāma Sutta') For bibliographical abbreviations and source references, please see above 'Bibliographical Abbreviations etc.' p.xvii

- [1] **The Noble Truth of Suffering, bhikkhus, has been understood and penetrated.**
- [2] **The Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering has been understood and penetrated.**
- [3] **The Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering has been understood and penetrated.**
- [4] **The Noble Truth of the Path to the Cessation of Suffering has been understood and penetrated.**

Craving for existence has been cut off;  
the tendency to existence has been destroyed;  
now there is no more renewed existence.

### What Needs to Be Fully Realized

The Buddha taught the Four Noble Truths for us to realize the Third Noble Truth, Nibbāna, which is to put a complete end to rebirth and therefore suffering. But that is not possible without the right conditions. In the '*Kūṭ āgāra Sutta*' ('Pinnacled House Sutta'), The Buddha explains first the conditions that make it impossible to put a complete end to suffering:<sup>1</sup>

**Indeed, bhikkhus, if anyone said:**

**'Without having built the room of a pinnacled house, I shall erect the roof', such a thing is impossible.**

**So too, if anyone said:**

[1] **'Without having realized the Noble Truth of Suffering as it really is;**

*(dukkhaṃ ariyasaccaṃ yathābhūtaṃ anabhisamecca)*

[2] **'without having realized the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as it really is;**

[3] **'without having realized the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering as it really is;**

<sup>1</sup> S.V.XII.v.4. A pinnacled house is here a single-storied house with four outside pillars that are surmounted with beams that support a high roof that tapers towards a pinnacle.

[4] **‘without having realized the Noble Truth of the Path to the Cessation of Suffering as it really is, ‘I shall put a complete end to suffering’, such a thing is impossible.**

This means that we cannot put a complete end to suffering (we cannot attain the Third Noble Truth, Nibbāna) unless we have first fully realized the First Noble Truth (suffering (*dukkha*)), and fully realized the Second Noble Truth (the origin of suffering (*samudaya*)). Only then are we able to realize also the supramundane Fourth Noble Truth, the Supramundane Noble Eightfold Path.

The only way to attain these realizations is to first practise the mundane Fourth Noble Truth, the mundane Path Truth (*lokiya maggasacca*), which is the mundane Noble Eightfold Path, the three-fold training:

1. Morality ..... (*sīla*)
2. Concentration ..... (*samādhi*)
3. Wisdom ..... (*paññā*)<sup>1</sup>

For bhikkhus, morality is *Pāṭ imokkha* restraint, and for lay-people, it is the eight or five precepts. When we are established in morality, we can develop access-concentration (*upacāra samādhi*) and absorption concentration (*jhāna*), and can then proceed to develop wisdom, which is Vipassanā meditation. Vipassanā meditation is nothing except to realize the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of the Noble Truth of Suffering and Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering. Only when we practise Vipassanā well and thoroughly, and fully realize these two Noble Truths, are we able to realize the supramundane Fourth Noble Truth, the Noble Eightfold Path associated with supramundane Path Truth (*Lokuttarā Magga Sacca*): the path (*magga*) of stream-entry (*sotāpatti*), once-return (*sakadāgāmi*), non-return (*anāgāmi*), and arahantship.

<sup>1</sup> This is explained in the commentary to M.I.iv.3 ‘*Mahāgopālaka Sutta*’ (‘Great Cowherd Sutta’), where The Buddha explains the eleven qualities in a bhikkhu that make it impossible for him to progress in the Dhamma and Vinaya.

In summary: the aim of the Fourth Noble Truth (the Eightfold Noble Path) is to realize the Third Noble Truth (Nibbāna), which is achieved only by fully realizing the First and Second Noble Truths (Suffering and the Origin of Suffering).

### The First and Second Noble Truth

But what is the First Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of Suffering? In the ‘*Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta*’, the Buddha explains:<sup>1</sup>

**Now this, bhikkhus, is the Noble Truth of Suffering:  
birth is suffering; ageing is suffering; illness is suffering; death is suffering;  
being united with the unpleasant is suffering;  
being separated from the pleasant is suffering;  
not to get what one wants is suffering; in brief,  
the five aggregates of clinging (*pañc-upādānak-khandhā*) are suffering.**

When The Buddha teaches the Noble Truth of Suffering, He teaches the five aggregates; He teaches us to know and see the five aggregates. Our human world is the existence of the five aggregates (*pañca vokāra bhava*),<sup>2</sup> and unless we know and see the five aggregates, we cannot realize The Buddha’s Teaching. This He explains in the ‘*Puppha Sutta*’:<sup>3</sup>

**And what is the ultimate reality of the world (*loke lokadhammo*) that the Tathāgata has realized with perfect and complete knowledge?**

- [1] **Materiality** ..... (*rūpa*)
- .... [2] **Feeling** ..... (*vedanā*)
- .... [3] **Perception** ..... (*saññā*)
- .... [4] **Mental formations** ..... (*saṅkhārā*)
- .... [5] **Consciousness** ..... (*viññāna*),

**bhikkhus, is the ultimate reality of the world**

<sup>1</sup> S.V.XII.ii.1 ‘Dhamma-Wheel Rolling Sutta’

<sup>2</sup> *pañcavokāra* is an synonym for *pañca khandha* (five aggregates)

<sup>3</sup> S.III.II.v.2 ‘Flower Sutta’



that the Tathāgata has realized with perfect and complete knowledge.

Having done so, He explains it, teaches it, proclaims it, establishes it, discloses it and elucidates it.

When it is thus explained, taught, disclosed, analysed and elucidated by the Tathāgata, if there is someone who does not know and see, how can I do anything with that foolish common person, blind and sightless, who does not know and does not see?

The realities of the world that The Buddha is here explaining are the five aggregates, which are the Noble Truth of Suffering and the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering. And in the ‘*Ma-hāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*’ He explains:<sup>1</sup>

**And how, bhikkhus, in short, are the five aggregates of clinging** (*pañcupādānakkhandhā*) **suffering? They are as follows:**

- [1] **the materiality aggregate of clinging;** ..... (*rūpupādānakkhandho;*)
- [2] **the feeling aggregate of clinging;** ..... (*vedanupādānakkhandho;*)
- [3] **the perception aggregate of clinging;** ..... (*saññupādānakkhandho;*)
- [4] **the mental formations aggregate of clinging;** ..... (*saikhārupādānakkhandho;*)
- [5] **the consciousness aggregate of clinging;** ..... (*viññāṇupādānakkhandho.*)

And in, for example, the ‘*Khandha Sutta*’ (‘Aggregates Sutta’), He explains and analyses the five aggregates of clinging further as of eleven types:<sup>2</sup>

And what, bhikkhus,  
**are the five aggregates of clinging?**

**Whatever kind of materiality** (*rūpa*) **there is, whether**

- [1-3] **past, future, or present;** ..... (*atītā nāgata paccuppannañ;*)
- [4-5] **internal or external;** ..... (*ajjhataṃ vā bahiddhā vā;*)
- [6-7] **gross or subtle;** ..... (*oḷārikaṃ vā sukhumāṃ vā;*)
- [8-9] **inferior or superior;** ..... (*hīnaṃ vā paṇītaṃ vā;*)
- [10-11] **far or near** ..... (*yaṃ dāre santike vā*)

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 ‘Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness’ (Also M.I.i.10)

<sup>2</sup> S.III.v.6

that is tainted, that can be clung to, it is called the materiality aggregate of clinging. Whatever kind of feeling.... perception.... mental formations.... Whatever kind of consciousness there is, whether past, future, or present; internal or external; gross or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near that is tainted (*sāsava*), that can be clung to (*upādāniya*), it is called the consciousness aggregate of clinging.

These, bhikkhus, are called the five aggregates of clinging.

These five aggregates of clinging are the First Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of Suffering, and, as The Buddha explains, they comprise each eleven types. This means that to know and see the five aggregates is to know and see the eleven types of each aggregate.

The first of the five aggregates of clinging (materiality) is also called just materiality (*rūpa*), and the remaining four aggregates of clinging (feeling, perception, mental formations, and consciousness) are together also called just mentality (*nāma*). Thus, the five aggregates of clinging are also called just mentality-materiality (*nāma-rūpa*).<sup>1</sup>

To know and see mentality-materiality as they really are, we need also to know and see how they are connected, that is, we need to know and see that in the world of five aggregates (*pañcavokāra bhava*), mentality depends on materiality. The world of the five aggregates is explained by The Buddha in the ‘*Loka Sutta*’ (‘World Sutta’). Here, He explains mentality-materiality as eighteen elements (*dhātu*): the six sense-doors, six sense-objects and six types of consciousness. He says:<sup>2</sup>

**And what, bhikkhus, is the origin of the world?**

<sup>1</sup> From another point-of-view, mentality-materiality are by The Buddha referred to as the six bases (*sālāyatana*: six internal and six external), which is a term He also uses when explaining dependent-origination. Throughout His Teaching, The Buddha explains phenomena according to the inclination and understanding of his listeners. Hence, He explains mentality-materiality in many different ways, although they refer ultimately to the same things. Please see also Answer 2.2, p.86, and footnote 1, p. 307.

<sup>2</sup> S.II.v.4

**Dependent on the eye and colour, eye-consciousness arises.***(Cakkhūñca paṭicca rūpe<sup>1</sup> ca uppajjati cakkhu-viññāṇaṃ.)***With the meeting of the three there is contact.** .....(*phasso.*)**With contact as condition, feeling** [comes to be]; .....(*vedanā;*)**with feeling as condition, craving;** .....(*taṇhā;*)**with craving as condition, clinging;** .....(*upādāna;*)**with clinging as condition, existence;** .....(*bhava;*)**with existence as condition, birth;** .....(*jāti;*)**with birth as condition, ageing and death,** .....(*jarā, maraṇa;*)**sorrow, lamentation,** .....(*soka, parideva*)**suffering, grief and despair** .....(*dukkha, domanassa, upāyāsa*)**come to be.****Dependent on the ear and sounds, ear-consciousness arises....***(Sotañca paṭicca sadde ca uppajjati sota-viññāṇaṃ....)***Dependent on the nose and odours, nose-consciousness arises....***(Ghānañca paṭicca gandhe ca uppajjati ghāna-viññāṇaṃ....)***Dependent on the tongue and flavours, tongue-consciousness arises....***(Jivhañca paṭicca rase ca uppajjati jivhā-viññāṇaṃ....)***Dependent on the body and tangibles, body-consciousness arises....***(Kāyañca paṭicca phoṭṭhabbe ca uppajjati kāya-viññāṇaṃ....)***Dependent on the mind and dhammas,<sup>2</sup>mind-consciousness arises....***(Manañca paṭicca dhamme ca uppajjati mano-viññāṇaṃ....)*

To know and see mentality-materiality we need thus to know and see:

1. The sense-doors
2. The objects that strike upon the sense-doors
3. The thereby arisen consciousnesses and associated mental factors.

<sup>1</sup> Here, *rūpa* refers to colour, without which the object cannot be seen.

<sup>2</sup> Here, as He is speaking of the eighteen elements of the world, *dhammas* refers to the sixteen kinds of subtle materiality, and all associated mental factors. When speaking of *dhammas* in other contexts, The Buddha means all objects, which include Nibbāna and concepts (*paññati*). But as the latter are not the world (are neither mentality nor materiality, and are therefore not the First and Second Noble Truths) they are not included in the 'World Sutta'. Please see further footnote 1, p.307.

As explained by The Buddha, there are six sense-doors:

1. Eye-door .....(*cakkhu-dvāra*)
2. Ear-door .....(*sota-dvāra*)
3. Nose-door .....(*ghāna-dvāra*)
4. Tongue-door .....(*jivhā-dvāra*)
5. Body-door .....(*kāya-dvāra*)
6. Mind-door (*bhava ṛga*) .....(*mano-dvāra*)

The first five sense-doors are materiality (*rūpa*), and are therefore the same as the five sense-bases (*vatthu*), but the sixth sense-door, the mind-door (*bhavaṛga*), is mentality (*nāma*). It depends on the sixth sense-base, which is the materiality that is the heart-base (*hadaya vatthu*).

The five material doors take only their respective material object, whereas the mental mind-door takes those five objects and its own objects. This is explained by The Buddha in the 'Uṇṇābhrahmaṇa Sutta', although the term He uses is faculty (*indriya*):<sup>1</sup>

**Brahmin, these five faculties (*indriya*) have each a different sphere (*visaya*), a different field (*gocara*), and do not experience (*paccanubhontānaṃ*) each other's sphere and field.**

**What five?**

- [1] **The eye-faculty** .....(*cakkhundriyaṃ*),
- [2] **The ear-faculty** .....(*sotindriyaṃ*),
- [3] **The nose-faculty** .....(*ghāhindriyaṃ*),
- [4] **The tongue-faculty** .....(*jivhindriyaṃ*),
- [5] **The body faculty** .....(*kāyindriyaṃ*).

**Now, Brahmin, these five faculties,**

**having separate spheres and separate fields,  
not experiencing each other's sphere and field,**

<sup>1</sup> Faculty (*indriya*) is here the same as 'base', 'door', 'element' etc. elsewhere. The Brahmin to whom The Buddha is here speaking, used 'five faculties' in his introductory question. (S.V.IV.v.2 'Uṇṇābha Brahmin Sutta')

**have the mind (*mano*) as their refuge (*paṭisaraṇaṃ*),  
and the mind experiences (*paccanubhoti*) their spheres and fields.**

When the material objects strike upon their material sense-door, they strike at the same time upon the mind-door:<sup>1</sup> all other objects strike upon the mind-door alone. The objects that strike upon the mind-door alone include also those that are not mentality-materiality, that are not the world. We have thus six types of object.

1. Colour objects .....(*rūpārammaṇa*)
2. Sound objects .....(*saddārammaṇa*)
3. Odour objects .....(*gandhārammaṇa*)
4. Flavour objects .....(*rasārammaṇa*)
5. Touch objects<sup>2</sup> .....(*phoṭṭhabbārammaṇa*)
6. Dhamma objects .....(*dhammārammaṇa*)

Dhamma objects are all objects apart from the previous five material types of object: all other objects in the world. They comprise six types:

1. 5 kinds of gross, transparent materiality .....(*pasāda rūpa*)  
(five material sense-doors)
2. 16 kinds of subtle materiality .....(*sukhuma rūpa*)
3. 6 kinds of consciousness element .....(*viññāṇa dhātu*)
4. 52 kinds of associated mental factors .....(*cetasika*)
5. The Nibbāna element, the unformed element .....(*Asañkhata Dhātu*)
6. The infinite number of concepts .....(*paññatti*)  
(e.g. the concept of the breath, the kasiṇa object, and names

<sup>1</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw refers to the simile in the *Aṭṭhasālīnī* (*The Expositor* B114/PTS96): When sunlight strikes a bird sitting on a branch, a shadow falls at the same time on the ground. In the same way, when the object strikes its material door, it appears at the same time in the mind-door.

<sup>2</sup> More precisely: (1) visible-/chromatic-, (2) auditory-, (3) olfactory-, (4) gustatory-, and (5) tangible/tactile objects.

for the ultimate realities, without which we cannot communicate.)

As The Buddha explained, when one of the six sense-doors comes together with its appropriate object, consciousness arises. We have thus six types of consciousness:

1. Eye-consciousness .....(*cakkhu-viññāṇa*)
2. Ear-consciousness .....(*sota-viññāṇa*)
3. Nose-consciousness .....(*ghāna-viññāṇa*)
4. Tongue-consciousness .....(*jivhā-viññāṇa*)
5. Body-consciousness .....(*kāya-viññāṇa*)
6. Mind-consciousness .....(*mano-viññāṇa*)

As The Buddha also explained to the Brahmin, when an object strikes upon one of the five material sense-doors, it strikes also upon the mental sense-door. When you have developed strong and powerful concentration, you will be able to see that the object is reflected in the mind-door as in a mirror.

Then will you also be able to see that the consciousnesses that arise in one of the material sense-doors are very weak. They ‘just pick up’ the object (*abhinipātamattā*). The actual knowing of the object is done by a series of mind-consciousnesses (*mano viññāṇa*) that arise later.<sup>1</sup>

For example, when a material object such as colour strikes the materiality of the eye-door, and strikes at the same time the mind-door (the *bhavaṅga*), a mind-consciousness arises followed by an eye-consciousness: they do not ‘know’ the object; they do not know that it is colour. The object is known by mind-consciousnesses that arise afterwards.

We may thus understand that to know mentality-materiality we need to know each type of mentality, each type of materiality, and how they work together. We need to know:

1. The materiality of the door.

<sup>1</sup> Please see Table 6, p.213, and quotation p.154, from *Dispeller of Delusion*.

2. The materiality of the object.
3. The mentality that arises in the material door and mind-door.

We need to know and see the eye-door, its object (colour), and the mind-consciousnesses and eye-consciousness that arise when colour strikes the eye-door. And we need to know and see that without the materiality of the eye-door, no eye-consciousness arises, without the materiality of the heart-base no mind-consciousness arises either, and without the materiality of the object (colour), no eye- or mind-consciousness arises either. We need to know and see this for the ear, the nose, the tongue, and body too, and need to know and see that there are objects known by mind-consciousnesses alone, which also arise dependent on heart-base materiality.

But these realities are not to be known only as concepts, because that is only to know and see things as they appear, which means we remain what The Buddha called a **foolish common person, blind and sightless, who does not know and does not see.**

To know and see these things as they really are we need to penetrate to ultimate reality (*paramattha sacca*); we need to know and see ultimate mentality-materiality (*paramattha nāma-rūpa*).

### Knowing and Seeing The First Noble Truth

We need to know and see each and every type of mentality. We need to see that in the five sense-bases arises one of two types of consciousness, ‘two times five consciousness’ (*dve pañca viññāṇa*):

1. Wholesome resultant consciousnesses .....(*kusala vipāka viññāṇa*)
2. Unwholesome resultant consciousnesses.....(*akusala vipāka viññāṇa*)

That is in total ten types of consciousness. And in the heart-base arise all other types of consciousness:

- 12 types of unwholesome consciousness .....(*akusala citta*)

- 8 types of rootless consciousness .....(*ahetuka citta*) (the same type as the ten types of ‘two times five consciousness’)
- 24 types of sense sphere beautiful consciousness.....(*kāma sobhaṇa citta*)
- 15 types of fine material world consciousness ....(*rūpāvacara citta*)
- 12 types of immaterial world consciousness .....(*arūpāvacara citta*)
- 8 types of supramundane consciousness .....(*lokuttarā citta*)

This gives eighty-nine types of consciousness. And whenever one of these types of consciousness arises, there arise also a number of associated mental factors, of which there are fifty-two in total. Mentality comprises thus eighty-nine types of consciousness and fifty-two types of associated mental factors.<sup>1</sup>

To know and see the Noble Truth of Suffering as it really is, we need thus to directly know and directly see all these types of consciousness and associated mental factors. But as The Buddha explained, in this our five aggregates world, mentality arises dependent on materiality; the individual consciousness arises dependent on its respective base. That means we need to directly know and directly see also the materiality.

To know and see materiality as it really is we need to know and see how materiality consists of sub-atomic particles that are in Pāḷi called *rūpa-kalāpas*. They arise and pass away very quickly, but that is only conceptual reality (*vijjāmanapaññatti*), not ultimate materiality (*paramattha rūpa*). To know and see materiality as it really is, we need to penetrate the concept of *rūpa-kalāpas* (penetrate the delusion of compactness<sup>2</sup>) and see the ultimate realities (*paramattha saccā*) that are the individual elements that comprise the individual types of *rūpa-kalāpa*.

<sup>1</sup> When doing *nāma-kammaṭṭhāna* (mentality meditation) one knows and sees these things directly (please see also below p. 199ff). Until then, one is referred please to the *Abhidhammattha Saṅgaha* (e.g. *A Comprehensive Manual of Abhidhamma*, Ed. Bhikkhu Bodhi, BPS.)

<sup>2</sup> For details about penetrating the delusion of compactness, please see Answer 1.3, p.60, and ‘How You Analyse the Rūpa-Kalāpas’, p.152.

In the ‘*Mahāgopālaka Sutta*’<sup>1</sup> The Buddha explains the knowledge of materiality that is necessary for a bhikkhu to progress in the Dhamma and Vinaya:

**How does a bhikkhu have knowledge of materiality** (*rūpaññū hoti*)?

**Here a bhikkhu understands as it really is:**

**‘All materiality of whatever kind consists of the four great elements and materiality derived from the four great elements** (*cattāri mahābhūtāni, catunnañca mahābhūtānani upādāyarūpan’ti*).<sup>2</sup>

**That is how a bhikkhu has knowledge of materiality.**

And He says that without this knowledge the bhikkhu is

**incapable of growth, increase, and fulfilment in this Dhamma and Vinaya.**

This means we need to know and see all twenty-eight types of materiality: primary materiality (*bhūta*), which is:

- The four great elements.....(*mahā bhūta*)  
(earth-, water-, fire-, wind-element (*pathavī, āpo, tejo, vāyo-dhātu*))

And the twenty-four types of derived materiality (*upādā rūpa*), such as:<sup>2</sup>

- The five types of transparent materiality .....(*pasāda rūpa*)  
(the eye, ear, nose, tongue, and body transparent-element (*cakkhu-, sota-, ghāna-, jivhā-, kāya pasāda*), which comprise the five physical sense-doors)
- The four types of sense-field materiality .....(*gocara rūpa*)  
(colour, sound, odour, flavour (*vaṇṇa, sadda, gandha, rasa*))
- Nutritive-essence.....(*ojā*)
- Life-faculty .....(*jīvitindriya*)
- Heart-materiality .....(*hadaya rūpa*)  
(the physical base for mind-consciousnesses (*mano-viññāṇa*) and their associated mental factors.)

<sup>1</sup> M.I.iv.3 ‘*Mahāgopālaka Sutta*’ (‘Great Cowherd Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> For a complete list of the twenty-eight types of materiality, please see Table 1 ‘The Twenty-Eight Material Elements’, p.169f

## How You Know and See the First and Second Noble Truth

### You Develop Concentration

To be able to see the individual elements of individual rūpa-kalāpas is to be able to see ultimate materiality, and that requires strong and powerful concentration. Only strong and powerful concentration is able to know and see things as they really are. It is explained by The Buddha in, for example, the ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ (‘Concentration Sutta’) of the ‘*Sacca Saṃyutta*’ (‘Section on the Truths’):<sup>1</sup>

**Bhikkhus, develop concentration. Having attained concentration, a bhikkhu understands dhammas<sup>2</sup> as they really are** ..... (*yathābhūtaṃ pajānāti*).

**And what does he understand as it really is?**

- [1] **He understands as it really is: ‘This is suffering.’**
- [2] **He understands as it really is: ‘This is the origin of suffering.’**
- [3] **He understands as it really is: ‘This is the cessation of suffering.’**
- [4] **He understands as it really is: ‘This is the path leading to the cessation of suffering.’**

**Bhikkhus, develop concentration. Having attained concentration, a bhikkhu understands dhammas as they really are.**

That is why, at Pa-Auk, we teach first to develop the strong and powerful concentration of the jhānas (absorption concentration (*appanā samādhi*)) using, for example, mindfulness-of-breathing (*ānāpānasati*) and the ten kasiṇas, or access concentration (*upacāra samādhi*)<sup>3</sup> using four-elements meditation (*catu-dhātu vavatthāna*).<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> S.V.XII.i.1 ‘Concentration Sutta’

<sup>2</sup> Here, *dhammas* refers to the Four Noble Truths together, or one of them alone. Please see further footnote 1, p.307.

<sup>3</sup> For a discussion about the different types of concentration, please see Answer 3.1, p.115.

<sup>4</sup> For mindfulness-of-breathing, please see Talk 1 ‘How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing to Absorption’ p.37ff, for the ten kasiṇas, please see Talk 2 ‘How You Develop Absorption on Other  
Please see further next page

## You Develop the Light of Wisdom

Strong and powerful concentration produces strong and powerful light, and it is by that strong and powerful light that you are able to penetrate to ultimate reality (*paramattha sacca*). It is explained by The Buddha in the ‘*Ābhāvagga*’ (‘Splendour Chapter’) of the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*:<sup>1</sup>

- **Bhikkhus, there are four splendours. What four? The splendour of the moon, of the sun, of fire, and of wisdom** ..... (*paññ-ābhā*).
- **Bhikkhus, there are four radiances. What four? The radiance of the moon, of the sun, of fire, and of wisdom** ..... (*paññā-pabhā*).
- **Bhikkhus, there are four lights. What four? The light of the moon, of the sun, of fire, and of wisdom** ..... (*paññ-āloko*).
- **Bhikkhus, there are four brilliances. What four? The brilliance of the moon, of the sun, of fire, and of wisdom** ..... (*paññ-obhāso*).
- **Bhikkhus, there are four brightnesses. What four? The brightness of the moon, of the sun, of fire, and of wisdom** ..... (*paññā-pajjoto*).

And He refers to the light also in His very first teaching, the *Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta*, when He explains His enlightenment:<sup>2</sup>

...thus, bhikkhus, in regard to things (*dhammā*) unheard before, there arose in me vision (*cakkhu*), knowledge (*ñāṇa*), wisdom (*paññā*), true knowledge (*vijjā*) and light (*āloko*).

Consciousnesses of mundane insight produce strong and powerful ‘light of enlightenment’ (*vipassanobhāso*), but consciousnesses of supramundane insight produce light that is extremely strong and

---

Subjects’, p.67ff; for four-elements meditation, please see Talk 4 ‘How You Discern Materiality’, p.131ff

<sup>1</sup> A.IV.III.v.1-5 ‘*Ābhā-*’, ‘*Pabhā-*’, ‘*Āloka-*’, ‘*Obhā-*’, and ‘*Pajjota Sutta*’

<sup>2</sup> S.V.XII.ii.1 ‘Dhamma-Wheel Rolling Sutta’

powerful: for example, the light of the Enlightened One’s enlightenment spread throughout the ten-thousand-fold world system.<sup>1</sup>

How does this light arise? The mind that is in deep concentration is associated with wisdom (*paññā*). Such a mind produces many generations of consciousness-produced materiality (*cittaja rūpa*) of great brightness.<sup>2</sup> Using that light, we are able to penetrate to ultimate reality (*paramattha sacca*); to see things as they really are. It is like going into a dark room: we need light to see the objects there.

## You Protect Your Concentration

But it is not enough just to develop deep concentration, because to be able to penetrate to ultimate reality is deep and profound, and is an opportunity we must not lose. We teach therefore also how you protect yourself and your meditation by developing the four Sublime Abidings (*Brahmavihāra*) up to jhāna or access concentration:<sup>3</sup>

1. Lovingkindness ..... (*mettā*) to overcome anger and hatred.<sup>4</sup>
2. Compassion ..... (*karuṇā*) to overcome ill-will and cruelty.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xx ‘*Vipassanupakkilesa Kathā*’ B634 (‘Insight Imperfection Explanation’Ñ107). The light is the result of wholesome dhammas and is in itself not an imperfection. But it can be the basis for imperfection (*upakkilesa-vaṭṭhu*) if the yogi who experiences it becomes very attached to it, and develops the wrong view that he has thereby attained Path and Fruition. Please see also SA.V.XII.ii.1 ‘*Dhammacakkappavattana Sutta*’ (‘Dhamma-Wheel Rolling Sutta’), and below ‘How You Overcome the Ten Imperfections of Insight’, p.271.

<sup>2</sup> For details about the light that arises with very deep concentration and insight meditation, please see, ‘Consciousness-produced Materiality’, p.138, and Answer 4.10, p.194

<sup>3</sup> Please see The Buddha’s analysis of the four divine abidings, A.VI.I.ii.3 ‘*Nissāraṇīya Sutta*’ (‘Escape Sutta’), and M.II.ii.2 ‘*Mahārāhulovāda Sutta*’ (‘Great Advice-to-Rāhula Sutta’), and Answer 2.2, p.86

<sup>4</sup> Please see The Buddha’s advice, ‘*Meghiya Sutta*’ (*Udāna*.iv.1), discussed also ‘Summary’, p.112, and Answer 7.13, p.290

3. Appreciative joy.....(*muditā*)  
to overcome envy.
4. Equanimity.....(*upekkhā*)  
to overcome indifference towards beings.

For the same reason, we teach also the four Protective Meditations (*caturāraṅkha kammaṭṭhāna*) up to jhāna or access concentration:

1. Lovingkindness.....(*mettā*)  
to protect you against dangers from other beings.<sup>1</sup>
2. Recollection-of-The Buddha.....(*Buddhānussati*)  
to protect you against fear,<sup>2</sup> and dangers from other beings.
3. Foulness meditation.....(*asubha bhāvanā*)  
to protect you against lust and desire.<sup>3</sup>
4. Recollection-of-death.....(*maraṇānussati*)  
to protect you against laziness in meditation: to fire you with a sense of urgency (*samvega*).<sup>4</sup>

With the jhāna concentration or access concentration that you have already developed, these subjects do not take long to develop.<sup>5</sup>

### You Penetrate to Ultimate Reality

#### Penetrating to Ultimate Materiality

If you are a Samatha yogi, with strong and powerful concentration that is well protected, we then teach you how to know and

<sup>1</sup> Please see The Buddha's explanation of the benefits of lovingkindness practice, A.XI.ii.5 'Metta Sutta' ('Lovingkindness Sutta'): quoted p.105. For an example of this meditation's efficacy, please see also Answer 2.2, p.86

<sup>2</sup> Please see The Buddha's advice, S.I.XI.i.3 'Dhajagga Sutta' ('Standard Sutta')

<sup>3</sup> For details on this meditation, please see below p.111f

<sup>4</sup> Please see The Buddha's advice, A.VI.ii.10&11 'Paṭhama-' & 'Dutiyamarāṇassati Sutta' ('First-' & 'Second Recollection-of-Death Sutta')

<sup>5</sup> For the sublime abidings and protective meditations please see Talk 3 'How You Develop the Sublime Abidings and Protective Meditations', p.97ff

see materiality as it really is, using four-elements meditation (*caturdhātu vavathāna*).<sup>1</sup> But if you prefer not to develop Samatha, and prefer to develop only access concentration, you go straight to four-elements meditation.

We teach the discernment of materiality first for several reasons. One reason is that to discern materiality is very subtle and profound. But although materiality changes billions of times per second, it does not change as quickly as mentality does. This means that once you have completed the profound discernment of materiality, the more profound discernment of mentality becomes easier for you to do. Another reason is that mentality depends on materiality, and unless one can see the specific materiality that a consciousness depends upon, one cannot see the mentality at all. To be able to see it, one needs to see its arising.<sup>2</sup>

Four-elements meditation means you discern the four elements in materiality, and you start with the materiality that is your own body, that is, you start with materiality that The Buddha called internal (*ajjhata*). The Buddha explains four-elements meditation in the 'Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta':<sup>3</sup>

**Again, bhikkhus, a bhikkhu reviews this body, however it may be placed or disposed, in terms of the elements (*dhātu*): 'There are in this body**

- [1] **the earth-element**.....(*pathavī-dhātu*),
- [2] **the water-element**.....(*āpo-dhātu*),
- [3] **the fire-element**.....(*tejo-dhātu*),
- [4] **the wind-element**.....(*vāyo-dhātu*),'

<sup>1</sup> For four-elements meditation please see Talk 4 'How You Discern Materiality', p.131ff

<sup>2</sup> This is explained Vs.xviii 'Nāmarūpapariggaha Kathā' B669-671('Mentality-Materiality Definition Explanation'Ñ16-23), where is added that if one does not complete the discernment of materiality before proceeding to discern mentality, one 'falls from one's meditation subject like the [foolish] mountain cow...'. A.IX.I.iv.4 'Gāvī-Ūpamā Sutta' ('Cow Simile Sutta') mentioned p.56. ). But this refers only to sensual realm mentality, not fine-material mentality (jhāna). Please see also p.200

<sup>3</sup> D.ii.9 'Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness' (Also M.I.i.10). Please see also M.II.ii.2 'Mahārāhulovāda Sutta' ('Great Advice-to-Rāhula Sutta')

It is easier to start with one's own materiality because it is easier to know that one's own materiality is hot or cold or hard or soft than it is to know it in external materiality such as the materiality of another being. But once you have become skilled in discerning internal materiality, you will need to discern also the remaining ten types of materiality enumerated by The Buddha: past, future, present, external, gross, subtle, inferior, superior, far and near.<sup>1</sup>

The Buddha taught four-elements meditation in order that we may be able to know and see ultimate materiality. First, you develop the ability to know and see the different characteristics of the four elements in your body as one compact mass of materiality, as one lump. As your skill and concentration develops you will eventually be able to see the rūpa-kalāpas, and then, using the light of concentration that you have developed, you will then be able to penetrate the delusion of compactness,<sup>2</sup> penetrate to ultimate materiality, to know and see, to identify and analyse the individual elements in the different types of rūpa-kalāpa.

### Penetrating to Ultimate Mentality

Having now truly known and seen the different elements that are ultimate materiality, you can proceed to knowing and seeing ultimate mentality, which is meditation on mentality (*nāma kammatthāna*).

We can discern mentality either by way of the six sense-bases or by way of the six sense-doors.<sup>3</sup> But, since you discerned mate-

riality by way of the sense-doors, the *Visuddhi Magga* says you should do the same for mentality:<sup>1</sup> **When he has discerned materiality thus, the immaterial states become plain to him in accordance with the sense-doors.** And the commentary says further that to discern mentality by way of the doors is to be **free from confusion.**<sup>2</sup>

The six sense-doors and their objects were mentioned earlier, and are:

1. The eye-door, which takes colour objects.
2. The ear-door, which takes sound objects.
3. The nose-door, which takes odour objects.
4. The tongue-door, which takes flavour objects.
5. The body-door, which takes touch objects.
6. The mind-door (*bhavaṅga*), which takes the previous five objects of the five material sense doors, and dhamma objects.<sup>3</sup>

When one of the six types of object strikes its respective door, a series of consciousnesses (*citta*) arise, and with each consciousness arise also a number of associated mental factors (*cetasika*): this is according to the natural law of consciousness (*citta niyāma*). A such series of consciousnesses and associated mental factors is called a cognitive process (*vīthi*), and there are accordingly six types:

- |     |                                     |                               |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| [1] | Eye-door cognitive-process .....    | ( <i>cakkhu-dvāra vīthi</i> ) |
| [2] | Ear-door cognitive-process .....    | ( <i>sota-dvāra vīthi</i> )   |
| [3] | Nose-door cognitive-process .....   | ( <i>ghāna-dvāra vīthi</i> )  |
| [4] | Tongue-door cognitive-process ..... | ( <i>jivhā-dvāra vīthi</i> )  |
| [5] | Body-door cognitive-process .....   | ( <i>kāya-dvāra vīthi</i> )   |
| [6] | Mind-door cognitive-process .....   | ( <i>mano-dvāra vīthi</i> )   |

<sup>1</sup> Please see 'Khandha Sutta' ('Aggregates Sutta') quoted above, p.5

<sup>2</sup> For details regarding the delusion of compactness, please see Answer 1.3, p.60, and 'How You Analyse the Rūpa-Kalāpas', p.152.

<sup>3</sup> When you discern by way of the sense-bases, you discern the consciousnesses and associated mental factors that arise dependent on each of the sense-bases. (E.g. you discern the eye-base (the eye-transparent element), and then the eye-consciousness (1) and associated mental factors (7) that arise dependent on the eye-base.) When you discern by way of the six sense-doors, you discern the different types of consciousness in the cognitive processes of each door. For example, the different

*Please see further next page*

consciousness and associated mental factors of the eye-door cognitive process. Please see also above p.11 and following.

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xviii 'Nāmarūpapariggaha Kathā' B664 ('Mentality-materiality Definition Explanation' Ṅ8)

<sup>2</sup> VsTi.ibid. For each of the five sense-bases only one such type of consciousness arises, but for the heart-base, there arise all other types of consciousness. Unless one is well familiar with the Abhidhamma's explanation of the different types of consciousnesses in the different types of cognitive process, this may be very confusing to the beginning yogi.

<sup>3</sup> Please see above p.9 for explanation of 'dhamma objects'.



When a material object strikes upon its material door, a cognitive-process of the first five doors arises: this is called a five-door cognitive-process (*pañca-dvāra vīthi*). But a cognitive process of the sixth door, the mind-door (the bhavaṅga), is called a mind-door cognitive-process (*mano-dvāra vīthi*).

As also mentioned before, when one of the five types of material object strikes upon its material door, it strikes at the same time upon the mind-door (bhavaṅga):<sup>1</sup> both a five-door- and a mind-door cognitive-process arise. When, for example, a colour object strikes upon the eye-door, it strikes at the same time upon the mind-door (bhavaṅga), which gives rise first to an eye-door cognitive process, and then to many mind-door cognitive-process.<sup>2</sup> This too takes place according to the natural law of consciousness (*cittaniyāma*).

It is thus clear that to know and see mentality, we need first to know and see materiality, because to know and see these cognitive processes, we need first to know and see the sense-doors and their objects. This you did when you discerned materiality.<sup>3</sup>

When discerning mentality, you first discern the different types of cognitive process, which means you discern how many consciousness moments (*cittakkhaṇa*) there are in each cognitive-process, and discern the different types of consciousness-moment. But that is not ultimate mentality (*paramattha nāma*). Just as you with materiality had to break down the delusion of compactness that is the rūpa-kalāpa, so do you here need to break down the delusion of compactness that is the cognitive-process.<sup>4</sup>

Each cognitive process comprises what we call consciousness moments (*cittakkhaṇa*), and each consciousness moment is the time it takes for one consciousness (*citta*) and its associated mental factors (*cetasika*) to arise, stand and pass away. A consciousness does not arise alone: it arises always together with associated mental

<sup>1</sup> Please see 'Uṇṇābha Brahmin Sutta' (quoted) etc. above, p.8ff

<sup>2</sup> For details, please see Tables 5 and 6, p.211ff

<sup>3</sup> Please see Talk 4 'How You Discern Materiality', p.131 ff

<sup>4</sup> For details regarding the delusion of compactness, please see also Answer 1.3, p.60.

factors. Likewise, associated mental factors do not arise alone: they arise always together with a consciousness. Hence, a consciousness and its associated mental factors arise as a compact group. To break down this compactness, you need to analyse each type of consciousness-moment and know and see the individual consciousness and its associated mental factors. That is knowing and seeing ultimate mentality (*paramattha nāma*). It is far subtler than knowing and seeing the elements of materiality, but you can do it because of the strong and powerful light of concentration that you have developed, and because of the power of discernment that you developed when discerning materiality.

Mentality comprises, as mentioned,<sup>1</sup> eighty-nine types of conscious and fifty-two types of associated mental factors. But eight of those consciousnesses are supramundane (*lokuttarā citta*: four Paths and four Fruitions), and arise only when you do Vipassanā practice on one of the remaining eighty-one types of consciousness (all mundane), and its associated mental factors. In other words, the objects of Vipassanā are only the mundane eighty-one types of consciousness, and their associated mental factors, whereas the results of that Vipassanā are the eight supramundane consciousnesses.

Furthermore, included in those eighty-one types of mundane consciousnesses are the jhānas. But you cannot discern unless you have attained them. Should you therefore be a pure-insight yogi, you leave out the discernment of jhāna consciousnesses.

What you will now be able to discern is explained by the Buddha in the *Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*:<sup>2</sup>

**Again, bhikkhus, how does a bhikkhu abide contemplating consciousness as consciousness? Here, bhikkhus,**

[1] **a bhikkhu understands (*pajānāti*) a consciousness associated with lust as a consciousness associated with lust.....(*sarāga citta*).<sup>1</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> Please see above p.12f

<sup>2</sup> 'Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness' (Also M.I.i.10)

- [2] **He understands a consciousness dissociated from lust as a consciousness dissociated from lust** ..... (*vītarāga citta*).
- [3] **He understands a consciousness associated with hatred as a consciousness associated with hatred** ..... (*sadosa citta*).
- [4] **He understands a consciousness dissociated from hatred as a consciousness dissociated from hatred** ..... (*vītadosa citta*).
- [5] **He understands a consciousness associated with delusion as a consciousness associated with delusion** ..... (*samoha citta*).
- [6] **He understands a consciousness dissociated from delusion as a consciousness dissociated from delusion** ..... (*vītamoha citta*).
- [7] **He understands a contracted<sup>2</sup> consciousness as a contracted consciousness** ..... (*saṅkhitta citta*).
- [8] **He understands a distracted consciousness as a distracted consciousness** ..... (*vikkhitta citta*).
- [9] **He understands an exalted<sup>3</sup> consciousness as an exalted consciousness** ..... (*mahaggata citta*).
- [10] **He understands an unexalted consciousness as an unexalted consciousness** ..... (*amahaggata citta*).
- [11] **He understands a surpassed<sup>4</sup> consciousness as a surpassed consciousness** ..... (*sa-uttara citta*).
- [12] **He understands an unsurpassed consciousness as an unsurpassed consciousness** ..... (*anuttara citta*).
- [13] **He understands a concentrated<sup>5</sup> consciousness as a concentrated consciousness** ..... (*samāhita citta*).

<sup>1</sup> In ordinary language, this is ‘a mind with lust’. More precisely, however, it is a consciousness (*citta*), the lustful quality of which is determined by the associated mental factor (*cetasika*) of lust.

<sup>2</sup> D.ii.9: **contracted** shrunken, slothful and torpid, without interest in the object; **distracted** agitated, restless, worried

<sup>3</sup> **ibid.** **exalted** of a fine-material/immaterial sphere (*jhāna*); **unexalted** of a sense-sphere. This covers all types of mundane consciousnesses.

<sup>4</sup> **ibid.** **surpassed** of a sense-sphere; **unsurpassed** of a fine-material/immaterial sphere (*jhāna*). This covers all types of mundane consciousnesses.

<sup>5</sup> **ibid.** **concentrated** with access-concentration or *jhāna*; **unconcentrated mind** without. This covers all types of mundane consciousnesses.

- [14] **He understands an unconcentrated consciousness as an unconcentrated consciousness** ..... (*asamāhitaṃ citta*).
- [15] **He understands a liberated<sup>1</sup> consciousness as a liberated consciousness** ..... (*vimuttaṃ citta*).
- [16] **He understands an unliberated consciousness as an unliberated consciousness** ..... (*avimuttaṃ citta*).

**Thus,**  
**he abides contemplating consciousness as consciousness internally** (*ajjhataṃ*),  
**or**  
**he abides contemplating consciousness as consciousness externally** (*bahiddhā*),  
**or**  
**he abides contemplating consciousness as consciousness**  
**both internally and externally.**

Here, The Buddha explains mentality as comprising sixteen types of consciousness. That means you should know and see each pair, such as a consciousness associated with lust, and one dissociated from lust, as they really are, by way of each of the six sense-doors, and do it internally, externally and both internally and externally. Then will you have penetrated to ultimate mentality, and know and see it as it really is.

### The Three Purifications

Having now known and seen mentality-materiality as they really are, you have realized what is called the three purifications.<sup>2</sup> The *Visuddhi Magga*,<sup>3</sup> explains:<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **ibid.** **liberated** at this stage, this refers to a consciousness that is temporarily liberated owing to wise attention or because the hindrances have been suppressed by concentration **unliberated** not so. This covers all types of mundane consciousnesses.

<sup>2</sup> Please see further p.92.

<sup>3</sup> (*Purification Path*) authoritative and extensive instruction manual on meditation, compiled from ancient, orthodox Sinhalese translations of the even earlier Pāḷi Commentaries (predominantly ‘The Ancients’ (*Porāṇā*), dating back to the time of The Buddha and the First Council) as well as later Sinhalese Commentaries, and translated back into Pāḷi by Indian scholar monk Venerable Buddhaghosa (approx. 500 A.C.)

- [1] ...**purification of morality** ..... (*sīla visuddhi*)  
**is the quite purified fourfold morality beginning with *Pāṭimokkha* restraint**
- [2] ...**purification of consciousness** ..... (*citta visuddhi*),  
**namely, the eight attainments [the *jhānas*]together with access concentration<sup>2</sup>**
- [3] ...**purification of view** ..... (*diṭṭhi visuddhi*)  
**is the correct seeing of mentality-materiality (*nāmarūpānaṃ yāthāvadassanaṃ*).**

### Knowing and Seeing the Second and Third Noble Truth

To attain Nibbāna, however, we need to know and see also the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering. The Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering is explained by The Buddha in the *Dhammacakkapavattana Sutta*:<sup>3</sup>

Now this, bhikkhus, is the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering:

**it is this craving (*taṇhā*) that leads to renewed existence, accompanied by delight and lust, seeking delight here and there; that is,**

- [1] **craving for sensual pleasures** ..... (*kāmatāṇhā*),  
 [2] **craving for existence** ..... (*bhavataṇhā*),  
 [3] **craving for extermination** ..... (*vibhavataṇhā*).

In more detail, The Buddha explains the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as dependent origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*):<sup>4</sup>

**And what, bhikkhus, is the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering?** ..... (*dukkha samudayaṃ ariyasaccaṃ*)

- **With ignorance** [1] as condition ..... (*avijjā paccayā*),
- **volitional formations** [2] [come to be] ..... (*saṅkhārā*);
- **with volitional formations as condition, consciousness** [3] ..... (*viññāṇa*);
- **with consciousness as condition, mentality-materiality** [4] ..... (*nāma-rūpa*);

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xviii 'Diṭṭhi-visuddhi Niddesa' B587 ('View-Purification Description'Ñ1-2)

<sup>2</sup> For how concentration purifies the mind, please see also Answer 7.8, p.285.

<sup>3</sup> S.V.XII.ii.1 'Dhamma-Wheel Rolling Sutta'

<sup>4</sup> A.III.II.ii.1 'Tithāyatana Sutta' ('Sectarian Doctrines Sutta')

- **with mentality-materiality as condition, the six sense-bases** [5]<sup>1</sup> ..... (*salāyātana*);
- **with the six sense-bases as condition, contact** [6] ..... (*phassa*);
- **with contact as condition, feeling** [7] ..... (*vedanā*);
- **with feeling as condition, craving** [8] ..... (*taṇhā*);
- **with craving as condition, clinging** [9] ..... (*upādāna*);
- **with clinging as condition, existence** [10] ..... (*bhava*);
- **with existence as condition, birth** [11] ..... (*jāti*);
- **with birth as condition, ageing and death** ..... (*jarā, maraṇa*),
- **sorrow, lamentation** ..... (*soka, parideva*),
- **suffering, grief and despair** [12] ..... (*dukkha, domanassa, upāyāsa*)

**come to be.**

**This is the origin of the whole mass of suffering.**

**This, bhikkhus, is called the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering.**

Also this needs to be known and seen as it really is, which is to know and see how five causes in one life (ignorance, volitional formations, craving, clinging and existence<sup>2</sup>) give rise to rebirth, which is five results (consciousness, mentality-materiality, the six sense-bases, contact and feeling). You need to see how this ongoing process continues from life to life.

### How You Know and See the Third Noble Truth

But it is not enough to see dependent origination only as the arising of formations; you need also to see it as the passing-away and cessation of formations:<sup>3</sup>

**And what, bhikkhus, is the**

<sup>1</sup> *salāyātana* (six sense-bases) (1) eye-, (2) ear-, (3) nose-, (4) tongue-, (5) body-, (6) mind-base. The sixth *āyatana*, the mind-base (*manāyatana*), comprises all consciousnesses.

<sup>2</sup> There are two types of existence (*bhava*): 1) kamma-process existence (*kamma bhava*), which is the production of kamma; 2) rebirth-process existence (*upapatti bhava*), which is the result of kamma (genesis in any sphere of existence).

<sup>3</sup> A.III.II.ii.1 'Tithāyatana Sutta' ('Sectarian Doctrines Sutta')

**Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering?** ..... (*dukkha nirodham ariyasaccam*)

- **With ignorance's** [1] **cessation** ..... (*avijjāya tveva asesavirāga nirodhā*),
- **volitional formations** [2] **cease** ..... (*saṅkhāra nirodho*);
- **with volitional formations' cessation, consciousness** [3] **ceases**;
- **with consciousness's cessation, mentality-materiality**[4] **cease**;
- **with mentality-materiality's cessation, the six sense-bases** [5] **cease**;
- **with the six sense-bases' cessation, contact** [6] **ceases**;
- **with contact's cessation, feeling** [7] **ceases**;
- **with feeling's cessation, craving** [8] **ceases**;
- **with craving's cessation, clinging** [9] **ceases**;
- **with clinging's cessation, existence** [10] **ceases**;
- **with existence's cessation, birth** [11] **ceases**;
- **with birth's cessation, ageing and death, sorrow, lamentation, suffering, grief and despair** [12] **cease**.

**This is the cessation of the whole mass of suffering.**

**This, bhikkhus, is called the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering.**

You need to see the momentary cessation of formations that takes place from consciousness-moment to consciousness-moment, which is knowing and seeing the mundane Truth of Suffering. And you need to continue until you see that you in the future attain arahantship and later attain Parinibbāna.

When you in the future attain arahantship, ignorance [1] will have been destroyed, and there will have been the remainderless cessation (*avasesa nirodhā*) of volitional formations [2], craving [8], and clinging [9]: the causes for suffering will have ceased. But suffering itself will not have ceased, because the results of past kamma still operate: you will still be possessed of the five aggregates.<sup>1</sup> (Even The Buddha was possessed of the five aggregates, and suffered pleasant and unpleasant feelings.<sup>2</sup>) It is only at your Parinibbāna that the five aggregates cease without remainder: it is

<sup>1</sup> The five aggregates are the same as consciousness (3), mentality-materiality(4), the six sense-bases (5), contact (6), and feeling (7).

<sup>2</sup> The Buddha suffered, for example, because of a back pain (please see p.297), and at old age because of that (please see quotation p.311 ).

only at your Parinibbāna that suffering ceases. This means there are two types of cessation:

1. the cessation at your attainment of Arahantship
2. the cessation at your Parinibbāna

The cause for these two cessations is the Arahant Path Knowledge, which knows and sees (Unformed (*Asaṅkhata*)) Nibbāna, the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering (*lokuttara Nirodha Sacca*). But this does not mean that when you now look into the future and know and see your attainment of arahantship and Parinibbāna, you know and see Nibbāna: you do not at this stage know and see Nibbāna. At this stage you know and see only when the five causes that give rise to formations cease, there are no more formations. With that knowledge, you understand that your Parinibbāna will have been realized.

Without seeing this, says The Buddha, you cannot realize Nibbāna, the goal of asceticism and Brahminhood:<sup>1</sup>

**Bhikkhus, those ascetics or Brahmins** ..... (*samaṇā vā brāhmaṇā vā*)

- [1] **who do not understand ageing-and-death,**
- [2] **who do not understand ageing-and-death's origin** ..... (*samudaya*),
- [3] **who do not understand ageing-and-death's cessation** ..... (*nirodha*),  
**and who do not understand**
- [4] **the way leading to ageing-and-death's cessation** ..... (*nirodha gāmini paṭi-padani*);

**who do not understand birth... existence... clinging... craving... feeling... contact... the six sense-bases... mentality-materiality... consciousness... volitional formations, their origin, their cessation, and the way leading to their cessation: these I do not consider to be ascetics among ascetics or Brahmins among Brahmins, and such venerable ones do not, by realizing it for themselves with direct knowledge, in this very life enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism or the goal of Brahminhood.**

<sup>1</sup> S.II.I.ii.3 '*Samaṇabrāhmaṇa Sutta*' ('Ascetics and Brahmins Sutta')

But you can enter and dwell in the goal of asceticism, you can see these things, because you have developed strong and powerful concentration. The Buddha explains in the ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ (‘Concentration Sutta’) of the ‘*Khandha Sāṇiyutta*’ (‘Section on the Aggregates’):<sup>1</sup>

**Bhikkhus, develop concentration. Having attained concentration a bhikkhu understands dhammas<sup>2</sup> as they really are** ..... (*yathā bhūtaṃ pajānāti*).

**And what does he understand as it really is?**

- [1] **The origin and cessation<sup>3</sup> of materiality** ..... (*rūpassa samudayañca atthaṅgamañca*).
- [2] **The origin and cessation of feeling** ..... (*vedanāya samudayañca atthaṅgamañca*).
- [3] **The origin and cessation of perception** ..... (*saññāya samudayañca atthaṅgamañca*).
- [4] **The origin and cessation of mental formations** ..... (*saṅkhārānaṃ samudayañca atthaṅgamañca*).
- [5] **The origin and cessation of consciousness** ..... (*viññāṇassa samudayañca atthaṅgamañca*).

### You Know and See Dependent Origination

The splendour, radiance, light, brilliance and brightness of wisdom that you have developed enables you to go back along the line of successive mentality-materiality from the present to the moment of your rebirth in this life, to the moment of your death in your past life, and further back in the same way to as many lives as you can discern, and then also look into the future, to the time of your own Parinibbāna.<sup>4</sup> By looking at the individual constituents of mentality-materiality, you will be able to identify the causes and effects.

<sup>1</sup> S.III.I.i.5 The Pāḷi is quoted p.114

<sup>2</sup> For *dhammas*, please see footnote 2, p.14.

<sup>3</sup> *atthaṅgama* and *nirodha* are synonyms for ‘cessation’.

<sup>4</sup> For details please see Talk 6 ‘How You See the Links of Dependent-Origination’, p.227ff

At the time of practising diligently and with a mind that is purified by strong and powerful concentration, engaged in the deep and profound practice of discerning ultimate mentality-materiality, you will see that in the future there is the attainment of final cessation: Nibbāna. But if you stop meditating etc., the conditions will have changed, in which case the future results will also have changed.

An example of this is Mahādhana the Treasurer’s Son and his wife.<sup>1</sup> They both inherited very much wealth, but Mahādhana squandered it on drink and entertainment. Finally, he and his wife had nothing at all, and were begging in the streets. The Buddha explained to Ānanda that if Mahādhāna had become a bhikkhu when young, he would have become an arahant; if he had become a bhikkhu when middle-aged, he would have become a non-returner; and if he had become a bhikkhu when elderly, he would have become a once-returner: such were his pāramī s. But because of drink, he attained nothing at all, and was now a beggar. This shows that our future is determined all the time by our present. That is why, at the time of practising deep and profound meditation continuously over a period, you will see your own Parinibbāna either in this life or in the future.

Without seeing past lives and future lives it is impossible for you to understand dependent origination as it really is: to know and see how past causes have given results in the present, and present causes will give results in the future, and how the cessation of the causes gives the cessation of the results. And without knowing and seeing dependent origination, it is impossible to know and see the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as it really is. It is explained in the *Visuddhi Magga*:

**There is no one, even in a dream, who has got out of the fearful round of rebirths, which is ever destroying like a thunderbolt, unless he has severed with the knife of knowledge well whetted on the stone of sublime concentration, this Wheel of Becoming, which offers no footing owing to its great profundity, and is hard to get by owing**

<sup>1</sup> Dh.p.A.xi.9 ‘*Mahādhanaṣeṭṭhiputtavattu*’ (‘The Case of Mahādhana, the Treasurer’s Son’)

to the maze of many methods.

And this has been said by the Blessed One:

**This dependent origination is profound, Ānanda, and profound it appears. And, Ānanda, it is through not understanding, through not penetrating it, that this generation has become a tangled skein, a knotted ball of thread, matted as the roots in a bed of reeds, and finds no way out of the round of re-births, with its states of loss, unhappy destinations... perdition.<sup>1</sup>**

Once you have known and seen the Second Noble Truth, and the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as it really is, you will have overcome doubt about the three divisions of time: present, past, and future. It is explained in the *Visuddhi Magga*:<sup>2</sup>

**When he has thus seen that the occurrence of mentality-materiality is due to conditions (*paccayatō*), then he sees (*samanupassati*) that, as now, so in the past too its occurrence was due to conditions, and in the future too its occurrence will be due to conditions.**

Having reached this stage, you have realized the Purification by Overcoming Doubt (*Kaṅkhāvitaraṇa Visuddhi*).<sup>3</sup> It is only at this stage that you can begin to practice Vipassanā, because it is only at this stage that you know and see ultimate reality: you cannot practise Vipassanā until you have seen dhammas<sup>4</sup> as they really are.

### You Practise Vipassanā

When practising Vipassanā, you go back and again know and see the Noble Truth of Suffering as it really is, and the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as it really is: you know and see the arising and passing away of all eleven types of mentality-ma-

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xvii '*Bhavaṅkka Kathā*' B659 ('The Wheel of Becoming Explanation' Ñ314) The quotation is from D.ii.2 '*Mahānidāna Sutta*' ('Great Causation Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> Vs.xix '*Paccayapariggaha Kathā*' B679 ('Condition Dependence Explanation' Ñ5)

<sup>3</sup> For the discernment of dependent origination/cessation, and past and future mentality/materiality, please see Talk 6 'How You See the Links of Dependent Origination', p.227ff

<sup>4</sup> For *dhammas*, please see footnote 2, p.14

teriality. But this time you know and see them as impermanence (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*) and without a self, non-self (*anatta*). You know and see formations as they really are, and reflect on them according to the instructions given by The Buddha in His second teaching, the '*Anattalakkhaṇa Sutta*' ('Non-self Characteristic Sutta'), which He taught to the group of five bhikkhus (*pañca vaggiyā bhikkhū*):<sup>1</sup>

**What do you think, bhikkhus,**

[1] **is materiality permanent or impermanent?** ..... (*niccaṃ vā aniccaṃ vā'ti?*)  
(Impermanent, Venerable Sir.)

**That which is impermanent,**

[2] **is it suffering or happiness?** ..... (*dukkhaṃ vā taṃ sukhaṃ vā'ti?*)  
(Suffering, Venerable Sir.)

**Is that which is impermanent, suffering and subject to change,**

[3] **fit to be regarded thus: 'This is mine;** ..... (*Etam mama;*)  
**this I am;** ..... (*esohamasmi;*)  
**this is my self'?** ..... (*eso me attā'ti?*)

(No, Venerable Sir.)

**Therefore, bhikkhus, whatever kind of materiality there is, whether past, future, or present; internal or external; gross or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near, all materiality should be seen as it really is with right wisdom thus: 'This is not mine** ..... (*netam mama;*)  
**this I am not** ..... (*nesohamasmi;*)  
**this is not my self'** ..... (*na meso attā*).

**Whatever kind of feeling there is.... Whatever kind of perception there is....**

**Whatever kind of mental formations there are.... Whatever kind of consciousness there is.... should be seen as it really is with right wisdom thus: 'This is not mine; this I am not; this is not my self'.<sup>2</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> S.III.II.i.7

<sup>2</sup> The commentary to the '*Chammovāda Sutta*' ('Advice to Channa Sutta'; M.III.v.2) explains that 'This is not mine' is a reflection on impermanence; 'This I am not' is a reflection on suffering; 'This is not my self' is a reflection on non-self.

In other words, formations (*saṅkhārā*), which is mentality-materi-ality and their causes, pass away as soon as they arise, which is why they are impermanent (*anicca*); they are subject to constant arising and passing-away, which is why they are suffering (*dukkha*); they have no self (*atta*), or stable and indestructible essence, which is why they are non-self.

### You Know and See the Unformed

Through a series of exercises in which you contemplate the rising and passing-away of formations, and then only the passing-away of formations, you progress through the remaining Knowledges (*Ñāṇa*), after which you will eventually know and see the unformed (*Asaṅkhata*), which is Nibbāna. When you know and see the unformed, you know and see the Deathless (*Amata*). This is explained by The Buddha:<sup>1</sup>

**Let him look on the world as void:  
Thus, Mogharāja, always mindful,  
He may escape the clutch of death  
By giving up belief in self.  
For King Death cannot see the man  
Who looks in this way on the world.**

When The Buddha says we must know and see the world as void, He means that we must know and see it as void of permanence (*nicca*), void of happiness (*sukha*) and void of self (*atta*).<sup>2</sup> In ordinary language, we may say that you must see absolute zero.

But this does not mean that the mind is absolute zero: the mind is fully aware: it is the object that the mind knows and sees which is absolute zero. The object that the mind is fully aware of and knows and sees is the Nibbāna element: the unformed element

<sup>1</sup> Sn.v.15 ‘*Mogharājamānavapucchā*’ (‘Young Brahmin Mogharāja’s Questions’), quoted Vs.xxi ‘*Saṅkhārupekkhāñāṇa Kathā*’ B765 ‘Equanimity-Towards-Formations-Knowledge Explanation’ Ñ60)

<sup>2</sup> Further to the perception of voidness, please see also Answer 5.9, p.225

(*Asaṅkhata Dhātu*).<sup>1</sup> This is the realization of the Supramundane Eightfold Noble Path, when all eight factors take Nibbāna as object.<sup>2</sup>

### You Fully Realize the Four Noble Truths

It is at this stage that you will have realized the Four Noble Truths as they really are, and that has been possible only because the necessary conditions for doing so have been present. In the *Kūṭṭhāgāra Sutta* (‘Pinnacled House Sutta’) mentioned above, the Buddha explains also how those conditions make it possible to put a complete end to suffering:<sup>3</sup>

**Indeed, bhikkhus, if anyone said:**

**‘Having built the room of a pinnacled house, I shall erect the roof’, such a thing is possible.**

**So too, if anyone said:**

- [1] **‘Having realized the Noble Truth of Suffering as it really is.....(*dukkhaṃ ariya saccaṃ yathā bhūtaṃ abhisamecca*);**  
[2] **having realized the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering as it really is;**  
[3] **having realized the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering as it really is;**  
[4] **having realized the Noble Truth of the Path to the Cessation of Suffering as it really is,**  
**I shall put a complete end to suffering’; such a thing is possible.**

And He adds:

**Therefore, bhikkhus, an exertion should be made .....(*yogo karaṇīyo*)  
to understand:**

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of the inevitable full awareness at the realization of Nibbāna, please see p.117

<sup>2</sup> For the realization of Nibbāna, please see Talk 7 ‘How You Develop the Insight-Knowledges to See Nibbāna’, p.255ff

<sup>3</sup> S.V.XII.v.4 ‘Pinnacled House Sutta’.

[1] 'This is suffering.' .....(*idam dukkhan'ti*)

Therefore, bhikkhus, an exertion should be made to understand: 'This is

[2] the origin of suffering.' .....(*idam dukkha samudayan'ti*)

Therefore, bhikkhus, an exertion should be made to understand: 'This is

[3] the cessation of suffering.' .....(*idam dukkha nirodhan'ti*)

Therefore, bhikkhus, an exertion should be made to understand: 'This is

[4] the path to the cessation of suffering.' (*idam dukkha nirodha gāminī paṭipadā'ti*)

May all beings find the opportunity to make the necessary exertion to fully realize the Four Noble Truths, and put a complete end to suffering.

**Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw**  
Pa-Auk Tawya Monastery



## Talk 1

## How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing to Absorption

### Introduction

We are very happy to have come to Taiwan, at the invitation of some Taiwanese monks and nuns who stayed at Pa-Auk Forest Monastery, near Mawlamyine in Myanmar.<sup>1</sup> While in Taiwan we should like to teach you something about the system of meditation taught at Pa-Auk Forest Monastery. It is based upon instructions found in the Pāḷi<sup>2</sup> Buddhist texts and the *Visuddhi Magga*.<sup>3</sup> We believe that the meditation taught in the Pāḷi Buddhist texts is the same as the meditation practised by The Buddha Himself, and taught by Him to His disciples during His lifetime.

### Why Meditate?

First we should ask ourselves, ‘Why did The Buddha teach meditation?’ or, ‘What is the purpose of meditation?’

The purpose of Buddhist meditation is to attain Nibbāna. Nibbāna is the cessation of mentality (*nāma*) and materiality (*rūpa*). To reach Nibbāna, therefore, we must completely destroy both wholesome mental formations, rooted in non-greed, non-anger, and non-delusion, and unwholesome mental formations, rooted in greed, anger, and delusion, all of which produce new birth, ageing, sickness and death. If we destroy them totally with the path knowledge (*ariyamagga*), then we will have realized Nibbāna. In

<sup>1</sup> Pa-Auk Tawya = Pa-Auk Forest

<sup>2</sup> For untranslated Pāḷi terms, please see Appendix 1, p.341.

<sup>3</sup> (*Purification Path*) authoritative and extensive instruction manual on meditation, compiled from ancient, orthodox Sinhalese translations of the even earlier Pāḷi Commentaries (predominantly ‘The Ancients’ (*Porāṇā*), dating back to the time of The Buddha and the First Council) as well as later Sinhalese Commentaries, and translated back into Pāḷi by Indian scholar monk Venerable Buddhaghosa (approx. 500 A.C.)

other words, Nibbāna is release and freedom from the suffering of the round of rebirths (*samsāra*), and is the cessation of rebirth, ageing, sickness, and death. We are all subject to the suffering of rebirth, ageing, sickness, and death, and so to free ourselves from the many forms of suffering we need to meditate. Since we wish to be free from all suffering, we must learn how to meditate in order to attain Nibbāna.

### What Is Meditation?

So what is meditation? Meditation consists of Samatha and Vipassanā meditation, which must both be based upon moral conduct of body and speech. In other words, meditation is the development and perfection of the Noble Eightfold Path (*ariya aṭṭhaṅgika magga*). The Noble Eightfold Path is:

1. Right view ..... (*sammā diṭṭhi*)
2. Right thought..... (*sammā saṅkappa*)
3. Right speech ..... (*sammā vācā*)
4. Right action..... (*sammā kammanta*)
5. Right livelihood..... (*sammā ājīva*)
6. Right effort..... (*sammā vāyāma*)
7. Right mindfulness..... (*sammā sati*)
8. Right concentration..... (*sammā samādhi*)

Right view The Buddha called Vipassanā right view (*vipassanā sammā diṭṭhi*) and path right view (*magga sammā diṭṭhi*). Right view and right thought are together called the training of wisdom (*paññā*).

Right speech, right action, and right livelihood are together called the training of morality (*sīla*).

Right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration are together called the training of concentration (*samādhi*), which is Samatha meditation (*samatha bhāvanā*).

### The Noble Eightfold Path

Now, let us look a little bit more at each of the eight factors of the Noble Eightfold Path.

The first factor is right view (*sammā diṭṭhi*). What is right view? Right view consists of four kinds of knowledge:

1. The insight-knowledge of the Noble Truth of Suffering, which is the five aggregates of clinging.
2. The insight-knowledge of the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering, which discerns the causes for the five aggregates of clinging, in other words, it is the insight-knowledge of dependent-origination.
3. The realization and knowledge of the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering, which is the cessation of the five aggregates of clinging, Nibbāna.
4. The knowledge of the Noble Truth of the Path Leading to the Cessation of Suffering, which is the way of practice leading to the realization of Nibbāna, the Noble Eightfold Path.

The second factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right thought (*sammā saṅkappa*). Right thought too is four-fold:

1. Applied thought to the object of the Noble Truth of Suffering, which is the five aggregates of clinging.
2. Applied thought to the object of the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering, which is the causes for the five aggregates of clinging.
3. Applied thought to the object of the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering, which is Nibbāna.
4. Applied thought to the object of the Noble Truth of the Path Leading to the Cessation of Suffering, which is the Noble Eightfold Path.

Thus, right thought applies the mind to the object of the Truth of Suffering, the five aggregates of clinging, and right view understands it as it really is. These two factors work together to apply the mind to each of the Four Noble Truths, and to understand them. Since they work together in this way, they are called the training of wisdom (*paññā sikkhā*).

The third factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right speech (*sammā vācā*). Right speech is to abstain from lying, slander, harsh speech, and useless talk.

The fourth factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right action (*sammā kammanta*). Right action is to abstain from killing, from theft, and from sexual misconduct.

The fifth factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right livelihood (*sammā ājīva*). Right livelihood is to abstain from obtaining a living by wrong speech or wrong actions, such as killing, stealing, or lying. For laypeople it includes to abstain from the five types of wrong trade: trade in weapons, humans, animals for slaughter, intoxicants, and poisons.

The three factors of right speech, right action, and right livelihood are called the training of morality (*sīla sikkhā*).

The sixth factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right effort (*sammā vāyāma*). Right effort is also of four kinds:

1. The effort to prevent the arising of unwholesome states that have not yet arisen;
2. The effort to remove unwholesome states that have already arisen;
3. The effort to arouse the arising of wholesome states that have not yet arisen;
4. The effort to increase wholesome states that have already arisen.

In order to develop these four types of right effort, we must practise and develop the three trainings of morality, concentration, and wisdom.

The seventh factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right mindfulness (*sammā sati*). Right mindfulness is also of four kinds:

1. Mindfulness of the body
2. Mindfulness of feelings
3. Mindfulness of consciousness
4. Mindfulness of dhammas

Here, dhammas are the fifty-one associated mental factors excluding feeling, or the five aggregates of clinging, or the twelve internal and external sense-bases, or the eighteen elements, or the seven factors of enlightenment, or the Four Noble Truths, etc. But the four types of mindfulness can in fact be reduced to just two, mindfulness of materiality and mindfulness of mentality.

The eighth factor of the Noble Eightfold Path is right concentration (*sammā samādhi*). Right concentration is the first jhāna (absorption), second jhāna, third jhāna, and fourth jhāna. These are called right concentration according to the ‘*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*’, the ‘Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness’.<sup>1</sup> In the *Visuddhi Magga*,<sup>2</sup> right concentration is explained further as the four fine-material jhānas (*rūpa jhāna*), the four immaterial jhānas (*arūpa jhāna*) and access concentration (*upacāra samādhi*).

Some people have a great accumulation of pāramī s, and can attain Nibbāna by simply listening to a brief or detailed talk on the Dhamma. Most people, however, do not have such pāramī s, and must practise the Noble Eightfold Path in its gradual order. They are called person-to-be-led (*neyya-puggala*), and must develop the Noble Eightfold Path step by step, in the order of morality, concentration, and wisdom. After purifying their morality they must train in concentration, and after purifying their mind by way of concentration practice, they must train in wisdom.

### How You Develop Concentration

How should you develop concentration?

There are forty subjects of Samatha meditation, and a person can develop any of these to attain concentration.

Those who cannot decide which meditation subject to develop should start with *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing). Most people succeed in meditation by using either *ānāpānasati* or four-elements meditation. Therefore, let us now look briefly at how to practise *ānāpānasati*.

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 (Also M.I.i.10) For bibliographical abbreviations and source references, please see above p.xvii.

<sup>2</sup> Vis.xviii ‘*Diṭṭhi-Visuddhi Niddesa*’ B662 (‘Description of Purification of View’Ñ1) Here, the *Visuddhi Magga* explains that ‘Purification of Consciousness’ is ‘the eight attainments together with access concentration’: this is the same as Right Concentration.

### How You Develop Mindfulness-of-Breathing

The development of *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) is taught by The Buddha in the ‘*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*’<sup>1</sup> He says:

**Bhikkhus, here in this Teaching, a bhikkhu having gone to the forest, or to the foot of a tree, or to an empty place, sits down cross-legged and keeps his body erect and establishes mindfulness on the meditation object.**

**Ever mindfully he breathes in, and ever mindfully he breathes out.**

- [1] **Breathing in a long breath, he knows, ‘I am breathing in a long breath’; or breathing out a long breath, he knows, ‘I am breathing out a long breath’.**
- [2] **Breathing in a short breath he knows, ‘I am breathing in a short breath’; or breathing out a short breath, he knows, ‘I am breathing out a short breath’.**
- [3] **‘Experiencing the whole breath body, I will breathe in’, thus he trains himself; and, ‘Experiencing the whole breath body, I will breathe out’, thus he trains himself.**
- [4] **‘Calming the breath body, I will breathe in’, thus he trains himself, and, ‘Calming the breath body, I will breathe out’, thus he trains himself.**

To begin meditating, sit in a comfortable position and try to be aware of the breath as it enters and leaves the body through the nostrils. You should be able to feel it either just below the nose or somewhere around the nostrils. Do not follow the breath into the body or out of the body, because then you will not be able to perfect your concentration. Just be aware of the breath at the most obvious place it brushes against or touches, either the top of the upper lip or around the nostrils. Then you will be able to develop and perfect your concentration.

Do not pay attention to the individual characteristics (*sabhāva lakkaṇa*), general characteristics (*sammañña lakkaṇa*) or colour of the nimitta (sign of concentration). The individual characteristics are

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 ‘Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness’ (Also M.I.i.10)



You should do nothing else, otherwise your concentration will break and fall away.

The *Visuddhi Magga* gives four factors for making the breath calm:<sup>1</sup>

1. Concern.....(*ābhoga*)
2. Reaction.....(*samannāhāra*)
3. Attention.....(*manasikāra*)
4. Reviewing.....(*paccavekkhaṇa*)

And they are explained first with a simile:

Suppose a man stands still after running or after descending from a hill, or putting down a load from his head; then his in-breaths and out-breaths are gross, his nostrils become inadequate, and he keeps on breathing in and out through his mouth. But when he has rid himself of his fatigue and has bathed and drunk and put a wet cloth on his chest, and is lying in the cool shade, then his in-breaths and out-breaths eventually occur so subtly that he has to investigate whether they exist or not.

Likewise, says the *Visuddhi Magga*, the bhikkhu's in-and-out-breaths are gross to begin with, become increasingly subtle, after which he has to investigate whether they exist or not.

To further explain why the bhikkhu needs to investigate the in-and-out-breaths, the *Visuddhi Magga* says:

Because previously, at the time when the yogi had not yet discerned the [in-and-out breath] there was no concern in him, no reaction, no attention, no reviewing, to the effect that [he knew] 'I am progressively tranquillizing each grosser bodily formation [the in-and-out breath].' But once he has discerned [the in-and-out breath], there is. So his bodily formation [the in-and-out breath] at the time when he has discerned [it] is subtle in comparison with what it was at the time when he had not [discerned it].

1. Concern.....(*ābhoga*)  
You pay initial attention to the breath, you apprehend the breath, you advert the mind towards the breath, to the effect: 'I will try to make the breath calm.'

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii 'Ānāpānasati Kathā' B220 ('Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation' Ñ178).

2. Reaction.....(*samannāhāra*)  
You continue to do so, i.e. you pay sustained attention to the breath that way, do it again and again, keep the breath in the mind, to the effect: 'I will try to make the breath calm.'
3. Attention.....(*manasikāra*)  
Literally 'deciding to make the breath calm'. Attention is the mental factor that makes the mind advert towards the object. Attention makes the mind conscious of the breath and know the breath.
4. Reviewing<sup>1</sup>.....(*paccavekkhaṇa*)  
You review (*vīmaṃsa*) the breath, make it clear to the mind, to the effect: 'I will try to make the breath calm.'

So all you need to do at this stage is to decide to calm the breath, and to be continuously aware of it. That way, you will find the breath becomes calmer, and the nimitta may appear.

Just before the nimitta appears, a lot of yogis encounter difficulties. Mostly they find that the breath becomes very subtle and unclear; they may think the breath has stopped. If this happens, you should keep your awareness where you last noticed the breath, and wait for it there.

A dead person, a foetus in the womb, a drowned person, an unconscious person, a person in the fourth jhāna, a person in the attainment of cessation (*nirodha samāpatti*)<sup>2</sup>, and a brahmā: only these seven types of person do not breathe. Reflect on the fact that you are not one of them, that you are in reality breathing, and that it is just your mindfulness which is not strong enough for you to be aware of the breath.

When it is subtle, you should not make the breath more obvious, as the effort will cause agitation, and your concentration will not

<sup>1</sup> Here, *vīmaṃsa* is synonymous with *paccavekkhaṇa*, and is the term employed in the subcommentary's discussion.

<sup>2</sup> When consciousness, associated mental factors, and materiality produced by consciousness are suspended. For details regarding this attainment, please see p.217.

develop. Just be aware of the breath as it is, and if it is not clear, simply wait for it where you last noticed it. You will find that, as you apply your mindfulness and wisdom in this way, the breath will reappear.

### The Nimitta

The nimitta of *ānāpānasati* varies according to the individual. To some the nimitta is pure and fine like cotton wool, or drawn out cotton, moving air or a draught, a bright light like the morning star Venus, a bright ruby or gem, or a bright pearl. To others it is like the stem of a cotton plant, or a sharpened piece of wood. To yet others it is like a long rope or string, a wreath of flowers, a puff of smoke, a stretched out cobweb, a film of mist, a lotus, a chariot wheel, a moon, or a sun.

In most cases, a pure white nimitta like cotton wool is the *uggaha-nimitta* (taken-up sign or learning sign), and is usually dull and opaque. When the nimitta becomes bright like the morning star, brilliant and clear, it is the *paṭibhāga-nimitta* (counterpart sign). When like a dull ruby or gem, it is the *uggaha-nimitta*, but when bright and sparkling, it is the *paṭibhāga-nimitta*. The other images should be understood in this way too.

So, even though *ānāpānasati* is a single meditation subject, it produces various types of nimitta: the nimitta appears differently to different people.

The *Visuddhi Magga* explains that this is because the nimitta is produced by perception.<sup>1</sup> And the Commentary to the *Visuddhi Magga* explains that it is the different perceptions which the different yogis had before the nimitta arose.<sup>2</sup>

Thus, the nimittas are different because of perception. But perception does not arise alone. It is a mental formation that arises always together with the individual consciousness and other mental formations: these mental formations associated with the indi-

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii 'Ānāpānasati Kathā' B231 ('Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation' Ṅ216)

<sup>2</sup> VsTi.ibid.

vidual consciousness are called associated mental factors (*cetasika*).<sup>1</sup> So, for example, if a yogi concentrates on the *ānāpāna nimitta* with a happy mind, the mental factors are not only the one perception, but are altogether thirty-four, such as, contact, volition, one-pointedness, attention, applied thought, sustained thought, decision, effort, and desire: not only perception differs, but also all the other mental factors differ.

This is in fact explained elsewhere in the *Visuddhi Magga*, in its explanation of the attainment of the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception (*nevasaññā-nāsaññā yatana jhāna*), the fourth immaterial *jhāna*.<sup>2</sup>

There, the *Visuddhi Magga* explains that the perception in that *jhāna* is very subtle, which is why we call it the attainment of neither-perception-nor-non-perception. But it is not only the perception that is very subtle. The feelings, the consciousness, the contact and all the other mental formations are also very subtle. Thus, says the *Visuddhi Magga*, in the attainment of neither-perception-nor non-perception there is also neither-feeling-nor-non-feeling, neither-consciousness-nor-non-consciousness, neither-contact-nor-non-contact, etc.<sup>3</sup>

So, when the commentaries say the nimittas are different because of perception, they are merely explaining the *ānāpāna-nimitta* from the single point-of-view of perception, in terms of perception (*saññāsīsa*), using perception as their example.

But, whatever the shape or colour of your nimitta, whatever your perception of the in-and-out breath, it is important not to play with your nimitta. Do not let it go away, and do not intentionally change its shape or appearance. If you do, your concentration will not develop any further and your progress will stop. Your nimitta will probably disappear. So when your nimitta first

<sup>1</sup> Please see also footnote 1, p. 202.

<sup>2</sup> For details regarding this *jhāna*, please see p.82.

<sup>3</sup> Vs.x 'Nevasaññā-nāsaññā-yatana Kathā' B287 ('Neither-Perception-Nor-Non-Perception Base Explanation' Ṅ50)

appears, do not move your mind from the breath to the nimitta. If you do, you will find it disappears.

If you find that the nimitta is stable, and your mind by itself has become fixed on it, then just leave your mind there. If you force your mind to come away from it, you will probably lose your concentration.

If your nimitta appears far away in front of you, ignore it, as it will probably disappear. If you ignore it, and simply concentrate on the breath at the place where the breath touches, the nimitta will come and stay there.

If your nimitta appears at the place where the breath touches, is stable, and appears as the breath itself, and the breath as the nimitta, then forget about the breath, and be aware of just the nimitta. By moving your mind from the breath to the nimitta, you will be able to make further progress. As you keep your mind on the nimitta, the nimitta becomes whiter and whiter, and when it is white like cotton wool, it is the uggaha-nimitta.

You should determine to keep your mind calmly concentrated on the white uggaha-nimitta for one, two, three hours, or more. If you can keep your mind fixed on the uggaha-nimitta for one or two hours, it should become clear, bright, and brilliant. This is then the paṭibhāga-nimitta (counterpart sign). Determine and practise to keep your mind on the paṭibhāga-nimitta for one, two, or three hours. Practise until you succeed.

At this stage you will reach either access (*upacāra*) or absorption (*appanā*) concentration. It is called access concentration because it is close to and precedes jhāna. Absorption concentration is jhāna.

Both types of concentration have the paṭibhāga-nimitta as their object. The only difference between them is that in access concentration the jhāna factors are not fully developed. For this reason bhavaṅgas still occur, and one can fall into bhavaṅga (life-continuum consciousness). The yogi will say that everything stopped, and may even think it is Nibbāna. In reality the mind has not stopped, but the yogi is just not sufficiently skilled to discern this, as the bhavaṅgas are very subtle.

### How You Balance the Five Controlling Faculties

To avoid dropping into bhavaṅga and to develop further, you need the help of the five controlling faculties (*pañcīndriyā*) to push the mind and fix it on the paṭibhāga-nimitta. The five controlling faculties are:

1. Faith ..... (*saddhā*)
2. Effort.....(*vīriya*)
3. Mindfulness ..... (*sati*)
4. Concentration ..... (*samādhi*)
5. Understanding.....(*paññā*)

The five controlling faculties are the five powers that control the mind, and keep it from straying off the path of Samatha (tranquillity) and Vipassanā (insight) that leads to Nibbāna. If one or more of the controlling faculties are in excess, there will be an imbalance.

The first controlling faculty is faith in what one should have faith in, such as the Triple Gem, or faith in kamma and its results. It is important to have faith in the enlightenment of The Buddha, because without it, a person will regress from his work in meditation. It is also important to have faith in the teaching of The Buddha, namely the Four Paths, the Four Fruits, Nibbāna, etc. The teaching of The Buddha shows us the way of meditation, so at this stage it is important to have complete faith in it.

Let us say the yogi thinks, 'Can jhāna really be attained by just watching the in-breath and out-breath? Is it really true that the uggaha-nimitta is like white cotton wool, and the paṭibhāga-nimitta like clear ice or glass?' If these kinds of thought persist, they result in views such as, 'Jhāna cannot be attained in the present age,' and the yogi's faith in the teaching will decline, and he will be unable to stop himself from giving up the development of Samatha.

So a person who is developing concentration with a meditation subject like *ānāpānasati* needs to have strong faith. He should develop *ānāpānasati* without any doubts. He should think, 'Jhāna

can be achieved if I follow the instructions of The Fully Enlightened Buddha systematically.’

If, however, a person lets his faith become excessive, and here it is faith in the meditation paṭibhāga nimitta, his concentration will decrease. Excessive faith contains excessive joy (*pīti*), which leads to emotions. This means the yogi’s mind is disturbed by joyful excitement, and wisdom is unable to understand the paṭibhāga nimitta. Then, because excessive faith has decided on the object, wisdom is not clear and firm, and also the remaining faculties, effort, mindfulness and concentration are weakened: effort is unable to raise associated mental formations to the paṭibhāga nimitta, and keep them there; mindfulness is unable to establish knowledge of the paṭibhāga nimitta; concentration is unable to prevent the mind from going to another object; and wisdom is unable to see the paṭibhāga nimitta penetratively. Thus excessive faith leads actually to a decrease in faith.

If effort is too strong, the remaining faculties, faith, mindfulness, concentration, and wisdom, will be unable to respectively decide, establish, prevent distraction, and develop penetrative discernment. Thus excessive effort causes the mind not to stay calmly concentrated on the paṭibhāga-nimitta.

This can be illustrated by the case of the Venerable Soṇa. In the city of Rājagaha, he heard the Buddha teach, and winning faith, he got his parents’ consent and ordained. The Buddha taught him a subject for meditation, and he went to the monastery Sītavana. He worked very hard, but pacing up and down in meditation with great energy, he developed painful sores on his feet. He did not lie down and sleep, and when he could no longer walk, he crawled on his hands and knees. He worked so hard that his meditation path was stained with blood. Even so, he won no attainment and was filled with despair.

The Buddha, on *Gijjhakūta* (*Vulture Peak* mountain), became aware of his despair and visited him. And The Buddha reminded him that when he as a layman had played the *vīṇā* (a type of Indian lute), the lute was not tuneful or playable if the strings were strung either too tight or too loose: they had to be strung evenly.

The Buddha explained that in the same way, too much energy or effort ends in flurry, and too little energy or effort ends in idleness. The Venerable Soṇa profited from the lesson, because not long afterwards, having reflected on the lesson, he became an Arahant.

To balance faith with wisdom, and concentration with effort, is praised by the wise. If, for instance, faith is strong and wisdom is weak, a person will develop faith in, and respect for objects without use and essence. For instance, he will develop faith in, and reverence for objects revered and respected by religions outside orthodox Buddhism, such as guardian spirits or protective deities.

If, on the other hand, wisdom is strong and faith is weak, a person can become quite crafty. Without meditating, he will spend his time simply passing judgements. This is as difficult to cure as to cure a disease caused by an overdose of medicine.

If faith and wisdom are balanced, however, a person will have faith in objects he should have faith in: the Triple Gem, kamma, and its effects. He will believe that if he meditates in accordance with The Buddha’s instructions, he will be able to attain the paṭibhāga-nimitta, and jhāna.

Again, if concentration is strong and effort is weak, a person can become lazy. For example, if, when the yogi’s concentration improves, he pays attention to the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta with a relaxed mind, without knowing it penetratively, he may become lazy. The five jhāna-factors will in that case not be strong enough to maintain the high level of concentration, which means his mind will very often fall into bhavaṅga.

But if effort is strong, and concentration weak, however, he can become agitated. When concentration and effort are balanced, he will become neither lazy, nor agitated, and will be able to attain jhāna.

When a person wishes to cultivate a Samatha subject, it is in any case good to have very strong faith. If he thinks, ‘I will certainly reach jhāna, if I develop concentration on the paṭibhāga-nimitta’, then by the power of that faith, and by concentrating on



the paṭibhāga-nimitta, he will definitely achieve jhāna. This is because jhāna is based primarily on concentration.

For a person developing Vipassanā it is good that wisdom be strong, because when wisdom is strong he will be able to know and see the three characteristics of impermanence, suffering, and non-self penetratively.

Only when concentration and wisdom are balanced can mundane jhānas (*lokiya jhāna*) arise. The Buddha taught that this applies equally to supramundane jhānas (*lokuttara jhāna*), which further require that concentration and wisdom be balanced with effort and faith.

Mindfulness is necessary under all circumstances, because it protects the mind from agitation due to excess faith, effort, or wisdom, and from laziness due to excess concentration. It balances faith with wisdom, concentration with effort, and concentration with wisdom.

So mindfulness is always necessary, as is the seasoning of salt in all sauces, and a prime minister for all the king's affairs. Hence the ancient commentaries say the The Blessed One said, 'Mindfulness is always necessary in any meditation subject.' Why? Because it is a refuge and protection for the meditating mind. Mindfulness is a refuge, because it helps the mind arrive at special and high states it has never reached or known before. Without mindfulness the mind is incapable of attaining any special and extraordinary states. Mindfulness protects the mind, and keeps the object of meditation from becoming lost. That is why to one discerning it with insight-knowledge, mindfulness appears as that which protects the object of meditation, as well as the mind of the yogi. Without mindfulness, a person is unable to lift the mind up or restrain the mind, which is why The Buddha said it is necessary in all instances.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Please see also Vs.iv 'Dasavidha-appanā Kosallam' B62 ('The Ten Kinds of Skill in Absorption' N45-49) and VsTi.ibid.

## How You Balance the Seven Factors of Enlightenment

If one is to achieve jhāna using *ānāpānasati*, it is also important to balance the Seven Factors of Enlightenment. They are:

1. Mindfulness .....(*sati*)  
Remembers the paṭibhāga-nimitta and discerns it again and again.
2. Investigation of Phenomena .....(*dhammavicaya*)  
Understands the paṭibhāga-nimitta penetratively.
3. Effort.....(*vīriya*)  
Brings the enlightenment factors together, and balances them on the paṭibhāga-nimitta; and especially reinforces itself, and the Factor of Investigation of Phenomena.
4. Joy.....(*pīti*)  
Gladness of the mind when experiencing the paṭibhāga-nimitta.
5. Tranquillity.....(*passaddhi*)  
Calmness of the mind and associated mental factors, that have the paṭibhāga-nimitta as their object.
6. Concentration .....(*samādhi*)  
One-pointedness of the mind on the paṭibhāga-nimitta.
7. Equanimity .....(*upekkhā*)  
Evenness of mind that neither becomes excited, nor withdraws from the paṭibhāga-nimitta.

A yogi must develop and balance all seven enlightenment factors. With insufficient effort the mind will fall away from the object of meditation, in this case the paṭibhāga-nimitta. Then one should not develop tranquillity, concentration, and equanimity, but instead develop investigation of phenomena, effort, and joy. That way the mind is raised up again.

When there is too much effort, however, the mind will become agitated and distracted. Then one should do the opposite, and not develop investigation of phenomena, effort, and joy, but instead develop tranquillity, concentration, and equanimity. This way the agitated and distracted mind becomes restrained and calmed.

This is how the five controlling faculties, and seven factors of enlightenment are balanced.

## How You Attain Jhāna

When the five controlling faculties, faith, effort, mindfulness, concentration, and understanding are sufficiently developed, concentration will go beyond access, up to jhāna, absorption concentration. When you reach jhāna, your mind will know the paṭibhāga-nimitta without interruption. This can continue for several hours, even all night, or for a whole day.

When your mind stays continuously concentrated on the paṭibhāga-nimitta for one or two hours, you should try to discern the area in the heart where the bhavaṅga-consciousness rests, that is the heart-materiality. The bhavaṅga-consciousness is bright and luminous, and the commentaries explain that it is the mind-door (*manodvāra*). If you try many times, again and again, you will eventually discern both the mind-door (bhavaṅga), and paṭibhāga-nimitta as it appears there. You should then discern the five jhāna factors one at a time. With continued practice, you will be able to discern them all at once. In the case of *ānāpānasati*, the five jhāna factors are:

1. Applied thought.....(*vitakka*)  
Directing and placing the mind on the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.
2. Sustained thought.....(*vicāra*)  
Maintaining the mind on the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.
3. Joy.....(*pīti*)  
Liking for the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.
4. Bliss.....(*sukha*)  
Happiness about the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.
5. One-pointedness.....(*ekaggatā*)  
One-pointedness of mind on the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.

The jhāna factors are together called jhāna. When you are just beginning to practise jhāna, you should practise entering jhāna for a long time, and not spend too much time discerning the jhāna factors. You should develop mastery (*vasībhāva*) of the jhānas.

There are five masteries:

1. To enter jhāna whenever desired.

2. To resolve (*adhīttjhāna*) to stay in jhāna for a determined duration, and carry out the resolve.
3. To emerge from jhāna at the determined time.
4. To advert to the jhāna factors.
5. To review the jhāna factors.<sup>1</sup>

In the ‘*Pabbateyyagāvī Sutta*’ of the *Āṅguttara Nikāya*,<sup>2</sup> The Buddha says one should not try going to the second jhāna before mastering the first jhāna. He explains that if one does not master the first jhāna completely, and tries to go to higher jhānas, one will lose the first jhāna, as well as be unable to attain the other jhānas. One will lose all the jhānas.

When you have mastered the first jhāna, you can try to progress to the second jhāna. You need to enter the now familiar first jhāna, emerge from it, reflect on its faults, and reflect on the advantages of the second jhāna. That is: the first jhāna is close to the five hindrances, and has the gross jhāna factors of applied and sustained thought, making it less calm than the second jhāna, which is without them. So, with no desire now for those two jhāna factors, a desire for only joy, happiness, and one-pointedness, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga-nimitta, and attain the first jhāna. When you now emerge from the first jhāna, and again review the jhāna factors with mindfulness and full awareness, the two jhāna factors of applied thought and sustained thought will appear gross to you, while joy, happiness or bliss and one-pointedness appear peaceful. So, in order to abandon the gross factors and obtain the peaceful factors, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga-nimitta.

<sup>1</sup> Adverting and reviewing occur in the same mind-door cognitive-process (*manodvāra-vīthi*). Adverting is performed by the mind-door adverting consciousness (*manodvāravajjana*), which in this case takes as object one of the five jhāna factors. It is followed by the four, five, six, or seven reviewing impulsion consciousnesses, which have the same object. For details, please see Talk 5, p.199, and Table 6, p.213

<sup>2</sup> A.IX.I.iv.4 ‘Mountain Cow Sutta’, also called ‘*Gāvī-upamā Sutta*’ (‘Cow Simile Sutta’)

This way you will be able to attain the second jhāna, possessed of only those three factors, joy, bliss, and one-pointedness. You should then develop the five masteries of the second jhāna.

When you have succeeded, and want to develop the third jhāna, you should emerge from the now familiar second jhāna, reflect on its faults, and reflect on the advantages of the third jhāna. That is: the second jhāna is close to the first jhāna, which has the gross jhāna factor of applied- and sustained thought. And the second jhāna itself has the gross jhāna factor of joy,<sup>1</sup> making it less calm than the third jhāna, which is without it. So, with no desire now for that gross factor, a desire for only the peaceful factors, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga-nimitta, and attain the second jhāna. When you now emerge from the second jhāna, and again review the jhāna factors, the jhāna factor of joy will appear gross to you, while bliss and one-pointedness appear peaceful. So, in order to abandon the gross factor and obtain the peaceful factors, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga-nimitta. This way you will be able to attain the third jhāna, possessed of only happiness and one-pointedness. You should then develop the five masteries of the third jhāna.

When you have succeeded, and want to develop the fourth jhāna, you should emerge from the now familiar third jhāna, reflect on its faults, and reflect on the advantages of the fourth jhāna. That is, the third jhāna is close to the second jhāna, which has the gross jhāna factor of joy. And the third jhāna itself has the gross jhāna factor of happiness, making it less calm than the fourth jhāna, which is without it. With the desire now to attain the fourth jhāna, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga-nimitta and attain the third jhāna. When you now emerge from the third jhāna, and again review the jhāna factors, the jhāna factor of bliss will appear gross to you, while equanimity and one-pointedness appear peaceful. So, in order to abandon the gross

---

<sup>1</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw explains that the jhāna factor of joy (*pīti*) is a contributory factor towards developing attachment for jhāna happiness (*jhāna sukha*), which, because the object is very subtle, cannot develop into sensual happiness (*rāga*); it is only subtle (*pīṭha*).

factor and obtain the peaceful factors, you should again concentrate on the paṭibhāga nimitta. This way you will be able to attain the fourth jhāna, possessed of only equanimity and one-pointedness. You should then develop the five masteries of the fourth jhāna.

With the attainment of the fourth jhāna, the breath stops completely. This completes the fourth stage in the development of *ānāpānāsati*:

[4] **‘Calming the breath body, I will breathe in’, thus he trains himself, and, ‘Calming the breath body, I will breathe out’, thus he trains himself.**

This stage began just before the nimitta appeared, and as concentration developed through the four jhānas, the breath became progressively calmer and calmer, until it stopped in the fourth jhāna.

The four jhānas are also called fine-material-realm jhānas, (*rūpāvacara jhāna*), because they may cause rebirth in the fine-material realm. But here we do not encourage you to develop jhānas for the sake of attaining rebirth in the fine-material realm, but for the sake of using them to develop Vipassanā meditation.

When a yogi has reached the fourth jhāna by using *ānāpānāsati*, and has developed the five masteries, the light of concentration is bright, brilliant and radiant, and he can, if he wishes, move on to develop Vipassanā meditation. The yogi can, on the other hand, continue to develop Samatha meditation. That will be the subject of our next talk, namely, how you develop Samatha meditation on the thirty-two parts of the body, the skeleton, ten kasiṇas, etc.

## Questions and Answers 1

**Question 1.1** How do we, in the four stages of *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), decide when to go from one stage to another?

**Answer 1.1** The Buddha taught *ānāpānasati* step by step: long breath, short breath, whole breath and subtle breath, only for easy understanding. At the time of actual practice, all four stages may occur at the same time.

Then, if you can concentrate on the whole long breath, and the whole short breath for about one hour, then (as your concentration improves) the breath will automatically become subtle, and you can change to concentrate on the subtle breath. When the subtle breath is long, you should try to know the whole, long, subtle breath; when the subtle breath is short, you should try to know the whole, short, subtle breath.

If the breath does not become subtle by itself, you should concentrate on it (attention (*manāsikāra*)) with the decision that it should be subtle.<sup>1</sup> That way it will become subtle, but you must not make the breath subtle on purpose, nor make it long or short on purpose; just decide that it should be calm. In this way, long breath, short breath, whole breath and subtle breath, all the four stages, are included in a single stage.

At the early part of the fourth stage, the breath becomes only very subtle. It does not cease entirely. The breath ceases entirely only at the fourth *jhāna*. This is the subtlest stage.

**Question 1.2** Is it necessary, in meditation, to have a *nimitta*?

**Answer 1.2** In some meditation subjects (*kammaṭṭhāna*) like *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), *kaṣiṇa* meditation and repulsiveness meditation (*asubha*), a *nimitta* is necessary. If one wants to attain *jhāna* in other meditation subjects, like recollection-of-The-Buddha (*Buddhānussati*), a *nimitta* is not possible. In lovingkindness

<sup>1</sup> For more details about calming the breath, please see p.44.

meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*), breaking down the barriers is called the *nimitta*.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 1.3** Some say that while practising *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) their soul goes out of the body. Is that true, or are they on the wrong path?

**Answer 1.3** A concentrated mind can usually create a *nimitta*. When concentration is deep, strong, and powerful, then because of different perceptions, different *nimittas* appear. For example, if you want the *nimitta* to be long, it will be long; if you want it to be short, it will be short; if you want it to be round, it will be round; if you want it to be red, it will be red. So various perceptions may arise while practising *ānāpānasati*. You may perceive yourself as outside the body. It is simply a mental creation, not because of a soul. It is not a problem. Just ignore it, and return to being mindful of your breath.

Only when you discern ultimate mentality-materiality (*paramattha nāma-rūpa*) internally and externally, can you solve the problem of a soul: you will not find a soul anywhere. So, you need to break down the compactness of mentality and materiality, and realize ultimate mentality and materiality.

*Nānādhātuyo vinibbhujitvā ghanavinibbhoge kate*

*anattalakkhaṇam yāthāvasarasato upaṭṭhāti*

(When we break down compactness,

the perception of non-self (*anatta saññā*) will arise.)<sup>2</sup>

It is because of the perception of compactness, that the perception of a soul arises.

To break down the compactness of materiality, you must first discern the *rūpa-kalāpas* (small particles). Then you must discern the different types of ultimate materiality, which are at least eight

<sup>1</sup> Only a name, for it is in fact not a *nimitta*.

<sup>2</sup> Vs.xxi 'Upakkilesavimutta-Udayabbayañāna Kathā' B739 ('Knowledge of Contemplation of Rise and Fall II'.Ñ4)

in each rūpa-kalāpa. Without doing this the perception of a soul will not disappear.<sup>1</sup>

Similarly, without breaking down the compactness of mentality, the perception of a soul will not disappear. For example, when your mind wanders, you may think that the wandering mind is your soul.

And how do you break down the compactness of mentality? Take, for example a mind-door cognitive-process of access concentration that has the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta as object.

Such a cognitive-process has one mind-door adverting-consciousness and seven impulsion-consciousnesses (*jāvanas*). In the mind-door adverting-consciousness moment there are twelve mental formations, and in each impulsion moment there are thirty-four mental formations.

There are four types of compactness in such a cognitive process that need to be broken down by insight knowledge:

1. Compactness of continuity .....(*santati ghana*):  
to break this down, you need to discern how a different consciousness, and its associated mental factors, arises in each consciousness-moment throughout the cognitive process.
2. Compactness of group.....(*samūha ghana*):  
to break this down, you need to discern each consciousness and each of its associated mental factors in every consciousness-moment throughout the cognitive-process.
3. Compactness of function.....(*kiicca ghana*):  
to break this down, you need to discern the characteristic, function, manifestation and proximate cause of each consciousness and each of its associated mental factors.
4. Compactness of object.....(*ārammaṇa ghana*):  
to break this down, you need to discern the insight-knowledge cognitive-process that discerned the cognitive process you have just examined (the mind-door cognitive-process of access concentration). This means the cognitive-

<sup>1</sup> For the delusion of compactness in materiality, please see also 'How You Analyse the Rūpa-Kalāpas', p.152

process that knew needs itself to be known by a subsequent cognitive process.

If you break down the four types of compactness of mentality this way, you will see only the rapid arising and passing-away of consciousnesses and their associated mental factors.

With that perception of impermanence, one can no longer think one's consciousness is one's soul, because with the perception of impermanence comes the perception of non-self. As said by The Buddha, in the '*Meghiya Sutta*':<sup>1</sup>

*Aniccaaññino meghiya anattasaññā saṅṭhāti.*

(For those who have powerful insight-knowledge of impermanence, insight-knowledge of non-self will also appear clearly.)

**Question 1.4** Where does the [*ānāpāna*] nimitta come from? What makes it appear?

**Answer 1.4** Most mind states that arise dependent upon the heart-base produce breathing. A real ānāpāna-nimitta comes from the breath. But not every mind state produces a nimitta. Only a deeply concentrated mind produces a nimitta. Therefore, the breath produced by a deep and concentrated mind makes an ānāpāna-nimitta appear. If the nimitta is far from the nostrils, it is not a real nimitta. A nimitta may appear because of concentration, but not necessarily the real ānāpāna-nimitta. If the nimitta produces jhāna, we call it an ānāpāna-nimitta. But if it does not produce jhāna, it is not the real ānāpāna-nimitta. If you concentrate on that nimitta, jhāna will not arise. Usually the concentration cannot become strong and powerful. If you meditate on that nimitta, it will very soon disappear.

**Question 1.5** What are the seven stages of purification and sixteen insight-knowledges?

**Answer 1.5** The seven stages of purification are:

<sup>1</sup> U.iv.1 (also A.IX.I.i.3)

1. Purification of Morality.....(*sīla visuddhi*)
2. Purification of Mind.....(*citta visuddhi*)
3. Purification of View.....(*diṭṭhi visuddhi*)
4. Purification of Overcoming Doubt.....(*kañkhāvitarāṇa visuddhi*)
5. Purification of Knowledge and Vision of  
What Is and What Is Not the Path.....(*maggāmaggañānadassana visuddhi*)
6. Purification of Knowledge and Vision of the Way.....(*paṭipadāñānadassana visuddhi*)
7. Purification of Knowledge and Vision.....(*ñānadassana visuddhi*)

And the sixteen insight-knowledges are:

1. Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality.....(*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*)
2. Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition.....(*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*)
3. Knowledge of Comprehension.....(*sammāsa ñāṇa*)
4. Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away.....(*udayabhaya ñāṇa*)
5. Knowledge of Dissolution.....(*bhaṅga ñāṇa*)
6. Knowledge of Terror.....(*bhaya ñāṇa*)
7. Knowledge of Danger.....(*ādīnava ñāṇa*)
8. Knowledge of Disenchantment.....(*nibbidā ñāṇa*)
9. Knowledge of Desire for Deliverance.....(*muñcītukamyatā ñāṇa*)
10. Knowledge of Reflection.....(*paṭisaṅkhā ñāṇa*)
11. Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations.....(*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*)
12. Knowledge of Conformity.....(*anuloma ñāṇa*)
13. Knowledge of Change-of-lineage.....(*gotrabhu ñāṇa*)
14. Knowledge of the Path.....(*magga ñāṇa*)
15. Knowledge of Fruition.....(*phala ñāṇa*)
16. Knowledge of Reviewing.....(*paccavekkhaṇa ñāṇa*)

Now you know the names of the insight-knowledges: have you experienced them? No. That is why to have only theoretical knowledge is not enough; you must practise with great effort to also realize them.

[At the end of this talk the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw added the following comment on the five hindrances.]

Now let us discuss briefly the five hindrances (*nīvaraṇa*):

1. Sensual Desire.....(*kāmacchanda*)
2. Ill-Will.....(*byāpāda*)
3. Sloth and Torpor.....(*thina middha*)

4. Restlessness and Remorse.....(*uddhacca kukkucca*)
5. Doubt.....(*vicikicchā*)

The first hindrance, sensual desire (*kāmacchanda*), is attachment to property or people. It is the desire for sense objects. For example, you may get attached to your *kuṭi*<sup>1</sup> or room. While meditating you may think, ‘Oh, it would be good if my *kuṭi* were beautiful.’ Or you may think, ‘Oh, it would be good if the whole room belonged to me!’ If you are overwhelmed by sensual desire, you will not be able to concentrate well on your meditation object. You must exert strong mindfulness and make effort to stop the arising of sensual desire.

The second hindrance is ill-will (*byāpāda*). It is hatred for or dissatisfaction with people or things. For example, if the yogi sitting next to you, while sitting down, makes a noise with his robes, you may become angry and think, ‘Oh, why is he making so much noise!’ If your mind is overwhelmed by hatred or dissatisfaction, you will not be able to concentrate well on your meditation object either.

The third hindrance is sloth and torpor (*thina middha*). If the mind is weak, or not interested in the meditation object, sloth and torpor can occur. Sometimes, however, sleepiness may be due to tiredness, illness, or lack of rest.

The fourth hindrance is restlessness and remorse (*uddhacca kukkucca*). If your mind is restless, it will be like a heap of ashes hit by a stone, flying about and scattering. The mind is scattered. While meditating, you must not relax the mind, and let it leave your meditation object. If you do, restlessness will occur. Remorse is to regret bad deeds done, and good deeds not done in the past. Here too, you must exert strong mindfulness, and make great effort to stop the arising of restlessness and remorse.

The fifth hindrance is doubt (*vicikicchā*). It is having doubts about:

1. The Buddha

<sup>1</sup> A *kuṭi* is a monastic dwelling for one, a cell or lodge.

2. The Dhamma
3. The Saṅgha
4. The three trainings: morality, concentration, and wisdom.
5. The past five aggregates (*khandhā*), which is past lives.
6. The future five aggregates, which is future lives.
7. Both the past and future five aggregates, which is past and future lives.
8. Dependent-Origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*), which includes the present five aggregates.

If you have doubts about the training in concentration, you cannot meditate well. For example, you may think: ‘Is it possible to attain jhāna through *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing)?

Can jhāna be attained by concentrating on the *ānāpāna-nimitta*?’

The five hindrances are opposite to jhāna concentration.

## Talk 2

### How You Develop Absorption on Other Subjects

In the previous talk we discussed how to develop the meditation subject of *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) up to the fourth *jhāna*, and how to develop the five masteries. As discussed, the light of concentration is then bright, brilliant and radiant, which means the yogi can, if he wishes, move on to develop *Vi-passanā* meditation.

But at this point the yogi can also go on to develop his *Samatha* meditation further. Today, we shall discuss how to develop other *Samatha* subjects: meditation on the thirty-two parts of the body, the skeleton, ten *kaṣiṇas*, etc.

#### How You Develop the Thirty-Two Parts of the Body

If you want to develop meditation on the thirty-two parts of the body, you should first re-establish the fourth *ānāpāna-jhāna* so the light of concentration is bright, brilliant, and radiant. You should then use the light to try to discern the thirty-two parts of the body, one at a time.

The thirty-two parts of the body are twenty parts with predominantly the earth-element, and twelve parts with predominantly the water-element. The twenty earth-element parts should be discerned in four sets of five:

I	II	III	IV
1. head hairs	6. flesh	11. heart	16. intestines
2. body hairs	7. sinews	12. liver	17. mesentery <sup>1</sup>
3. nails	8. bones	13. membrane	18. gorge <sup>1</sup>
4. teeth	9. bone marrow	14. spleen	19. faeces
5. skin	10. kidneys	15. lungs	20. brain

<sup>1</sup> *Mesentery* the fastenings of the bowels

The twelve water-element parts should be discerned in two sets of six:

I	II
1. bile	7. tears
2. phlegm	8. grease
3. pus	9. saliva
4. blood	10. snot
5. sweat	11. synovia <sup>2</sup>
6. fat	12. urine

Discern the parts in the given order, but one at a time. Try to see each part as distinctly as you would see your face in a clean mirror.

If, while doing this, the light of concentration should fade, and the part of the body being discerned become unclear, you should re-establish the fourth *ānāpāna-jhāna*, so the light is again bright and strong. Then return to discerning the parts of the body. Do this whenever the light of concentration fades.

Practise so that you are, from head hairs down to urine, or from urine back to head hairs, able to see each one clearly and with penetrating knowledge; keep practising until you become skilful.

Then, again using the light of concentration and with your eyes still closed, you should try to discern another being close by. It is especially good to discern someone in front of you. Discern the thirty-two parts of the body in that person or being, from head hairs down to urine, and from urine back to head hairs. Discern the thirty-two parts forwards and backwards many times. When you have succeeded, discern the thirty-two parts once internally, that is in your own body, and once externally, that is in the other person's body; do this many times, again and again.

<sup>1</sup> *gorge* undigested food, contents of the stomach

<sup>2</sup> *synovia* unctuous fluid in the joints



When you are able to discern internally and externally like this, the power of meditation will increase. You should thus gradually extend your field of discernment bit by bit, from near to far. Do not think that you cannot discern beings far away. Using the brilliant light of the fourth jhāna, you can easily see beings far away, not with the naked eye, but with the eye of wisdom (*nānacakkhu*). You should be able to extend your field of discernment in all ten directions: above, below, east, west, north, south, north east, south east, north west, south west. Take whomever you discern, be they human, animal or other beings, in those ten directions, and discern the thirty-two parts, once internally and once externally, one person or other being at a time.

When you no longer see men, women, devas, or buffaloes, cows, and other animals as such, but see only groups of thirty-two parts, whenever and wherever you look, internally or externally, then can you be said to be successful, skilful, and expert in discerning the thirty-two parts of the body.

### The Three Entrances to Nibbāna

Here, let us look at what is called the three entrances to Nibbāna. In the '*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*',<sup>1</sup> The Buddha teaches that the four foundations of mindfulness is the only way to Nibbāna. The commentary explains further that there are three entrances to the way to Nibbāna. They are the Samatha subjects of the colour *kaṣiṇas* (*vaṇṇa kaṣiṇa*), repulsiveness (*paṭikkūla manasikāra*), and voidness of self (*suññata*), which is four-elements meditation.<sup>2</sup>

Therefore, when a person has become proficient in discerning the thirty-two parts of the body, internally and externally, he can

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 'Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness' (Also M.I.i.10)

<sup>2</sup> The entrance of colour *kaṣiṇas* is mentioned in the '*Mahā Parinibbāna Sutta*' ('Greath Parinibbāna Sutta' D.ii.3), the '*Abhibhāyatana Sutta*' ('Place of the Vanquished Sutta' A.VIII.V.ii.5), and the '*Abhibhāyatana kathā*' ('Explanation of Place of the Vanquished' DhsA.1). The entrance of repulsiveness and voidness (of self) are mentioned in the '*Mahā Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta*' ('Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness' D.ii.9) in the section '*Kāya Nupassanā*' ('Contemplation of the Body'). Further to the perception of voidness, please see above p.33, and Answer 5.9, p.225

choose to develop any of those three entrances. The first entrance we shall discuss is repulsiveness meditation.

### How You Develop Skeleton Meditation

To develop meditation on repulsiveness (*paṭikkūla manasikāra*) you take as object either all thirty-two parts of the body or only one part. Let us look at how to meditate on, for example, the skeleton, the bones, which is one of the thirty-two parts of the body.

You should first re-establish the fourth ānāpāna-jhāna, so the light is bright, brilliant and radiant. Then use the light to discern the thirty-two parts in your own body, and then in a being nearby. Discern thus internally and externally once or twice. Then take the internal skeleton as a whole, and discern it with wisdom. When the whole skeleton is clear, take the repulsiveness of the skeleton as object, that is the concept, and note it again and again as either: 'repulsive - repulsive'; or 'repulsive skeleton - repulsive skeleton'; or 'skeleton - skeleton.

Note it in any language you like. You should try to keep your mind calmly concentrated on the object of repulsiveness of the skeleton for one or two hours. Be careful to see the colour, shape, position and delimitation of the skeleton, so that its repulsive nature can arise.

Because of the strength and momentum of the fourth-jhāna concentration based on *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), you will find that this meditation will also become deep and fully established: you will be able to produce, sustain and develop the perception and knowledge of repulsiveness.

Once your concentration on the repulsiveness of the skeleton is established, you should drop the perception of 'skeleton', and just be mindful of the repulsiveness.

According to the *Visuddhi Magga*, seeing the colour, shape, position, and delimitation of a part is seeing the *uggaha-nimitta*.

Seeing and discerning the repulsiveness of that part is seeing the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.<sup>1</sup>

By concentrating on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton, you can attain the first jhāna, at which time the five jhāna factors will be present. They are:

1. Applied thought ..... (*vitakka*)  
Directing and placing the mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton.
2. Sustained thought ..... (*vicāra*)  
Maintaining the mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton.
3. Joy ..... (*pīti*)  
Liking for the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton.
4. Bliss ..... (*sukha*)  
Happiness associated about the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton.
5. One-pointedness ..... (*ekaggatā*)  
One-pointedness of mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the repulsiveness of the skeleton.

You can, in a similar way, attain the first jhāna on the repulsiveness of one of the other parts of the body.

A question arises: ‘How can joy and happiness arise with the repulsiveness of the skeleton as object?’ The answer is that, although you are concentrating on the repulsiveness of the skeleton, and experience it as really repulsive, there is joy because you have undertaken this meditation, because you have understood the benefits of it, and because you have understood that it will help you to eventually attain freedom from ageing, sickness, and death. Joy and happiness can arise also because you have removed the defilements of the five hindrances, which make the mind hot and tired.

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii ‘*Kāyagatāsati Kathā*’ B214 (‘Mindfulness of the Body Explanation’ Ñ141)

It is just like a scavenger would be delighted to see a big heap of garbage, thinking, ‘I will earn a lot of money from this.’ Or like a person who is severely ill would be happy and joyful when relieved by vomiting or having diarrhoea.

The *Abhidhamma Commentary* explains that whoever has attained the first jhāna on the repulsiveness of the skeleton, should go on to develop the five masteries of the first jhāna. After that, the yogi should here too take the nearest being, best of all a person sitting in front of him, and with his light of concentration take that person’s skeleton as object. He should concentrate on it as repulsive, and develop this perception until the jhāna factors become prominent. Even though they are prominent, it is, according to the commentary, neither access concentration (*upacāra samādhi*) nor absorption concentration (*appanā samādhi*), because the object is living.<sup>1</sup> If, however, you concentrate on the external skeleton as if it were dead, you can, according to the sub-commentary to the *Abhidhamma*, the *Mūlaṭ ṭīkā*, attain access concentration.<sup>2</sup>

When the jhāna factors are clear, you should again concentrate on the internal skeleton as repulsive. Do this alternately, once internally then once externally, again and again. When you have meditated like this on the repulsiveness of the skeleton, and it has become deep and fully developed, you should extend your field of discernment in all ten directions. Taking one direction at a time, wherever your light of concentration reaches, develop each direction in the same way. You should apply your penetrating knowledge both near and far, in all directions, once internally and once externally. Practise until wherever you look in the ten directions, you see only skeletons. Once you have succeeded, you are ready to develop the white kasiṇa meditation.

<sup>1</sup> VbhA.vii.1 ‘*Suttantabhājanīya Kāyānupassanā Niddesa*’ (‘By Sutta Reflection-of-theBody Description’)

<sup>2</sup> VbhTi.ibid.

## How You Develop the Ten Kasiṇas

### The Colour Kasiṇas

There are four colours used for kasiṇa meditation: blue, yellow, red, and white. ‘Blue’ (*nīla*) can also be translated as ‘black’, or ‘brown’. All four kasiṇas can be developed up to the fourth jhāna by using as object the colours of different parts of the body.

According to the *Abhidhamma Commentary*, the head hairs, body hairs, and irises of the eyes can be used for the blue, brown, or black kasiṇa up to the fourth jhāna; fat and urine can be used for the yellow kasiṇa; blood and flesh can be used for the red kasiṇa; and the white parts, the bones, teeth, and nails can be used for the white kasiṇa.<sup>1</sup>

### How You Develop the White Kasiṇa

It says in the suttas, that the white kasiṇa is the best of the four colour kasiṇas, because it makes the mind clear and bright.<sup>2</sup> For that reason, let us first discuss how to develop the white kasiṇa.

You should first re-establish the fourth ānāpāna-jhāna, so the light of concentration is bright, brilliant, and radiant. You should then use the light to discern the thirty-two parts of the body internally, and then externally in a being nearby. Then discern just the skeleton. If you want to discern it as repulsive you can, if not, simply discern the external skeleton.

Then take either the whitest place in that skeleton, or, if the whole skeleton is white, the whole skeleton, or the back of the skull, and concentrate on it as ‘white - white’.

Alternatively, if you want to, and your concentration is really sharp, you can, if you have seen the internal skeleton as repulsive

<sup>1</sup> VbhA.ibid.

<sup>2</sup> A.X.I.iii.9 ‘Paṭhamakosala Sutta’ (‘First Kosala Sutta’)

and reached the first jhāna, take the skeleton as white, and use that as your preliminary object.

You can also discern first the repulsiveness in an external skeleton, and make that perception stable and firm, thus making the white of the skeleton more evident. Then, you can change to the perception of it to ‘white - white’, and instead develop the white kasiṇa.

With one of the objects of white in the external skeleton as object, you should practise to keep the mind calmly concentrated for one or two hours.

Because of the strength and momentum of the fourth-jhāna concentration based on *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), you will find that your mind will stay calmly concentrated on the object of white. When you are able to concentrate on the white for one or two hours, you will find that the skeleton disappears and only a white circle remains.

When the white circle is white as cotton wool, it is the *uggaha-nimitta* (taken-up sign). When it is bright and clear like the morning star, it is the *paṭ ibhāga-nimitta* (counterpart sign). Before the *uggaha-nimitta* arises, the *skeleton nimitta* from which it arises, is the *parikamma-nimitta* (preparatory sign).

Continue to note the kasiṇa as ‘white - white’ until it becomes the *paṭ ibhāga-nimitta*. Continue concentrating on the *paṭ ibhāga-nimitta* until you enter the first jhāna. You will find, however, that this concentration is not very stable and does not last long. In order to make it stable and last a long time, you need to expand the *nimitta*.

To do this, you should concentrate on the white *paṭ ibhāga-nimitta* for one or two hours. Then determine to expand the white circle by one, two, three, or four inches, depending on how much you think you are able to expand it. See if you succeed, but do not try to expand the *nimitta* without first determining a limit: make sure to determine a limit of one, two, three, or four inches.

While expanding the white circle, you may find that it becomes unstable. Then go back to noting it as ‘white - white’ to make it

stable. But as your concentration increases the nimitta will become stable and calm.

When the first expanded nimitta has become stable, you should repeat the process, that is, again determine to expand it by a few inches. This way you can expand the nimitta in stages, until it is one yard in size, then two yards, and so on. Do this until it extends in all ten directions around you, without limit, and so that wherever you look, you see only white. Do it till you see not even a trace of materiality, whether internal or external.

If you developed the white kasiṇa in a past life, during this or a previous Buddha's dispensation, that is, if you have white kasiṇa pāramī, then you will not need to expand the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta, because as you concentrate on it, it will automatically expand in all ten directions.

You should in either case now keep your mind calmly concentrated on the expanded white kasiṇa, and when it is stable, then just like hanging a hat on a hook, put your mind on one place in that white kasiṇa. Keep your mind there, and continue to note 'white - white'.

When your mind is calm and stable, the white kasiṇa will also be calm and stable, and will be exceedingly white, bright, and clear. This too is a paṭ ibhāga-nimitta, produced by expanding the original white kasiṇa paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.

You must continue to meditate, until you can concentrate on that white kasiṇa paṭ ibhāga-nimitta continuously for one or two hours. Then the jhāna factors will become very prominent, clear, and strong in your mind, and you will have reached the first jhāna. The five jhāna factors are:

1. Applied thought..... (vitakka)  
Directing and placing the mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the white kasiṇa.
2. Sustained thought .....(vicāra)  
Maintaining the mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the white kasiṇa.
3. Joy.....(pīti)  
Liking for the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the white kasiṇa.

4. Bliss.....(sukha)  
Happiness about the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the white kasiṇa.
5. One-pointedness.....(ekaggatā)  
One-pointedness of mind on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta of the white kasiṇa.

The jhāna factors are together called jhāna. In the way described in the talk on *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), develop the five masteries<sup>1</sup> of the first white kasiṇa jhāna, and then develop the second, third, and fourth jhānas, and the masteries of them too.

### How You Develop the Remaining Colour Kasiṇas

If you have developed the white kasiṇa meditation up to the fourth jhāna using the white of an external skeleton, then you will also be able to develop the brown, blue, or black kasiṇa using external head hairs, the yellow kasiṇa using external fat or urine, and the red kasiṇa using external blood, etc. You can also use those parts in your own body.

When you have succeeded, you can develop the colour kasiṇas using the colour of also flowers, or other external objects. All blue and brown flowers are calling out, inviting you to develop the blue kasiṇa. All yellow flowers are calling out, inviting you to develop the yellow kasiṇa. All red flowers are calling out, inviting you to develop the red kasiṇa. All white flowers are calling out, inviting you to develop the white kasiṇa. Thus, a skilled yogi can use whatever he sees to develop kasiṇa concentration and insight, be it animate or inanimate, internal or external.

According to the Pāḷi texts, The Buddha taught ten kasiṇas. They are the mentioned four colour kasiṇas, plus a further six: the earth, water, fire, wind, space, and light kasiṇas.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Please see p.55

<sup>2</sup> M.II.iii.7 *Mahāsakuludāyī Sutta* ('Great Sakuludāyī Sutta') & Dh.S.I *Aṭṭhakasiṇaṃ Soḷasakkhatukam* ('Eight Kasiṇas & Sixteen Times')

Now, let us discuss how to develop the remaining six types of kasiṇa.

### **How You Develop the Earth Kasiṇa**

To develop the earth kasiṇa, you should find a piece of plain earth, which is reddish brown like the sky at dawn, and with no sticks, stones, or leaves. Then with a stick or some other instrument, draw a circle about one foot across. That is your meditation object: an earth kasiṇa. You should concentrate on it, and note it as 'earth - earth'. Concentrate on it for a while with your eyes open, and then close them, and visualize the earth kasiṇa. If unable to visualize the nimitta in this way, you should re-establish the fourth ānāpāna-, or white kasiṇa-jhāna. Then use the light of concentration to look at the earth kasiṇa. When you see the nimitta of earth as clearly as if you were looking at it with your eyes open, and it is thus an uggaha-nimitta, you can go and develop it somewhere else.

You should not concentrate on the colour of the earth nimitta, or the characteristics of hardness, roughness etc. of the earth-element, but concentrate on only the concept of earth. Continue to develop this uggaha-nimitta until it becomes pure and clear, and is the paṭibhāga-nimitta.

You should then expand the paṭibhāga-nimitta a little at a time, in all ten directions, and develop this meditation up to the fourth jhāna.

### **How You Develop the Water Kasiṇa**

To develop the water kasiṇa, you should use a bowl, bucket or well of pure, clear water. Concentrate on the concept of water as 'water - water' till you get the uggaha-nimitta, and then develop it as you did the earth kasiṇa.

### **How You Develop the Fire Kasiṇa**

To develop the fire kasiṇa, you should use a candle, a fire, or any other flames you remember seeing. If unable to visualize it, you can make a screen with a circular hole in it about one foot across. Put the screen in front of a wood- or grass-fire, so you see only the flames through the hole.

Ignoring the smoke, and burning wood or grass, concentrate on the concept of fire as 'fire - fire' till you get the uggaha-nimitta, and then develop it in the usual way.

### **How You Develop the Wind Kasiṇa**

The wind kasiṇa is developed through the sense of touch, or sight. You should concentrate on the wind coming in through a window or door, touching the body; or the sight of leaves or branches moving in the wind. Concentrate on the concept as 'wind - wind' till you get the uggaha-nimitta. You can discern the nimitta of the wind by re-establishing the fourth jhāna with another kasiṇa object, and using the light of concentration see this movement externally. The uggaha-nimitta looks like steam coming off hot milk rice, but the paṭibhāga-nimitta is motionless. Develop the nimitta in the usual way.

### **How You Develop the Light Kasiṇa**

To develop the light kasiṇa, you should look at rays of light, as they stream into a room through, for example, a crack in the wall, and fall on the floor, or as they stream through the leaves of a tree and fall on the ground. You can also look up through the branches of a tree, at the light in the sky above. If unable to visualize it, you can put a candle or lamp inside an earthen pot, and place the pot in such a way that rays of light come out of the opening of the pot, and fall upon the wall. Concentrate on the circle of light on the wall as a concept, as 'light - light' till you get the uggaha-nimitta, and then develop it in the usual way.

### How You Develop the Space Kasiṇa

To develop the space kasiṇa, you should look at the space in a doorway, window, or keyhole. If unable to visualize it, you can make a circular hole in a piece of board, about eight inches to one foot across. Hold the board up so you see only the sky through the hole, no trees or other objects. Concentrate on the space within that circle as a concept, as ‘space - space’, and develop the nimitta in the usual way.

### The Four Immaterial Jhānas

Once you have attained the four jhānas with each of the ten kasiṇas, you can proceed to develop the four immaterial jhānas (*arūpa jhāna*), also called the four immaterial states. They are:

1. The Base of Boundless Space.....(*ākāsānañcāyatana*)
2. The Base of Boundless Consciousness.....(*viññāṇañcāyatana*)
3. The Base of Nothingness.....(*ākāśaññāyatana*)
4. The Base of Neither-perception-nor-non-perception.....(*nevasaññā-nāsaññāyatana*)

You can develop them with all the kasiṇas except the space kasiṇa.<sup>1</sup>

### How You Develop the Base of Boundless Space

To develop the four immaterial jhānas, you should first reflect upon the disadvantages of materiality. The human body produced by the sperm and egg of your parents is called the produced body (*karajakāya*). Since you have a produced body, you are open to assault with weapons such as knives, spears, and bullets, and to being hit, beaten, and tortured. The produced body is also subject to many diseases of, for example, the eyes, ears, and heart. So you should consider with wisdom that because you have a produced

body made of materiality, you are subject to various kinds of suffering, and that if you can be free of that materiality, you can also be free of the suffering.

Even though a fourth fine-material jhāna surpasses gross physical materiality, it is still based on it. Thus you need to surmount the kasiṇa materiality. Having considered this, and with no desire now for the kasiṇa materiality, you should re-establish the fourth jhāna with one of the nine kasiṇas<sup>1</sup>, such as the earth kasiṇa, emerge from it, and reflect on its disadvantages: it is based on materiality, which you no longer desire; it has joy of the third jhāna as its near enemy; and it is grosser than the four immaterial jhānas. But you do not need to reflect on the disadvantages of the mental formations (jhāna factors) in the fourth jhāna, because they are the same as in the immaterial jhānas. With no desire now for the fourth fine-material jhāna, you should also reflect on the more peaceful nature of the immaterial jhānas.

Then expand your nimitta, say, of the earth kasiṇa, so that it is boundless, or as much as you wish, and replace the kasiṇa materiality with the space it occupies, by concentrating on the space as ‘space - space’ or ‘boundless space - boundless space’. What remains is the boundless space formerly occupied by the kasiṇa.

If unable to do so, you should discern and concentrate on the space of one place in the earth-kasiṇa nimitta, and then expand that up to the infinite universe. As a result, the entire earth-kasiṇa nimitta is replaced by boundless space.

Continue to concentrate on the boundless space nimitta, until you reach jhāna, and then develop the five masteries. This is the first immaterial jhāna, also called the base of boundless space (*ākāsānañcāyatana*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Since space is not materiality, the space kasiṇa cannot be used to surmount the kasiṇa materiality to attain an immaterial jhāna.

---

<sup>1</sup> Please see footnote 1, p.80

### **How You Develop the Base of Boundless Consciousness**

The second immaterial jhāna, also called the base of boundless consciousness (*viññāṇañcāyatana citta*), has as its object the base-of-boundless-space consciousness (*ākāsānañcāyatana citta*), which had boundless space as its object.

To develop the base of boundless consciousness, you should reflect on the disadvantages of the base of boundless space: it has the fourth fine-material jhāna as its near enemy, and is not as peaceful as the base of boundless consciousness. With no desire now for the base of boundless space, you should also reflect on the more peaceful nature of the base of boundless consciousness. Then concentrate again and again on the consciousness that had boundless space as its object, and note it as ‘boundless consciousness - boundless consciousness’ or just ‘consciousness - consciousness’.

Continue to concentrate on the boundless-consciousness nimitta, until you reach jhāna, and then develop the five masteries. This is then the second immaterial jhāna, also called the base of boundless consciousness.

### **How You Develop the Base of Nothingness**

The third immaterial jhāna, also called the base of nothingness (*ākīñcaññāyatana*), has as its object the absence of the consciousness that had boundless space as its object, and which was itself the object of the base of boundless consciousness.

To develop the base of nothingness, you should reflect on the disadvantages of the base of boundless consciousness: it has the base of boundless space as its near enemy and is not as peaceful as the base of nothingness. With no desire now for the base of boundless consciousness, you should also reflect on the more peaceful nature of the base of nothingness. Then concentrate on the absence of the consciousness that had boundless space as its object. There were two jhāna-consciousnesses: first the cons-

sciousness of base of boundless space (*ākāsānañcāyatana citta*) and then that of the base of boundless consciousness (*viññāṇañcāyatana citta*). Two consciousnesses cannot arise in one consciousness-moment (*cittakkhaṇa*). When the consciousness of the base of boundless space was present, the other consciousness could not be present too, and vice versa. So, you take the absence of the consciousness of the base of boundless-space as object, and note it as ‘nothingness - nothingness’ or ‘absence - absence’.

Continue to concentrate on that nimitta, until you reach jhāna, and develop the five masteries. This is then the third immaterial jhāna, also called the base of nothingness.

### **How You Develop the Base of Neither-Perception-Nor-Non-Perception**

The fourth immaterial jhāna is also called the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception (*nevasaññānāsaññāyatana*). That is because the perception in this jhāna is extremely subtle. In fact, all the mental formations in this jhāna are extremely subtle; there is also neither-feeling-nor-non-feeling, neither-consciousness-nor-non-consciousness, neither-contact-nor-non-contact etc. But the jhāna is explained in terms of perception, and it has as object the consciousness of the base of nothingness.<sup>1</sup>

To develop the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception, you should reflect on the disadvantages of the base of nothingness: it has the base of boundless consciousness as its near enemy, and is not as peaceful as the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception. Furthermore, perception is a disease, a boil and a dart. With no desire now for the base of nothingness, you should also reflect on the more peaceful nature of the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception. Then concentrate again and again on the consciousness of the base of nothingness as ‘peaceful - peaceful’. Continue to concentrate on the ‘peaceful - peaceful’

<sup>1</sup> This is discussed in connection also with the different nimittas in mindfulness of breathing (*ānāpānasati*), p.48.

nimitta, until you reach jhāna, and develop the five masteries. This is then the fourth immaterial jhāna, also called the base of neither perception nor non perception.

Today we discussed how to develop the ten kasinas, and the eight attainments: the four fine-material jhānas and the four immaterial jhānas. In the next talk, we shall discuss how to develop the four sublime abidings (*brahmavihāra*) of lovingkindness, compassion, appreciative-joy, and equanimity; and the four protective meditations (*caturārakkha bhāvanā*) of lovingkindness, recollection-of-The-Buddha, foulness meditation and recollection-of-death.



## Questions and Answers 2

**Question 2.1** How should beginners balance the faculties (*indriya*) of concentration and wisdom? How should they practise wisdom in *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing)?

**Answer 2.1** We already talked about balancing the five controlling faculties in the very first talk, but we can summarize what was said. It is not so important for beginners to balance concentration and wisdom. This is because they are only beginners, and their five controlling faculties are not yet developed. In the beginning of meditation, there is usually much restlessness in the mind. So the faculties are not yet strong and powerful. Only when they are strong and powerful is it necessary to balance them. But if beginners are able to balance the faculties already at the beginning stage, that is of course also good.

For example, you are now practising *ānāpānasati*; *ānāpānasati* is mindfulness-of-breathing. Knowing the breath is wisdom (*paññā*). Being mindful of the breath is mindfulness (*sati*). One-pointedness of mind on the breath is concentration (*samādhi*). The effort to know the breath clearly is effort (*vīriya*). Having faith that *ānāpānasati* can lead to jhāna is faith (*saddhā*).

Beginners must try to develop strong and powerful controlling faculties. Their faith in *ānāpānasati* must be strong enough. Their effort to know the breath clearly must be strong enough. Their mindfulness of the breath must be strong enough. Their concentration on the breath must be strong enough. They must see the breath clearly. They must try to make their five controlling faculties strong and powerful, as well as try to balance them. If one is excessive, the others cannot function properly.

For example, if faith is too strong and powerful, it produces emotion. This means that the effort faculty cannot maintain associated mental formations on the breath; mindfulness cannot become established on the breath; the concentration faculty too, cannot concentrate deeply on the breath; and wisdom cannot know the breath clearly.

When, for example, effort is excessive, it makes the mind restless, so the other controlling faculties become again weak, and cannot function properly. When mindfulness is weak, you cannot do anything, because you cannot concentrate on the breath, will make little or no effort to discern the breath, and may have no faith.

Now you are practising Samatha. In Samatha meditation, strong and powerful concentration is good, but excessive concentration produces laziness. With laziness, the other faculties become again very weak, and cannot function properly.

At this stage wisdom is very dull or inferior. It knows only the natural breath. So for the beginner who is practising Samatha meditation, it is enough just to know the breath clearly. When the *uggaha* or *paṭibhāga-nimitta* appears, wisdom knows the *uggaha* or *paṭibhāga-nimitta*. Too much general knowledge apart from this is not good, as you may always be discussing and criticizing. If a yogi discusses and criticizes *ānāpānasati* too much, we can say his wisdom is excessive, which also makes the other controlling faculties weak, and unable to function properly.

So, even though it is not yet very important, it is still good for a beginner to balance his five controlling faculties. How to balance them? We must practise with strong and powerful mindfulness and effort to know the breath clearly, and concentrate on the breath with faith.

**Question 2.2** Why don't we, after attaining the fourth jhāna, go straight to discern the five aggregates, their nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self, and attain Nibbāna? Why do we before attaining Nibbāna need to practise meditation on the thirty-two parts of body, skeleton, white kasiṇa, four-elements, materiality, mentality, dependent-origination, and Vipassanā?

**Answer 2.2** The Buddha taught the five-aggregates method of practising Vipassanā to three types of person: those who have sharp wisdom, those whose insight-knowledge of mentality is not clear, and those who prefer to practise Vipassanā in the brief way.

What are the five aggregates? What is the difference between the five aggregates and mentality-materiality? Do you know the answer?

Before answering your second question, let us discuss mentality-materiality and the five aggregates. There are four ultimate realities (*paramattha*): consciousnesses (*cittā*), associated mental factors (*cetasikā*), materiality (*rūpa*), and Nibbāna.

To attain Nibbāna, the fourth ultimate reality, we must see the impermanent, suffering and non-self nature of the other three, that is, we must see:

1. Eighty-nine types of consciousness
2. Fifty-two associated mental factors
3. Twenty-eight types of materiality<sup>1</sup>

The eighty-nine types of consciousness are called the consciousness-aggregate (*viññāṇakkhandha*). Of the fifty-two associated mental factors, feeling is the feeling-aggregate (*vedanākkhandha*); perception is the perception-aggregate (*saññākkhandha*); and the remaining fifty associated mental factors are the formations-aggregate (*saikhārak-khandha*). Sometimes the consciousnesses (*cittā*) and associated mental factors (*cetasikā*) together are called mentality (*nāma*). Sometimes they are seen as four aggregates, the feeling-aggregate, the perception-aggregate, the formations-aggregate and the consciousness-aggregate, which together are the mentality-aggregate (*nāma khandha*). The materiality-aggregate (*rūpakkhandha*) is the twenty-eight types of materiality. The consciousnesses, associated mental factors and materiality together are called ‘mentality-materiality’ (*nāmarūpa*). They are sometimes also called the five aggregates: materiality, feeling, perception, formations, and consciousness. Their causes are also only mentality-materiality.

These five aggregates subject to clinging are *Dukkha sacca Dhammā*: the dhammas of the Noble Truth of Suffering. They

<sup>1</sup> For a full list, please see Table 1, p.169

need to be understood as such. In the ‘*Mahānidāna Sutta*’ of the *Dīgha Nikāya*, The Buddha explains:

**This dependent origination is profound, Ānanda, and profound it appears. And, Ānanda, it is through not knowing, through not penetrating this Dhamma, that this generation has become become a tangled skein, a knotted ball of thread, matted as the roots in a bed of reeds, and finds no way out of the round of rebirths with its states of loss, unhappy destinations...perdition.**<sup>1</sup>

With regard to this statement, the commentaries explain:

**There is no one, even in a dream, who has got out of the fearful round of rebirths, which is ever destroying [beings] like a thunderbolt, unless he has severed with the knife of knowledge, well whetted on the stone of sublime concentration, this Wheel of Becoming [Dependent-Origination], which offers no footing owing to its great profundity and is hard to get by owing to the maze of many methods.**<sup>2</sup>

This means that the yogi who does not know, and has not penetrated Dependent-Origination by the different stages of insight knowledge, cannot escape from the round of rebirths.

And in the ‘*Titthāyatana Sutta*’ of the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*, this was said by The Buddha:<sup>3</sup>

**And what, bhikkhu, the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering?**

**With ignorance as condition, [there are] volitional formations; with volitional formations as condition, consciousness; with consciousness as condition, mentality-materiality; with mentality-materiality as condition, the six sense-bases; with the six sense-bases as condition, contact; with contact as condition, feeling; with feeling as condition, craving; with craving as condition, clinging; with clinging as condition, existence; with existence as condi-**

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.2 ‘*Mahānidāna Sutta*’ (‘Great Causation Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> VbhA.vi.1 ‘*Suttantabhājanīya Vaṇṇanā*’ (‘By Sutta Comment’). Vs.xvii ‘*Bhavacakka Kathā*’ B661 (‘The Wheel of Becoming Explanation’ N344.)

<sup>3</sup> A.III.II.ii.1 ‘*Titthāyatana Sutta*’ (‘Sectarian Doctrines Sutta’)

tion, birth; with birth as condition, ageing-and-death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, displeasure and despair come to be.

Such is the origin of this whole mass of suffering. This, bhikkhus, is called the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering.

This is also called dependent origination. And The Buddha says dependent origination is the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering (*Samudaya Sacca*).

The Noble Truth of Suffering, which is the five clinging aggregates, and the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering, which is dependent origination, are called formations (*saṅkhārā*). They are the object of Vipassanā, insight knowledge. At the different stages of insight knowledge you comprehend these formations as impermanence (*anicca*), as suffering (*dukkha*), and as non-self (*anatta*). Without knowing and penetrating them, how can you comprehend them that they are impermanent etc.? That is why we teach Vipassanā systematically.

To know ultimate materiality, the materiality-aggregate of clinging, you must practise four-elements meditation till you see that materiality consists of small particles that we call *rūpa-kalāpas*, and you need to see the four elements in those small particles.<sup>1</sup> And you need to discern both the base and its object together.<sup>2</sup> Without discerning materiality this way, you cannot discern mentality, the four mental aggregates of clinging. That is why we teach Vipassanā stage by stage.

Now your second question. According to the Theravāda tradition, there are two types of meditation subject (*kammaṭṭhāna*): *pārihāriya kammaṭṭhāna* and *sabbatthaka kammaṭṭhāna*. *Pārihāriya kammaṭṭhāna* is the meditation subject by which the individual yogi develops concentration to be used for Vipassanā. The yogi must always use that meditation subject as his foundation. *Sabbatthaka kammaṭṭhāna*, on the other hand, is the meditation sub-

<sup>1</sup> For four elements meditation and related details, please see Talk 4, p.131.

<sup>2</sup> Please see further 'Introduction' p.6ff

jects to be developed by all yogis alike.<sup>1</sup> They are the four protective meditations:

1. Lovingkindness meditation.....(*mettā bhāvanā*)
2. Recollection-of-The-Buddha .....(*Buddhānussati*)
3. Recollection-of-death.....(*maraṇānussati*)
4. Foulness meditation.....(*asubha bhāvanā*)

So although a yogi uses *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) as his *pārihāriya kammaṭṭhāna*, he must practise the four protective meditations before going on to Vipassanā. This is the orthodox procedure.

To develop lovingkindness meditation up to jhāna, it is better if the yogi has already developed the white-kasiṇa meditation up to the fourth jhāna. An example of this is the five hundred bhikkhus to whom The Buddha taught the '*Karaṇīyamettā Sutta*'. Those bhikkhus were expert in the ten kasiṇas and eight attainments (*samāpatti*), had practised Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Arising and Passing Away (*udayabbaya ñāṇa*), and had gone to the forest to meditate further. But they returned to the Buddha, because the devas resident in the forest had become annoyed and had frightened the bhikkhus. The Buddha taught the bhikkhus the '*Karaṇīyamettā Sutta*' both as a meditation subject and as a protective chant (*paritta*). As a meditation subject it is for those who have already attained lovingkindness jhāna (*mettā jhāna*), and have broken down the barriers between the different types of person.<sup>2</sup> The '*Karaṇīyamettā Sutta*' is a more specialized practice of lovingkindness, in which one practises up to the third jhāna by extending lovingkindness to eleven categories of beings with the thought: '*Sukhino vā khemino hontu, sabbe sattā bhavantu sukhitattā*' (May all beings be happy and secure etc.). The Texts say The Buddha knew those five hundred bhikkhus would very easily

<sup>1</sup> For how and why you must protect your meditation, please see above p. 16; for details, please see Talk 3 'How You Develop the Sublime Abidings and Protective Meditations'.

<sup>2</sup> For details about lovingkindness jhāna, please see 'How You Develop the Sublime Abidings and Protective Meditations', p.97.

be able to do this, because they were already expert in the ten kasiṇas. And how is lovingkindness jhāna made easier by kasiṇa meditation?

In the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*, The Buddha taught that of the four colour kasiṇas, the white kasiṇa is best.<sup>1</sup> The white kasiṇa makes the yogi's mind clear and bright. A clear and tranquil mind is superior and powerful. If a yogi practises lovingkindness meditation with a clear mind, free from defilements, he usually attains lovingkindness jhāna within one sitting. So if one enters the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna, and after emerging from it, practises lovingkindness jhāna, it is very easy to succeed.

In order to attain the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna, a yogi should first practise skeleton meditation internally and externally, because this makes the white-kasiṇa meditation very easy. Therefore, after the fourth ānāpāna jhāna we usually teach yogis to do the thirty-two parts of the body, skeleton meditation and white-kasiṇa meditation. In our experience, most yogis say that the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna is better than the fourth ānāpāna jhāna, because it produces a clearer, brighter and more tranquil mind, which is also very helpful for practising other meditation subjects. So we usually teach white-kasiṇa meditation before lovingkindness meditation.

There is also a problem common to beginners. You may have practised lovingkindness meditation. Did you attain jhāna? In practice, if a yogi wants to extend lovingkindness to someone of the same sex, he should first take the smiling face of that person as object, and then develop lovingkindness towards him with: 'May this good person be free from mental suffering, etc.' With a beginner that smiling face very soon disappears. He cannot continue his lovingkindness meditation, because there is no object, and so he cannot attain lovingkindness jhāna or anything.

If he uses the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna, it is different. He emerges from the jhāna, and when he develops lovingkindness,

<sup>1</sup> A.X.I.iii.9 'Paṭhamakosala Sutta' ('First Kosala Sutta')

then because of the preceding concentration the smiling face will not fade away. He is able to concentrate deeply on that image, and able to attain up to the third lovingkindness jhāna within one sitting. If he practises systematically up to the breaking down of barriers between the different types of person, he can even practise the eleven ways of the '*Karaṇī yamettā Sutta*', and five hundred and twenty-eight ways mentioned in the *Paṭ isambhidā-magga Pāḷi* Text.<sup>1</sup> For this reason too, we usually teach the white-kasiṇa meditation before lovingkindness meditation.

You may also have practised recollection-of-The-Buddha (*Buddhānussati*). Did you attain access concentration? When those who have succeeded in lovingkindness jhāna practise recollection-of-The-Buddha, they are able to reach access concentration within one sitting, again because of the preceding concentration. Foulness meditation (*asubha*) too becomes easy. If a yogi practises foulness meditation up to the first jhāna, and then recollection-of-death (*marañānussati*), he is able to succeed within one sitting.

That is why we teach the white-kasiṇa meditation before the four protective meditations. If, however, a yogi wants to go straight to Vipassanā, without practising the four protective meditations, he can do so: no problem.

**Question 2.3** Why, after having discerned materiality and mentality, must one practise the first and fifth methods of dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*)? What are the first and fifth methods?<sup>2</sup>

**Answer 2.3** There are, according to the Theravāda tradition, seven stages of purification (*visuddhi*). The first five are:

1. The Purification of Morality ..... (*sīla visuddhi*)  
 Morality (*sīla*) of four types:<sup>3</sup>
  - i Pātimokkha restraint ..... (*pātimokkhā saṃvara sīla*)
  - ii Sense restraint.....(*indriya saṃvara sīla*)

<sup>1</sup> Ps.II.iv '*Mettā Kathā*' ('Lovingkindness Explanation')

<sup>2</sup> For details about how you practise the first and fifth methods of dependent origination, please see Talk 6, p.227ff.

<sup>3</sup> Vs.i. '*Sīlappabheda Kathā*' B13ff 'Morality-Classification Explanation' Ñ42 for details.

- iii Livelihood purification .....(*ājīva pārisuddhi sīla*)
- iv With regard to requisites ..... (*paccayasannissita sīla*)
- 2. The Purification of Mind..... (*citta visuddhi*)  
Access concentration (*upacāra samādhi*) and the eight attainments (*samāpatti*).<sup>1</sup>
- 3. The Purification of View ..... (*diṭṭhi visuddhi*):  
The Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa - pariccheda ñāṇa*).
- 4. The Purification by Overcoming Doubt ..... (*kaṅkhāvitarāṇa visuddhi*):  
The Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya parigaha ñāṇa*), in other words, seeing dependent-origination (*paṭi-casamuppāda*).
- 5. The Purification by Knowledge and Vision of What Is and What Is Not the Path ..... (*maggāmaggañāṇadassana visuddhi*):  
The Knowledge of Comprehension (*sammasana ñāṇa*) and Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away (*udayabbaya ñāṇa*) which is the beginning of Vipassanā.

So before Vipassanā there are four purifications. Why? Vipassanā is insight, to comprehend the impermanence, suffering, and non-self nature of mentality-materiality and their causes. Without knowing mentality-materiality and their causes, how can we comprehend that they are impermanent, suffering, and non-self? How can we practise Vipassanā? It is only after we have thoroughly discerned mentality-materiality and their causes, that we can practise Vipassanā meditation.

Mentality-materiality and their causes are called ‘formations’ (*saṅkhārā*). They pass away as soon as they arise, which is why they are impermanent; they are subject to constant arising and passing-away, which is why they are suffering; they have no self (*atta*), or stable and indestructible essence, which is why they are non-self.

Comprehending impermanence, suffering, and non-self in this way is real Vipassanā. So before Vipassanā, we teach yogis to

<sup>1</sup> Vis.xviii ‘*Diṭṭhi-Visuddhi Niddesa*’ B662 (‘Description of Purification of View’Ñ1)

discern mentality, materiality and dependent-origination. The commentary explains it as, ‘*aniccanti pañcakkhandhā*.’,<sup>1</sup> and ‘*aniccanti khandha pañcakaṃ*’<sup>2</sup> That means, ‘impermanence is the five aggregates.’ The five aggregates are, in other words, mentality-materiality and their causes. So real Vipassanā requires that you know the five aggregates, and their causes and effects.

The Buddha taught according to the character of his listeners, and taught four methods for discerning dependent-origination. In the *Paṭ isambhidāmagga*, there is yet another method.<sup>3</sup> Altogether there are five methods. The first of the methods taught by The Buddha is to discern dependent-origination in forward order:

*Avijjā paccayā saṅkhārā,*

*saṅkhāra paccayā viññāṇam,*

*viññāṇa paccayā nāma-rūpaṃ* etc.

(With ignorance as condition, formations come to be; with formations as condition, consciousness; with consciousness as condition, mentality-materiality; [etc.]

The first method is popular in Theravāda Buddhism, but may be very difficult for those who have no Abhidhamma knowledge. Even yogis with good Abhidhamma knowledge may have many difficulties.

The fifth method taught by the Venerable Sāriputta, and recorded in the *Paṭ isambhidāmagga* Pāḷi Text, is easy for beginners. It is to discern that five past causes have produced five present effects, and that five present causes will produce five future effects. This is the main principle in the fifth method. If you want to know it with direct experience, you should practise up to this stage.

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii ‘*Ānāpānasati Kathā*’ B236 (Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation Ñ234). Vs.xxi ‘*Upakilesavimutta-Udayabbayañāṇa Kathā*’ B740 (‘Knowledge of Contemplation of Rise and Fall II’Ñ6)

<sup>2</sup> VbhA.ii.1 ‘*Suttantabhājanīya Vaṇṇanā*’ (‘By Sutta Comment’)

<sup>3</sup> Ps.I.i.4 *Dhammaṭṭhitiñāṇa Niddeso* (‘Standing-on-Phenomena Knowledge Description’)

After practising the fifth method systematically, you will not have much difficulty in practising the first method. For this reason we teach the fifth method before the first method. We teach all five methods to those who have time, and want to practise further. But although The Buddha taught dependent-origination according to the character of his listeners, one method is enough to attain Nibbāna. Even so, because the first method is popular in Theravāda Buddhism, we teach both the fifth and first methods.

One day, the Venerable Ānanda practised dependent-origination in all four ways. In the evening, he went to The Buddha and said, Bhante, although dependent-origination is deep, it is easy to me. The Buddha replied:<sup>1</sup>

*Etassa cānanda, dhammassa ananubodhā, appaṭivedhā evamayam pajā tantākulakajātā, kulāgaṇṭhikajātā, muñjapabbajabhūtā apāyam duggatim vinipātam saṃsāram nātivattati.*

This means that without knowing dependent-origination, with the *anubodha ñāṇa* and the *paṭ ivedha ñāṇa*, one cannot escape the round of rebirths (*saṃsāra*), and four woeful realms (*apāya*). The *anubodha ñāṇa* is the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*), and Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya pariggaha ñāṇa*). The *paṭ ivedha ñāṇa* is all the insight-knowledges (*vipassanā ñāṇa*). So without knowing dependent-origination with the *anubodha ñāṇa* and *paṭ ivedha ñāṇa*, one cannot attain Nibbāna. With this quotation, the commentary says that without knowing dependent-origination, no one can escape from the round of rebirths, even in a dream.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.2 'Mahānidāna Sutta' (Great Causation Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> For further details, please see 'Introduction' p.31.

Talk 3

**How You Develop  
the Sublime Abidings and Protective Meditations**

**Introduction**

Today let us look at how you develop the four sublime abidings (*cattāro brahmavihārā*), and four protective meditations (*caturārakkha bhāvanā*). The four sublime abidings are the meditation subjects of

1. Lovingkindness .....(*mettā*)
2. Compassion.....(*karuṇā*)
3. Appreciative joy.....(*muditā*)
4. Equanimity .....(*upekkhā*)

The four protective meditations (*caturārakkha bhāvanā*) are the meditation subjects of

1. Lovingkindness .....(*mettā*)
2. Recollection-of-The-Buddha .....(*Buddhānussati*)
3. Foulness meditation.....(*asubha bhāvanā*)
4. Recollection-of-death.....(*maraṇānussati*)

**How You Develop Lovingkindness**

**Introduction**

To develop the sublime abiding of lovingkindness (*mettā*), you need first of all be aware that it should not be developed towards a person of the opposite sex (*liṅgavisabhāga*), or a dead person (*kālakatapuggala*).

A person of the opposite sex should not be used as object, because lust towards him or her will probably arise. After you have attained *jhāna*, however, it is possible to develop lovingkindness towards the opposite sex as a group with, for example, ‘May all women be happy.’ A dead person should at no time be used, because you cannot attain lovingkindness *jhāna* with a dead person as object.

The people you should develop lovingkindness towards are:

- Yourself.....(*atta*)
- A person you like and respect .....(*piya puggala*)
- A person you are indifferent to .....(*majjhata puggala*)
- A person you hate.....(*verī puggala*)

In the very beginning, though, you should develop lovingkindness towards only the first two, yourself and the person you like and respect. This means that in the very beginning, you should not develop lovingkindness towards the following types of person: a person you do not like (*appiya puggala*), a person very dear to you (*atippiyasahāyaka puggala*), a person you are indifferent to (*majjhata puggala*), and a person you hate (*verī puggala*).

A person you do not like is one who does not do what is beneficial to you, or to those you care for. A person you hate is one who does what is detrimental to you, or to those you care for. They are in the beginning both difficult to develop lovingkindness towards, because anger may arise. It is in the beginning also difficult to develop lovingkindness towards a person to whom you are indifferent. In the case of a person who is very dear to you, you may be too attached to that person, and be filled with concern and grief, and even cry if you hear something has happened to him or her. So these four should not be used in the very beginning. Later, though, once you have attained lovingkindness *jhāna*, you will be able to develop lovingkindness towards them.

You cannot attain *jhāna* using yourself as object even if you were to develop that meditation for a hundred years. So why begin by developing lovingkindness to yourself? It is not to attain even access concentration, but because when you have developed lovingkindness towards yourself, with the thought, ‘May I be happy’, then are you able to identify yourself with others; to see that just as you want to be happy, do not want to suffer, want to live long, and do not want to die, so too do all other beings want to be happy, not want to suffer, want to live long, and not want to die.

Thus you are able to develop a mind that desires the happiness and prosperity of other beings. In the words of The Buddha:<sup>1</sup>

*Sabbā disā anuparigamma cetasā,  
Nevajjhagā piyatara mattanā kvaci.  
Evaṃ piyo puthu attā puresaṃ,  
Tasmā na himse paramattakāmo.*

(Having searched in all directions with the mind, one cannot find anyone anywhere whom one loves more than oneself. In this same way do all beings in all directions love themselves more than anyone else, therefore, one who desires his own welfare should not harm others.)

So in order to identify yourself in this way with others and make your mind soft and kind, you should first develop loving-kindness towards yourself with the following four thoughts:

1. May I be free from danger .....(*aham̐ avero homi*)
2. May I be free from mental pain .....(*abyāpajjo homi*)
3. May I be free from physical pain .....(*anīgho homi*)
4. May I be well and happy .....(*sukhī attānaṃ pariharāmi*)

If one's mind is soft, kind, understanding, and has empathy for others, one should have no difficulty developing lovingkindness towards another. So it is important that the lovingkindness you have developed towards yourself be strong and powerful. Once your mind has become soft, kind, understanding, and has empathy for other beings, then can you begin to develop lovingkindness towards them.

### How You Develop Lovingkindness Person by Person

If you have attained the fourth ānāpāna-, or white kasiṇa-jhāna, you should re-establish it so the light is bright, brilliant, and radiant. With the light of particularly the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna, it

<sup>1</sup> S.I.III.i.8 'Mallikā Sutta' ('Mallikā Sutta')

is really very easy to develop lovingkindness meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*).<sup>1</sup> The reason is that with the concentration of the fourth jhāna the mind is purified of greed, anger, delusion, and other defilements. After having emerged from particularly the fourth white-kasiṇa jhāna, the mind is pliant, workable, pure, bright, brilliant and radiant, and because of this, you will in a very short time be able to develop powerful and perfect lovingkindness (*mettā*).

So, with the strong and bright light, you should direct your mind towards a person of your own sex, whom you like and respect: maybe your teacher or a fellow yogi. You will find that the light spreads out around you in all directions, and that whomever you pick as object becomes visible. You then take an image of that person, sitting or standing, and select the one you like most, and which makes you the happiest. Try to recall the time when he or she was the happiest you ever saw, and choose that image. Make it appear about one yard in front of you. When you can see the image clearly before you, develop lovingkindness towards him or her with the four thoughts:

1. May this good person be free from danger ..... (*ayaṃ sappuriso avero hotu*)
2. May this good person be free from mental pain ..... (*ayaṃ sappuriso abyāpajjo hotu*)
3. May this good person be free from physical pain ..... (*ayaṃ sappuriso anīgho hotu*)
4. May this good person be well and happy ..... (*ayaṃ sappuriso sukhī attānaṃ pariharatu*)

Extend lovingkindness towards that person with these four phrases three or four times, and then select the one you like most, for example, 'May this good person be free from danger'. Then, with a new image of that person, in this case free from danger, extend lovingkindness using the corresponding thought, in this case, 'May this good person be free from danger - may this good person be free from danger'. Do it again and again, until the mind is calm and steadily fixed on the object, and you can discern the jhāna factors. Then, keep practising until you reach the second,

<sup>1</sup> In this regard, please see further Answer 2.2, p. 86ff.



and third jhānas. After that take each of the other three phrases and develop lovingkindness up to the third jhāna. You should have an appropriate image for each of the four phrases, that is, when thinking ‘May this good person be free from danger’, you should have a particular image of that person as free from danger; when thinking ‘May this good person be free from mental pain’, you should have another image, one of that person as free from mental pain, and so on. In this way you should develop the three jhānas, and remember in each case to practise the five masteries (*vasī-bhāva*).

When you have succeeded with one person you like and respect, do it again with another person of your own sex whom you like and respect. Try doing this with about ten people of that type, until you can reach the third jhāna using any of them. By this stage you can safely go on to people, still of your own sex, who are very dear to you (*atippiyasahāyaka*). Take about ten people of that type, and develop lovingkindness towards them one by one, in the same way, until the third jhāna.

Then you can also take about ten people of your own sex whom you are indifferent to, and in the same way develop lovingkindness towards them until the third jhāna.

You will by now have mastered the lovingkindness jhāna to such an extent that you can in the same way develop it towards about ten people of your own sex whom you hate. If you are a type of Great Being like the bodhisatta when he was Mahākapi, the monkey king, who never hated anyone who harmed him, and you really neither hate, nor despise anyone, then do not look for someone to use here. Only those who have people they hate or despise can develop lovingkindness towards that type.

Practising lovingkindness in this way, that is, by developing concentration up to the third jhāna on each type of people, progressively from one to the next, from the easiest to the more difficult, you make your mind increasingly soft, kind and pliant, until you are finally able to attain jhāna on any of the four types: those you respect, those very dear to you, those you are indifferent to, and those you hate.

### How You Break Down the Barriers

As you continue to thus develop lovingkindness, you will find that your lovingkindness towards those you like and respect, and those very dear to you, becomes even, and you can take them as one, as just people you like. Then you will be left with only these four types of person:

1. Yourself
2. People you like
3. People you are indifferent to
4. People you hate

You will need to continue developing lovingkindness towards these four, until it becomes balanced and without distinctions. Even though you cannot attain lovingkindness jhāna with yourself as object, you still need to include yourself in order to balance the four types.

To do this, you need to re-establish the fourth ānāpāna-, or white kasiṇa-jhāna. With the strong and bright light, extend lovingkindness to yourself for about a minute or even a few seconds; then towards someone you like, then someone you are indifferent to, and then someone you hate, each one up to the third jhāna. Then again yourself briefly, but the other three types must now each be a different person. Remember to develop them with each of the four phrases, ‘May this good person be free from danger’ etc. each, up to the third jhāna.

Thus you should every time change the person of each of the three types: a person you like, one you are indifferent to, and one you hate. Do this again and again, with different groups of four, many times, so that your mind is continuously developing lovingkindness without interruption, and without distinctions. When you are able to develop lovingkindness jhāna towards any of the four without distinction, you will have achieved what is called ‘breaking down the barriers’ (*sīmāsambheda*). With the barriers between types and individuals broken down, you will be able to further develop your lovingkindness meditation, by taking up the

method taught by the Venerable Sāriputta; recorded in the *Paṭ isambhidāmagga*.<sup>1</sup>

### The Twenty-Two Categories

The method in the *Paṭ isambhidāmagga* involves twenty-two categories by which to extend one's lovingkindness: five unspecified categories (*anodhiso pharaṇā*), seven specified categories (*odhiso pharaṇā*), and ten directional categories (*disā pharaṇā*).

The five unspecified categories are:

1. All beings.....(*sabbe sattā*)
2. All breathing things ..... (*sabbe pāṇā*)
3. All creatures..... (*sabbe bhūtā*)
4. All people..... (*sabbe puggalā*)
5. All individuals.....(*sabbe attabhāvapariyāpannā*)

The seven specified categories are:

1. All women .....(*sabbā itthiyo*)
2. All men ..... (*sabbe purisā*)
3. All enlightened beings..... (*sabbe ariyā*)
4. All unenlightened beings.....(*sabbe anariyā*)
5. All devas .....(*sabbe devā*)
6. All human beings..... (*sabbe manussā*)
7. All beings in the lower realms..... (*sabbe vinipātikā*)

The ten directional categories are:

1. To the east.....(*puratthimāya disāya*)
2. To the west.....(*pacchimāya disāya*)
3. To the north.....(*uttarāya disāya*)
4. To the south .....(*dakkhiṇāya disāya*)
5. To the south-east.....(*puratthimāya anudisāya*)
6. To the north-west.....(*pacchimāya anudisāya*)
7. To the north-east .....(*uttarāya anudisāya*)
8. To the south-west.....(*dakkhiṇāya anudisāya*)

<sup>1</sup> Ps.II.iv 'Mettā Kathā' ('Lovingkindness Explanation')

9. Downwards.....(*hetṭhimāya disāya*)
10. Upwards.....(*uparimāya disāya*)

### How You Develop the Unspecified and Specified Categories

To develop this method of lovingkindness meditation, you should as before re-establish the fourth jhāna with the white *kaṣiṇa*, and develop lovingkindness towards yourself, a person you respect or who is dear to you, one you are indifferent to, and one you hate, until there are no barriers between them and you.

Then use the bright and brilliant light to see all the beings in as big an area as possible around you, around the building or monastery. Once they are clear, you can develop lovingkindness towards them according to the five unspecified categories, and seven specified categories: twelve in total. You should at each category pervade lovingkindness in four ways:

1. May they be free from danger,
2. May they be free from mental pain,
3. May they be free from physical pain,
4. May they be well and happy.

'They' is in each case one of your twelve categories, all beings, all devas, etc. Thus you will be pervading lovingkindness in a total of forty-eight ways ((7+5) x 4 = 48).

The beings in each category should be clearly visible in the light of concentration and understanding. For example, when you extend lovingkindness to all women, you should actually see, in the light, the women within the determined area. You should actually see the men, devas, beings in lower realms etc., in the determined area.<sup>1</sup> You must develop each category up to the third jhāna before moving on to the next. You should practise in this way until

<sup>1</sup> This does not mean that the yogi can actually see every single woman, man, deva etc. within the determined area: it means that the yogi should extend lovingkindness with the intention that it is for every single woman, man, deva etc., and that insofar as he can, he should see them all.

you become proficient in pervading lovingkindness in all forty-eight ways.

Once proficient, you should expand the determined area to include the whole monastery, the whole village, the whole township, the whole state, the whole country, the whole world, the whole solar system, the whole galaxy, and the whole of the infinite universe. Develop each of the expanded areas in the forty-eight ways up to the third jhāna.

Once proficient you may proceed to the ten directional categories.

### How You Develop the Ten Directional Categories

The ten directional categories of lovingkindness involve the previously discussed forty-eight categories in each of the ten directions.

You should see all beings in the whole of the infinite universe to the east of you, and extend lovingkindness to them in the forty-eight ways. Then do the same thing to the west of you, and so on in the other directions.

This gives a total of four hundred and eighty ways to extend lovingkindness ( $10 \times 48 = 480$ ). When we add the original forty-eight categories of pervasion, we get five hundred and twenty-eight ways to extend lovingkindness ( $480 + 48 = 528$ ).

Once you master these five hundred and twenty-eight ways of pervading lovingkindness, you will experience the eleven benefits of practising lovingkindness, which The Buddha taught in the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*:<sup>1</sup>

**Bhikkhus, when the mind-deliverance of lovingkindness is cultivated, developed, much practised, made the vehicle, made the foundation, established, consolidated, and properly undertaken, eleven benefits can be expected. What are the eleven?**

---

<sup>1</sup> A.XI.ii.5 'Metta Sutta' ('Metta Sutta')

- [1] **A man sleeps in comfort;**
- [2] **wakes in comfort; and**
- [3] **dreams no evil dreams;**
- [4] **he is dear to human beings;**
- [5] **he is dear to non-human beings;**
- [6] **devas guard him;**
- [7] **fire, poison and weapons do not affect him;**
- [8] **his mind is easily concentrated;**
- [9] **his complexion becomes bright;**
- [10] **he dies unconfused; and**
- [11] **if he penetrates no higher, he will be reborn in the Brahma World.**

### How You Develop Compassion

Once you have developed lovingkindness as just described, it should not be difficult to develop the sublime abiding of compassion (*karuṇā*). To develop compassion, you should first select a living person of your own sex who is suffering. You should arouse compassion for him by reflecting on his suffering.

Then re-establish the fourth jhāna with the white kasiṇa, so the light is bright and clear, and use the light to see that person, and then develop lovingkindness up to the third jhāna. Emerge from it, and develop compassion towards that suffering person with the thought, 'May this good person be released from suffering' (*ayaṃ sappuriso dukkhā muccatu*). Do this many times, again and again, until you attain the first, second, and third jhānas, and the five masteries of each. After that, you should develop compassion as you did lovingkindness, that is, towards yourself, towards a person you like, one you are indifferent to, and one you hate, up to the third jhāna, until the barriers have been broken down.

To develop compassion towards beings who are not suffering in any apparent way, you should reflect on the fact that all unenlightened beings are liable to experience the results of the evil they have done while wandering through the round of rebirths, and therefore to be reborn in the lower realms. Furthermore,

every being is worthy of compassion, because they are not free from the suffering of ageing, sickness, and death.

After reflecting thus, you should also here develop compassion as you did lovingkindness: towards yourself and the usual three types of person up to the third jhāna, until the barriers have been broken down.

After that you should develop compassion in the same hundred and thirty-two ways you developed lovingkindness, namely: five unspecified categories, seven specified categories, and one hundred and twenty directional categories ( $5 + 7 + (10 \times 12) = 132$ ).

### How You Develop Appreciative Joy

To develop the sublime abiding of appreciative joy (*muditā*), you should select a living person of your own sex who is happy, the sight of whom makes you happy, and whom you are very fond of and friendly with.

Then re-establish the fourth jhāna with the white kasiṇa, so the light is bright and clear, and use the light to see that person, and then develop the third lovingkindness jhāna. Emerge from it and develop compassion jhāna. Emerge from that, and develop appreciative joy towards the happy person with the thought: ‘May this good person not be separated from the prosperity he has attained,’ (*ayaṃ sappuriso yathāladhasampattito māvigacchatu*). Do this many times, again and again, until you attain the first, second and third jhānas, and the five masteries of each.

Then develop appreciative-joy jhāna towards yourself and the usual three types of person up to the third jhāna, until the barriers have been broken down. Finally develop appreciative-joy towards all beings in the infinite universe in the hundred and thirty-two ways.

### How You Develop Equanimity

To develop the sublime abiding of equanimity (*upekkhā*), you should first re-establish the fourth jhāna with the white kasiṇa.

Then choose a living person of your own sex, towards whom you are indifferent, and develop lovingkindness, compassion, and appreciative joy each up to the third jhāna. Then emerge from the third jhāna and reflect on the disadvantages of those three sublime abidings, namely their closeness to affection, to like and dislike, and to elation and joy. Afterwards reflect on the fourth jhāna based on equanimity as peaceful. Then develop equanimity towards a person you are indifferent to with the thought: ‘This good person is heir to his own kamma (*ayaṃ sappuriso kammaṣako*)’. Do this many times, again and again, until you attain the fourth jhāna and the five masteries of it. With the support of the third jhānas of lovingkindness, compassion, and appreciative-joy, it should not take you long to develop the fourth jhāna of equanimity.

Afterwards develop it towards a person you respect or who is dear to you, one who is very dear to you, and one you hate. Then again towards yourself, a person you respect or who is dear to you, one you are indifferent to, and one you hate, until you have broken down the barriers between you.

Finally develop equanimity towards all beings in the infinite universe in the above hundred and thirty-two ways.

This completes the development of the Four Sublime Abidings.

### How You Develop the Four Protective Meditations

The four meditation subjects of lovingkindness, recollection-of-The-Buddha, foulness meditation and recollection-of-death are called the ‘Four Protections’, or the ‘Four Protective Meditations’. This is because they protect the yogi from various dangers. It is for this reason worthwhile to learn and develop them before proceeding to Vipassanā meditation. We have already discussed how to develop loving-kindness, so we need now only discuss how to develop the other three protective meditations. Let us begin with recollection-of-The-Buddha.

### How You Develop Recollection-of-The-Buddha

Recollection-of-The-Buddha (*Buddhānussati*) can be developed by looking at the nine qualities of The Buddha, using a formula He gives frequently in the suttas:<sup>1</sup>

*Itipi So Bhagavā* (The Blessed One is such):

- [1] *Arahāṃ*
- [2] *Sammā Sambuddho*
- [3] *Vijjā-Caraṇa Sampanno*
- [4] *Sugato*
- [5] *Lokavidū*
- [6] *Anuttaro Purisadamma Sārathi*
- [7] *Satthā Deva Manussānaṃ*
- [8] *Buddho*
- [9] *Bhagavā'ti.*

This can be explained as:

1. This Blessed One, having destroyed all defilements, is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.
2. He has attained perfect enlightenment by Himself: *Sammā Sambuddho*.
3. He is perfect in knowledge and morality: *Vijjā-Caraṇa Sampanno*.
4. He speaks only what is beneficial and true: *Sugato*.
5. He knows the worlds: *Lokavidū*.
6. He is the unsurpassed tamer of men fit to be tamed: *Anuttaro Purisadamma Sārathi*.

<sup>1</sup> D.iii.1 'Pathika Sutta' ('Sutta of Provisions for a journey'); *Vinaya*.I.1 'Verañjakaṇḍa' ('Verañja Section'); Vs.vii 'Buddhānussati Kathā' B125-130 ('Recollection of The Buddha Explanation' N4-25)

7. He is the teacher of devas and human beings: *Satthā Deva Manussānaṃ*.
8. He is an Enlightened One: *Buddho*.
9. He is the most fortunate possessor of the results of previous meritorious actions: *Bhagavā*.

Let us discuss how to develop concentration with, for example, the first quality, *Arahāṃ*. According to the *Visuddhi Magga*, the Pāḷi word *Arahāṃ* has five definitions:

1. Since He has removed totally, without remainder, all defilements and habitual tendencies, and has thereby distanced Himself from them, The Buddha is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.
2. Since He has cut off all defilements with the sword of the Arahant Path, The Buddha is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.
3. Since He has broken and destroyed the spokes of the wheel of dependent-origination, beginning with ignorance and craving, The Buddha is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.
4. Since His virtue, concentration, and wisdom are unsurpassed, The Buddha is paid the highest reverence by brahmās, devas, and men, and is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.
5. Since He does not, even when in seclusion and unseen, do any evil by body, speech, or mind, The Buddha is a worthy one: *Arahāṃ*.

To develop this meditation, you should memorize these five definitions well enough to recite them. Then re-establish the fourth ānāpāna-, or white kasiṇa-jhāna, so the light is bright and clear. Then use the light to visualize a Buddha image you remember, like, and respect. When it is clear, see it as the real Buddha and concentrate on it as such.

If you were in a past life fortunate enough to meet The Buddha, His image may re-appear. If so, you should concentrate on also the qualities of The Buddha; not just His image. If the image of The real Buddha does not appear, then first see the visualized im-

age as The real Buddha, and then recollect His qualities. You can choose the definition of *Araham* you like most, take the meaning as object, and recollect it again and again as ‘*Araham-Araham*’.

As your concentration develops and becomes stronger, the image of The Buddha will disappear, and you should simply remain concentrated on the chosen quality. Continue to concentrate on that quality until the *jhāna* factors arise, although you can with this meditation subject attain only access-*jhāna* (*upacāra-jhāna*). You can concentrate on the remaining qualities of The Buddha too.

### How You Develop Foulness Meditation

The second protective meditation is foulness meditation (*asubha bhāvanā*) on a corpse. To develop it you should re-establish the fourth *ānāpāna*-, or white *kasiṇa-jhāna*, so the light is bright and clear. Then use the light to visualize the foulest corpse of your own sex, that you remember seeing. Use the light to see the corpse exactly as it was when you really saw it in the past. When it is clear, make it appear as repulsive as possible. Concentrate on it, and note it as, ‘repulsive - repulsive’ (*paṭikkūla, paṭikkūla*).<sup>1</sup> Concentrate on the object of the repulsiveness of the corpse until the *uggaha-nimitta* (taken-up sign) becomes the *paṭibhāga-nimitta* (counterpart sign). The *uggaha-nimitta* is the image of the corpse as you really saw it in the past, and is a hideous, dreadful, and frightening sight, but the *paṭibhāga-nimitta* is like a man with big limbs, lying down after having eaten his fill. Continue to concentrate on that *nimitta*, until you reach the first *jhāna*, and then develop the five masteries.

### How You Develop Recollection-of-Death

The third protective meditation is recollection-of-death (*maraṇānussati*). According to the ‘*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*’<sup>2</sup> and the

<sup>1</sup> Here, *asubha* (foulness) and *paṭikkūla* (repulsiveness) are synonyms.

<sup>2</sup> D.ii.9 ‘Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness’ (also M.I.i.10)

*Visuddhi Magga*,<sup>1</sup> recollection-of-death too can be developed using a corpse you remember seeing. Therefore, you should re-establish the first *jhāna* with the repulsiveness of a corpse, and with that external corpse as object, reflect: ‘This body of mine is also of a nature to die. Indeed, it will die just like this one. It cannot avoid becoming like this.’ By keeping the mind concentrated on and mindful of your own mortality, you will also find that the sense of urgency (*saṃvega*) develops. With that knowledge, you will probably see your own body as a repulsive corpse. Perceiving that the life-faculty has in that image been cut off, you should concentrate on the absence of the life-faculty with one of the following thoughts:

1. My death is certain; my life is uncertain...(*maraṇaṃ me dhuvaṃ, jīvitāṃ me adhuvaṃ*)
2. I shall certainly die ..... (*maraṇaṃ me bhavissati*)
3. My life will end in death .....(*maraṇapariyosānaṃ me jīvitāṃ*)
4. Death - death.....(*maraṇaṃ - maraṇaṃ*)

Choose one and note it in any language. Continue to concentrate on the image of the absence of the life-faculty in your own corpse, until the *jhāna* factors arise, although you can with this meditation subject attain only access concentration.

### Summary

As mentioned earlier, the four meditation subjects of loving-kindness, recollection-of-the-Buddha, foulness, and recollection-of-death are called the Four Protections, or the Four Protective meditations, because they protect the yogi from various dangers.

In the ‘*Meghiya Sutta*’ of the *Khuddaka Nikāya* it says:<sup>2</sup>

*Asubhā bhāvetabbā rāgassa pahānāya, mettā bhāvetabbā byāpādassa pahānāya, ānāpānassati bhāvetabbā vitakkupacchedāya.*

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii ‘*Maraṇānussati Kathā*’ B168 (‘Death-Mindfulness Explanation’ N6-7)

<sup>2</sup> U.iv.1 ‘*Meghiya Sutta*’ (‘Meghiya Sutta’) (also A.IX.I.3)

(For the removal of lust, meditation on foulness should be developed; for the removal of anger, lovingkindness should be developed; and *ānāpānasati* should be developed for the cutting off of discursive thought.)

According to this sutta, foulness meditation is the best weapon for removing lust. If you take a corpse as object, and see it as repulsive, it is called ‘foulness of a lifeless body’ (*avīññāṇaka asubha*). To take the thirty-two parts of the body of a being, and see them as repulsive (as taught in the ‘*Girimānanda Sutta*’ of the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*<sup>1</sup>) is called ‘foulness of a living body’ (*savīññāṇaka asubha*). Both these forms of foulness meditation are weapons for removing lust.

The best weapon for removing anger is to develop lovingkindness, and for removing discursive thought *ānāpānasati* is the best weapon.

Furthermore, when faith in meditation slackens, and the mind is dull, the best weapon is to develop recollection-of-The-Buddha. When the sense of urgency is lacking, and you are bored with striving in meditation, the best weapon is recollection-of-death.

Today we discussed how to develop the Four Sublime Abidings and Four Protective meditations. In the next talk, we shall discuss how to develop Vipassanā meditation, beginning with the four-elements meditation, and analysis of the various kinds of materiality.

### Benefits of Samatha

Before ending, we should like to discuss briefly the relation between Samatha and Vipassanā.

In the ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ of the ‘*Khandhavagga*’ in the *Saṃyutta Nikāya*, The Buddha said:<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A.X.II.i.10

<sup>2</sup> S.III.I.i.5, quoted also above p.29, and mentioned Answer 4.6, p.186

*Samādhiṃ, bhikkhave, bhāvētha; samāhito, bhikkhave, bhikkhu yathābhūtaṃ pajānāti. Kiñca yathābhūtaṃ pajānāti? Rūpassa samudayañca atthaṅgamañca, vedanāya samudayañca atthaṅgamañca, saññāya samudayañca atthaṅgamañca, saṅkhārānaṃ samudayañca atthaṅgamañca, viññāṇassa samudayañca atthaṅgamañca.*

(Bhikkhus, you should develop concentration.

A bhikkhu who is concentrated, bhikkhus, knows dhammas as they really are. And what [are the dhammas] he knows as they really are? The arising of materiality and the passing-away thereof; the arising of feelings, of perception, and of formations, and the passing away of feelings, of perception and formations; the arising of consciousness and the passing away thereof.)

Therefore, a bhikkhu who is concentrated knows the five aggregates and their causes, and their arising and passing away. He sees clearly that because of the arising of their causes the five aggregates arise, and because of the complete cessation of their causes, the five aggregates also completely cease.

The Samatha we discussed in the first two talks and today produces strong concentration. It is the light of this concentration that lets you see ultimate mentality-materiality for Vipassanā. With that deep, strong and powerful concentration, you can see clearly the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of mentality-materiality and their causes. This clarity is a great benefit coming from Samatha.

Samatha also gives you a resting-place. There is much to discern in Vipassanā and tiredness may occur. In that case, you can stay in one of the jhānas for a long time. That rests and refreshes your mind, and then you can go back to Vipassanā. Whenever tiredness occurs, you can again enter jhāna to rest.

It is good to remember these benefits of Samatha, when in the following talks we discuss Vipassanā.

### Questions and Answers 3

**Question 3.1** In *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), there are the parikamma-nimitta, the uggaha-nimitta, and the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta. What is the parikamma-nimitta? Is the parikamma-nimitta always grey? What is the difference between the parikamma-nimitta and the uggaha-nimitta?

**Answer 3.1** In *ānāpānasati*, there are three types of nimitta, three types of concentration (*samādhi*) and three types of meditation (*bhāvanā*).

The three types of nimitta are:

1. The parikamma-nimitta.....(preparatory sign)
2. The uggaha-nimitta.....(taken-up sign)
3. The paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.....(counterpart sign)

The three types of concentration are:

1. Preparatory concentration .....(*parikamma samādhi*)  
Sometimes called momentary concentration (*khaṇika samādhi*).
2. Access concentration.....(*upacāra samādhi*)
3. Absorption concentration .....(*appanā samādhi*)  
Also called jhāna concentration: the eight attainments.<sup>1</sup>

The three types of meditation are:

1. Preparatory meditation .....(*parikamma bhāvanā*)
2. Access meditation.....(*upacāra bhāvanā*)
3. Absorption meditation .....(*appanā bhāvanā*)

The object of preparatory concentration can be the parikamma-nimitta, the uggaha-nimitta, and occasionally the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta. Preparatory meditation is the same as preparatory concentration.

Real access concentration, and real access meditation are very close to absorption concentration (jhāna); this is why they are

<sup>1</sup> **eight attainments:** the four material jhānas, and four immaterial jhānas.

called ‘access’. But sometimes deep and strong concentration before absorption concentration, with the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta as object, is as a metaphor also called ‘access concentration’ or ‘access meditation’. When preparatory concentration, or momentary concentration, is fully developed it leads to access concentration. When access concentration is fully developed, it leads to absorption concentration (jhāna).

We already discussed the nimitta in previous talks. There are, as mentioned, three types of nimitta: the parikamma-nimitta, the uggaha-nimitta, and the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.

1. The parikamma-nimitta (preparatory sign): The natural breath is a nimitta. The touching point is also a nimitta. Here the nimitta is the object of concentration. The Commentary says the nostril nimitta (*nāsika nimitta*), and upper-lip nimitta (*mukha nimitta*) are the parikamma-nimittas for beginners. When the concentration is a little stronger, a smoky grey usually appears around the nostrils. This smoky grey is also the parikamma-nimitta. It may have another colour too. The concentration and meditation at the parikamma-nimitta stage are preparatory.
2. The uggaha-nimitta (taken-up sign): When the preparatory concentration increases in strength and power, the smoky grey usually changes to white: white like cotton wool. But it may become another colour, owing to a change in perception.<sup>1</sup> When the perception changes, the colour and shape of the nimitta may also change. If the colour and shape change very often, the concentration will gradually decrease. This is because whenever yogi’s perception changes, his object thereby also changes, which means he has different objects. So the yogi should ignore the colour and shape of the nimitta. He should concentrate on it only as an ānāpāna-nimitta. The concentration and meditation on the uggaha-nimitta are also preparatory.

<sup>1</sup> For further details on the relationship between the nimitta and perception, please see p.48.



3. The paṭ ibhāga-nimitta (counterpart sign): When the concentration has become even stronger and more powerful, the ugaha-nimitta changes to the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta. Usually the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta is clear, bright and radiant, like the morning star. In this case too, if the perception changes, the nimitta may also change. If, when the concentration is strong and powerful, the yogi wants the nimitta to be long it will become long; if he wants it to be short it will become short; if he wants it to be ruby red, it will become ruby red. The *Visuddhi Magga* says one should not do so.<sup>1</sup> If one does, then even though the concentration is deep, it will gradually decrease. This is because one has different perceptions, and thereby different objects. So a yogi should not play with the nimitta. If he plays with it he cannot attain jhāna.

The beginning stage of concentration and meditation on the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta are also preparatory. But close to jhāna they are access concentration, and access meditation. When absorption arises, the nimitta is still the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta, but the concentration is now absorption concentration, and the meditation is absorption meditation.

**Question 3.2** What is the difference between access concentration and absorption concentration?

**Answer 3.2** When the paṭ ibhāga-nimitta appears, the concentration is powerful. But at this stage, which is the stage of access concentration, the jhāna factors are not fully developed, and bhavaṅgas (life-continuum consciousnesses) still occur; one falls into bhavaṅga. The yogi will say that everything stopped, or may think it is Nibbāna, and say: 'I knew nothing then.' If he practises in this way, he can eventually stay in bhavaṅga for a long time.

In any kind of practice, be it good or bad, one will achieve one's aim, if one practises again and again. 'Practice makes perfect.' In this case too, if he practises again and again, in the same way, he

<sup>1</sup> Vs.iii 'Cattālīsakammaṭṭhāna Vaṇṇanā' B47 ('Forty Meditations Subjects Comment' Ñ113)

may fall into bhavaṅga for a long time. Why does he say he knew nothing? Because the object of the bhavaṅga is the object of the near-death consciousness in the past life. That object may be kamma, a kamma sign (*kamma nimitta*) or a rebirth sign (*gati nimitta*). But the yogi cannot see this, because he has not yet discerned dependent-origination. It is only once he has discerned dependent-origination that he sees that the bhavaṅga took one of those objects.

If a yogi thinks it is Nibbāna, this idea is a very big 'rock' blocking the way to Nibbāna. If he does not remove this big 'rock', he cannot attain Nibbāna. Why does this idea occur? Many yogis think that a disciple (*sāvaka*) cannot know mentality-materiality as taught by The Buddha. So they do not think it is necessary to develop sufficiently deep concentration in order to discern mentality-materiality and their causes as taught by The Buddha. Thus their concentration is only weak, and bhavaṅgas still occur, because the jhāna factors too are weak. Their concentration cannot be maintained for long. If one purposely practises to fall into bhavaṅga, one will achieve one's aim, but it is not Nibbāna. To attain Nibbāna we must practise the seven stages of purification step by step; without knowing ultimate mentality, ultimate materiality, and their causes, one cannot attain Nibbāna.

The problem of thinking that the attainment of knowing nothing is Nibbāna needs perhaps to be explained further.

Nibbāna is *visaṅkhāra*: that is, 'without formations'. Formations (*saṅkhārā*) are mentality-materiality and their causes, and Nibbāna is without either of them. The mind that knows Nibbāna is called *visaṅkhāragata citta*. But it is not itself *visaṅkhāra*: the act of seeing Nibbāna requires the formation of consciousness.

The consciousness that is formed when, for example, a Buddha or arahant enters the fruition attainment, and sees Nibbāna, is the arahant fruition-consciousness (*arahattaphala citta*), together with its associated mental factors. If the arahant fruition-consciousness is entered upon from the first jhāna, and is thus a first-jhāna arahant fruition-consciousness, there are thirty-seven mental formations. This principle applies in all the other Path and Fruition Knowl-

edges. Together with their associated mental factors, they all take Nibbāna as object; and Nibbāna has the characteristic of peaceful bliss.

Whenever a Noble One (*ariya*) enters the fruition attainment, he knows Nibbāna, and with the knowledge of fruition enjoys the peaceful bliss that is Nibbāna.

It is therefore, impossible to enter one of the Fruition attainments and say about it: ‘Everything stopped: I knew nothing then.’ Before entering a fruition attainment, one determines how long it will last, for example one or two hours. And for the duration of that period, Nibbāna is known continuously as the peaceful bliss it is (*santisukha*).

It is therefore clear that when the yogi knows nothing, it is not because he has attained Nibbāna; it is because his concentration is still weak.

When the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta appears, the yogi’s mind may fall into bhavaṅga, because the jhāna factors are not yet strong. Just like, when learning to walk, a small child who is too weak to stand by himself, will fall down again and again. In the same way, at the access concentration stage, the jhāna factors are still not fully developed, and one may fall into bhavaṅga: it is not Nibbāna.

To avoid falling into bhavaṅga, and to develop concentration further, you need the help of the five controlling faculties: faith (*saddhā*), effort (*vīriya*), mindfulness (*sati*), concentration (*samādhi*), and wisdom (*paññā*), to push the mind and fix it on the paṭibhāga-nimitta. It takes effort to make the mind know the paṭibhāga-nimitta again and again, mindfulness to not forget it, and wisdom to know it.

At the absorption-jhāna stage, the jhāna factors are fully developed. Just like a strong and powerful man can stand up straight the whole day, a yogi can, taking the paṭibhāga-nimitta as object, stay in absorption jhāna for a long time without falling into bhavaṅga. Complete and uninterrupted absorption may continue for one, two, three hours, or more. At that time he does not hear a

sound. His mind does not go to other objects. Apart from the paṭibhāga-nimitta, he knows nothing.

**Question 3.3** Under what conditions, or in what state, can we say that a meditation experience is access concentration or absorption concentration?

**Answer 3.3** If many bhavaṅgas occur during concentration, one can say that it is access concentration. But the nimitta must be the paṭibhāga-nimitta. Only if one is able to stay in complete absorption for a long time, without interruption, with also the paṭibhāga-nimitta as object, can one say it is absorption concentration.

How does a yogi know his mind is falling into bhavaṅga? When he notices that he has very often been unaware of the paṭibhāga-nimitta, he knows there were bhavaṅgas. His mind may also for brief moments have thought of an object other than the paṭibhāga-nimitta. This does not happen in absorption concentration. In absorption concentration there is only complete absorption without interruption.

**Question 3.4** Is there access concentration, as well as absorption concentration at each of the four jhānas? What are their characteristics?

**Answer 3.4** Let us take the example of the ānāpāna jhānas, which take the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta as object. There are four levels of access concentration, and four levels of absorption concentration. At each level there is access jhāna first, and then absorption jhāna. Both take the same ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta as object. So it is the level of concentration that is different.

In the first, second, and third access-jhāna, there are five jhāna factors. But in the fourth access-jhāna, there is no bliss (*sukha*), only applied thought (*vitakka*), sustained thought (*vicāra*), equanimity (*upekkhā*) and one-pointedness (*ekaggatā*). Although they take the same nimitta as object, the jhāna factors become increasingly powerful at each access-jhāna.

The jhāna factors at the first access-jhāna suppress physical pain (*kāyika dukkha vedanā*); at the second, mental suffering (*domanassa vedanā*); at the third, physical pleasant feeling (*kāyika sukha vedanā*); and at the

fourth, mental pleasant feeling or happiness (*somanassa vedanā*). This is how we distinguish between the different levels of access concentration, especially the fourth. At that level, the breath is the subtlest, and has nearly stopped. It stops completely at the fourth absorption-jhāna.

We distinguish between the absorption-jhānas also by looking at the jhāna factors. In the first absorption jhāna, five jhāna factors are present: applied thought, sustained thought, joy, bliss and one-pointedness; in the second, three: joy, bliss and one-pointedness; in the third, two: bliss and one-pointedness; and in the fourth, also two: equanimity and one-pointedness. By looking at the jhāna factors, we can say, ‘This is the first absorption jhāna’, ‘This is the second absorption jhāna’, etc. Also, here the concentration increases level by level. Fourth-jhāna concentration is the highest. How is it the highest? You should try for yourself. Many yogis report that the fourth jhāna is the best and the quietest.

**Question 3.5** Under what conditions does a yogi drop, or regress from absorption to access concentration? Under what conditions does a yogi in access concentration attain absorption concentration?

**Answer 3.5** If the yogi does not respect his meditation practice, but respects objects other than the paṭibhāga-nimitta, many hindrances (*nīvaraṇa*) will arise. Many thoughts of sensual pleasure and hatred will arise. They arise due to unwise attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*). Those objects reduce the concentration, because wholesome dhammas and unwholesome dhammas are always in opposition. When wholesome dhammas are strong and powerful, unwholesome dhammas are far away, and when, because of unwise attention, unwholesome dhammas are strong and powerful, wholesome dhammas are far away. Wholesome and unwholesome dhammas cannot arise simultaneously in one consciousness-moment or cognitive-process.

Here we need to understand wise attention (*yoniso manasikāra*) and unwise attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*). When a yogi practises *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), and concentrates on the natural

breath, his attention is wise attention. When the uggaha-nimitta or paṭibhāga-nimitta appears, and the yogi concentrates on it, his attention is still wise attention. If, in Vipassanā meditation, a yogi sees: ‘This is materiality’, ‘This is mentality’, ‘This is cause’, ‘This is effect’, ‘This is impermanence’, ‘This is suffering’, or ‘This is non-self’, his attention is also wise attention.

But if he sees: ‘This is a man, a woman, a son, a daughter, a father, a mother, a deity, a brahmā, an animal, etc.’; ‘This is gold, money, etc.’ then his attention is unwise attention. Generally speaking, we can say that because of wise attention many wholesome dhammas arise, and because of unwise attention many unwholesome dhammas arise. If, while you are practising meditation, unwise attention arises, then hindrances or defilements will certainly follow; they are unwholesome dhammas. Those unwholesome dhammas reduce the concentration, or cause it to regress and drop.

If you look at your meditation object with wise attention, again and again, then wholesome dhammas will arise and increase. Jhāna wholesome dhammas, for example, are among those wholesome dhammas. So, if you concentrate on the nimitta, such as the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta, again and again, it is wise attention. If you develop this wise attention to full strength, then from access concentration you will attain absorption concentration.

**Question 3.6** When a person dies, a kamma-nimitta may arise because of past wholesome or unwholesome kamma. Is this phenomenon similar to that which occurs during meditation, when images of past events, which the yogi had forgotten, appear?

**Answer 3.6** There may be some similarity, but only in some cases. It may be similar to the arising of a kamma-nimitta in those whose death took place quickly.

**Question 3.7** While meditating, images of events from more than thirty years back, which the yogi had forgotten, appear. Is this due to lack of mindfulness, which lets the mind leave the object?

**Answer 3.7** It could be. But it could also be because of attention (*manasikāra*). Many yogis do not know about attention. Only once they have practised meditation on mentality do they understand it. Cognitive-processes occur very quickly, so they do not understand that these images appear because of attention. But no formation occurs by itself, without a cause. This is because all formations are conditioned.

**Question 3.8** If, when dying, a person has strong mindfulness, can he prevent a kamma sign (*kamma nimitta*) of previous unwholesome or wholesome kamma from arising?

**Answer 3.8** Strong, powerful mindfulness can prevent such nimittas from arising; but what is strong, powerful mindfulness? If a yogi enters jhāna, and keeps it completely stable right up to the time of death, you can say that the mindfulness of that jhāna is strong and powerful. That type of mindfulness can prevent an unwholesome sign or sensual-realm wholesome sign from arising. It takes only the jhāna object, for example, an ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta or white-kasiṇa paṭibhāga-nimitta.

Another type of strong, powerful mindfulness is the mindfulness associated with insight-knowledge. If a yogi's insight-knowledge is the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā nāṇa*), and if he practises Vipassanā up to the near-death moment, then his near-death impulsion is insight-knowledge associated with strong and powerful mindfulness. That type of mindfulness can also prevent unwholesome signs from appearing, as well as prevent other wholesome signs from replacing his Vipassanā sign. The Vipassanā sign is the impermanent, suffering, or non-self nature of a chosen formation. He may die with such a sign as the object of his near-death impulsion (*maranāsanna javana*). It can produce a deva rebirth-linking consciousness (*deva paṭisandhiccitta*), so that he is spontaneously reborn as a deva.

Concerning the benefits that this type of yogi may get in his future life as a deva, The Buddha says in the '*Sotānugata Sutta*' of the *Aṅguttara Nikāya*, '*Catukka Nipāta*':<sup>1</sup>

*So mutṭhassati kālaṃ kurumāno aññatarāṃ devanikāyaṃ upapajjati. Tassa tattha sukhīno dhammapadā plavanti. Dandho bhikkhave satuppādo, atha so satto khippameva visesagāmi hoti.*

**(Bhikkhus, a worldling (*puthujjana*) who has heard the Teachings, often repeated Them, reflected upon Them, and thoroughly penetrated them with insight knowledge, if he dies, he may be reborn in one of the deva realms, where all formations appear clearly in his mind. He may be slow to reflect on the Dhamma or to do Vipassanā, but he attains Nibbāna very quickly.)**

Why do formations appear clearly in his mind? Because the near-death impulsion-consciousness of the previous human life, and the bhavaṅga-consciousness of the following deva life take the same object, in this case the impermanent, suffering, or non-self nature of formations. The host, the bhavaṅga that is, already knows the Vipassanā object, which is why insight knowledge can easily be developed. So according to that sutta, strong mindfulness associated with insight-knowledge can prevent unwholesome signs from appearing, as well as other wholesome signs that may replace his Vipassanā sign. You should try to possess this type of mindfulness before death takes place.

An example of this is the '*Sakkapañha Sutta*', about three bhikkhus who practised Samatha and Vipassanā.<sup>2</sup> They had good morality and good concentration, but their minds inclined towards life as male *gandhabbas*.<sup>3</sup> When they died they went to the deva realm. They were reborn as very beautiful and shiny *gandhabbas*, who looked sixteen years old. During their lives as bhikkhus, the three bhikkhus had gone to a laywoman's house every day for

<sup>1</sup> A.IV.v.1 '*Sotānugata Sutta*' ('One Who Has Heard Sutta'), mentioned also p. 183, and p.248

<sup>2</sup> D.ii.8 '*Sakkapañha Sutta*' ('Sakka's Questions Sutta')

<sup>3</sup> Musicians and dancers in the deva realm.

almsfood, and had taught her Dhamma. She had become a stream-enterer, and when she died, she was reborn as Gopaka, the son of Sakka. The three *gandhabbas* performed for the son of Sakka, and he saw that they were very beautiful and shiny. He thought: ‘They are very beautiful and shiny. What was their kamma?’ He saw they were the three bhikkhus who had come to his house when he was a laywoman. He knew that their virtue, concentration and wisdom had been very good. So he reminded them of their past life. He said: ‘When you listened to the teachings and practised the Dhamma, what were your eyes and ears directed at?’ Two of the *gandhabbas* remembered their past lives and were ashamed. They developed Samatha and Vipassanā again, quickly attained the non-returning path and fruition, and died. They were reborn in the realm of *Brahma Parohitā* (Brahma’s Ministers),<sup>1</sup> and attained arahantship there. The third bhikkhu was not ashamed, and remained a *gandhabba*.

So, it is not necessary to contact a life insurance company. This type of mindfulness is the best insurance.

**Question 3.9** Is it necessary when discerning the twelve characteristics in four-elements meditation, to start with hardness, roughness, and heaviness in that sequence? Can one choose to start with any one of the characteristics?

**Answer 3.9** In the beginning we can start with a characteristic that is easy to discern. But once we can discern all the characteristics easily and clearly, we must follow the sequence given by The Buddha: earth-element (*pathavī-dhātu*), water-element (*āpo-dhātu*), fire-element (*tejo-dhātu*), and wind-element (*vāyo-dhātu*). This is because that sequence produces strong, powerful concentration. When we see the rūpa-kalāpas, and are able to easily discern the four elements in each one, the sequence is not important; what is very important then is to discern them simultaneously.

Why? The life span of a rūpa-kalāpa is very short. It may be less than a billionth of a second. When discerning the four ele-

<sup>1</sup> DA-II-8 ‘*Sakkapañha Sutta*’ (‘Sakka’s Questions Sutta’)

ments in a rūpa-kalāpa there is not enough time to recite ‘earth, water, fire, wind’, so we must discern them simultaneously.

**Question 3.10** Practising four-elements meditation enables one to balance the four elements in the body. One may at some time get sick because the four elements are out of balance. When one is sick, can one practise four-elements meditation with strong mindfulness to cure the sickness?

**Answer 3.10** There are many types of affliction. Some afflictions are due to previous kamma, such as The Buddha’s back pain. Some afflictions are due to unbalanced elements. The afflictions produced by previous kamma cannot be cured by balancing the four elements. But some of the afflictions that occur because of unbalanced elements, may disappear when the yogi tries to balance them.

There are also afflictions that occur because of food, temperature (*utu*) or the mind (*citta*). If an affliction arises because of the mind, and we can cure the mind, the affliction may disappear; if the affliction arises because of temperature, fire-element, as with cancer, malaria, etc., it can be cured only by taking medicine, not by balancing the elements. This is the same for afflictions produced by unsuitable food.

**Question 3.11** Before we attain the fourth jhāna, and eradicate<sup>1</sup> ignorance (*avijjā*), many unwholesome thoughts still arise due to bad habits. For example, in our daily life (outside a meditation retreat) we know that greed or hatred arises. Can we use foulness meditation (*asubha*), or lovingkindness meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*) to remove them? Or should we ignore them and just concentrate on our meditation subject, and let them disappear automatically?

**Answer 3.11** Unwholesome kamma has ignorance (*avijjā*) as a latent cause, and unwise attention as the proximate cause. Unwise attention is very harmful. If you are able to replace unwise attention

<sup>1</sup> The fourth jhāna does not eradicate ignorance; it only suppresses ignorance. Please see further Answers 7.7, 7.8 and 7.9 p.285ff

with wise attention, the greed or hatred will disappear for a while, or maybe forever, if the wise attention is very strong and powerful. We already discussed wise and unwise attention in a previous question.

You can use foulness meditation or lovingkindness meditation to remove greed and hatred. These meditations are also wise attention. But Vipassanā is the best weapon to destroy defilements. It is the best wise attention.

**Question 3.12** How does the bhavaṅga function in the sensual realms, fine-material realms, immaterial realms and supramundane realm? Would the Sayadaw please explain with examples?

**Answer 3.12** The function of the bhavaṅga is the same in the first three types of realm.<sup>1</sup> It arises so the consciousness-moments in a life do not stop; it maintains the mentality, which is the life-continuum. This is because the kamma that produces this life has not yet been exhausted. Since there is materiality-mentality (*nāma-rūpa*) in the sensual and fine-material realms, and mentality in the immaterial realms, there is also a bhavaṅga there.

In the sensual realms (*kāmāvacara bhūmi*), the bhavaṅga may have as object a kamma, kamma sign (*kamma nimitta*) or rebirth sign (*gati nimitta*). For example, one being's bhavaṅga may have as object the Kyaikthiyo Pagoda, while another's may have as object the Shwedagon Pagoda:<sup>2</sup> these objects are concepts.

In the fine-material realm (*rūpāvacara bhūmi*), the bhavaṅga has as object only a kamma sign: no kamma and no rebirth sign. The bhavaṅga of one in a fine-material realm is called the fine-material resultant jhāna (*rūpāvacara vipāka jhāna*), because it is the result of the jhāna-attainment at death in the foregoing life. Since the object of the bhavaṅga is thus the same as the object of the

<sup>1</sup> The three realms: (1) The sensuous realm (*kāmāvacara*), which includes the human world, the animal-, ghost-, and asura worlds, the hells and the deva-worlds. (2) The fine-material realm (*rūpāvacara*), which includes the Brahma worlds, where the materiality is very subtle. (3) The immaterial realm (*arūpāvacara*), where there is only mentality.

<sup>2</sup> The two most famous pagodas in Myanmar.

jhāna attainment, the object of the bhavaṅga will depend upon the jhāna. For example, the bhavaṅga of one who has reached a fine material realm due to ānāpāna-jhāna will have as object the ānāpāna-ṣaṭ ibhāga-nimitta, while the one who is there due to mettā-jhāna will have as object all beings in the infinite universe: both these objects are concepts.

In the immaterial realms (*arūpāvacara bhūmi*), the bhavaṅga has as object only kamma or a kamma sign: no rebirth sign. For example, in the realm of the base of boundless space one's bhavaṅga will have as object boundless space, and in the realm of the base of nothingness, it will have as object the absence of the base-of-boundless-space consciousness: both these objects are concepts.

In the realm of the base of boundless consciousness, one's bhavaṅga will have as object the consciousness of the base of boundless space, and in the realm of the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception, it will have as object the consciousness of the Base of Nothingness: being consciousnesses, these objects are kamma.

When we say 'sensual realms', 'the fine-material realms' and 'the immaterial realms', we are referring to realms that exist, places that exist. But when we say 'supramundane realm' (*lokuttara bhūmi*), the word 'realm' is only a metaphor. It is, in fact, not a place at all. When we say 'supramundane realm' we mean only the four paths, four fruitions, and Nibbāna; not a place. Hence, there is no bhavaṅga in the supramundane realm. There is none in the four path- and four fruition-consciousnesses, and since there is no mentality-materiality (*nāmarūpa*) in Nibbāna, there is no mentality for the bhavaṅga to maintain, which means there cannot be any bhavaṅga in Nibbāna.

**Question 3.13** What is the difference between mundane jhānas (*lokiya jhāna*) and supramundane jhānas (*lokuttara jhāna*)?

**Answer 3.13** The mundane jhānas are the four fine-material-sphere jhānas and four immaterial-sphere jhānas (*arūpāvacara jhāna*), that is, the eight attainments (*samāpatti*). The supramundane jhānas are the

jhāna factors associated with the Path and Fruition Knowledges. When you discern the mental formations of, for example, the mundane fine-material-sphere first jhāna as impermanence, suffering or non-self, and if you see Nibbāna, your Path Knowledge is the first jhāna. This is a supramundane jhāna.

Why? In the mundane fine-material-sphere first jhāna, which was the object of Vipassanā, there are the five jhāna factors: applied thought, sustained thought, joy, bliss and one-pointedness. In the supramundane first jhāna there are the same five. This is how the path and fruition can be the first jhāna path, and first jhāna fruition. The other jhānas can in the same way be (the conditions for their respective) supramundane (jhānas).

## Talk 4

**How You Discern Materiality****Introduction**

Today, we shall discuss four-elements meditation (*catu-dhātu vavatthāna*), which is discerning the elements (*dhātu*) of materiality (*rūpa*). Materiality is the first of the five aggregates of clinging, and the remaining four (feeling, perception, mental formations, and consciousness (*vedanā, saññā, saṅkhārā, viññāṇa*)) can together be called mentality (*nāma*). In the world of five aggregates (*pañcavokāra*), mentality depends on materiality, which means that consciousnesses arise dependent on their respective material base. For eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body materiality, the base and the door are the same thing. Thus, an eye-consciousness arises dependent on the materiality that is the eye-door; an ear-consciousness arises dependent on the materiality that is the ear-door etc. But the mind-door, dependent upon which a mind-consciousness arises, is mentality (the *bhavaṅga*), and the materiality it depends on is the mind-base, which is located in the blood in the heart: hence the materiality on which the mind-door depends is also called the heart-base.<sup>1</sup>

To see this, you need to see the individual elements that comprise materiality, which means you need first to penetrate to the sub-atomic particles called *rūpa-kalāpas*. You need to see that materiality is nothing except these *rūpa-kalāpas*. But they are not ultimate reality.<sup>2</sup> To penetrate to ultimate reality, you need to see that the individual type of *rūpa-kalāpa* consists of individual elements (*dhātu*):<sup>3</sup> only then can you see what materiality really is,

<sup>1</sup> For The Buddha's explanation of the necessity for discerning the elements of materiality etc. (M.Liv.3 'Mahāgopālaka Sutta' ('Great Cowherd Sutta')) please see also 'Introduction' p.13

<sup>2</sup> For the difference between *rūpa-kalāpas* and ultimate materiality, please see also Answer 7.6, p.285

<sup>3</sup> **dhātu** (element: substance that cannot be analysed further) Please see, for example, M.III.ii.5 'Bahudhātuka Sutta' ('Many Kinds of Element Sutta'). The *Visuddhi Magga* explains that the elements  
Please see further next page

and can see how it is related to mentality. That is the aim of four-elements meditation.

But, before explaining the meditation, let us discuss briefly the different types of *rūpa-kalāpa* and their elements, and then explain about the origin of materiality, in order that it may be easier for you to understand the profound meditation that is four-elements meditation (*catu-dhātu vavatthāna*).<sup>1</sup>

**Three Types of Rūpa-Kalāpa**

As mentioned, materiality is nothing except *rūpa-kalāpas*, and there are basically three types of *rūpa-kalāpa*:

1. Octad-kalāpas.....(*aṭṭhaka*)  
With a basic eight elements.
2. Nonad-kalāpas.....(*navaka*)  
The basic eight plus a ninth.
3. Decad-kalāpas.....(*dasaka*)  
The nine plus a tenth.

Generally speaking, the materiality of our body is composed of these three types of *rūpa-kalāpa* mixed together in different ways.

**The Elements of the Three Types of Rūpa-Kalāpa**

The first type of *rūpa-kalāpa* comprises the four elements (*catu dhātu*), which are the four 'great elements' (*mahābhūtā*), and four elements of derived materiality (*upādā rūpa*);<sup>2</sup> in total eight elements:

1. Earth.....(*pathavī*)
2. Water.....(*āpo*)
3. Fire.....(*tejo*)

'cause the individual characteristic to be carried' (*attano sabhāvaṃ dhārentīti dhātuyo*) (Vs.xv 'Dhātuvūthāra Kathā' B518 ('Elements Details Explanation' N21)).

<sup>1</sup> Please see also Answer 2.2 p.86

<sup>2</sup> **derived materiality** so called because it derives from, depends on the four great elements.



4. Wind ..... (vāyo)
5. Colour ..... (vaṇṇa)
6. Odour ..... (gandha)
7. Flavour ..... (rasa)
8. Nutritive essence ..... (ojā)

Because it has eight elements, this type of rūpa-kalāpa is called an octad-kalāpa (*aṭṭhaka kalāpa*), and because nutritive essence is the eighth, it is also called a nutritive-essence octad-kalāpa (*ojaṭṭhamaka kalāpa*).<sup>1</sup> They are found throughout the body, are opaque materiality (*napasāda rūpa*), and are inanimate, without life.<sup>2</sup>

The second type of rūpa-kalāpa comprises these basic eight elements and a ninth, life-faculty (*jīvitindriya*).<sup>3</sup> Because it has nine elements, this type of rūpa-kalāpa is called a nonad-kalāpa (*navaka*), and because it has life-faculty as the ninth, it is also called a life nonad-kalāpa (*jīvita navaka-kalāpa*). They are found throughout the body and are also opaque. Because they have life-faculty, they are animate, have life.

The third type of rūpa-kalāpa comprises the basic eight elements, life-faculty as the ninth, and a tenth. Because it has ten elements, this type of rūpa-kalāpa is called a decad-kalāpa (*dasaka*). There are three types of decad-kalāpa:

1. Eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, and body decad-kalāpas  
..... (*cakkhu-, sota-, ghāna-, jivhā-, kāya dasaka-kalāpa*)

<sup>1</sup> The Pāli for the different types of rūpa-kalāpa is *kalāpa that has x as the y*

<sup>2</sup> The fire-element of rūpa-kalāpas that have life-faculty sustains concomitant octad-kalāpas, which is why, although they are without life-faculty, they are animate. Without the heat of the life-faculty, the materiality rots, such as happens when a person dies: the animate body becomes an inanimate corpse.

<sup>3</sup> There are also rūpa-kalāpas of derived materiality that need to be discerned but are here not discussed, for example, rūpa-kalāpas with sound/bodily intimation as the ninth/twelfth; verbal intimation as the tenth/thirteenth; lightness as the eleventh. For these and other elements, please see Vs.xiv 'Rūpakkhanda Kathā' ('Materiality Aggregate Explanation'), or the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw's little book *Mindfulness-of-Breathing and Four-Elements-Meditation* (WAVE Publications, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia)

2. Heart decad-kalāpas ..... (*hadāya dasaka-kalāpa*)  
Their tenth element is the heart-element (*hadāya-rūpa*), which is opaque (*napasāda*).
3. Sex decad-kalāpas ..... (*bhāva dasaka-kalāpa*)  
Their tenth element is the sex-element (*bhāva-rūpa*), which is also opaque.

1. Eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, and body decad-kalāpas are found in the respective organ. Their tenth, the transparent-element (*pasāda rūpa*), is the respective sense-base. The five material sense-bases are also the five material sense-doors, i.e., the five material sense-bases (*vatthu*) (eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body-base) are also the five material sense-doors (*dvāra*)<sup>1</sup> (eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body-door).

2. Heart decad-kalāpas are found in the blood in the heart. Their tenth, the opaque-element, is also the sense-base: the heart-base (*vatthu*). But it is not the mind-door (the *bhavaṅga*), because the mind-door is mentality, although it depends on the material tenth, opaque-element of a heart decad-kalāpa.

Whenever an object strikes upon one of the five sense-doors, it strikes the sixth sense-door (the mind-door, *bhavaṅga*) at the same time.<sup>2</sup> For example, when a colour-object<sup>3</sup> strikes upon the eye-door, it strikes upon the transparent, tenth element of an eye decad-kalāpa,<sup>4</sup> and upon the mind-door (*bhavaṅga*) at the same time, and the mind-door is based on the opaque, tenth element of

<sup>1</sup> The term *dvāra* (door) describes the fact that objects need an entrance through which to be known by a consciousness.

<sup>2</sup> Please see also S.V.IV.v.2 'Uṇṇābhābrahmana Sutta' ('Uṇṇābha Brahmin Sutta') quoted in 'Introduction', p.8

<sup>3</sup> Strictly speaking a visual/chromatic object, and a sound-object is an auditory object etc. Please see footnote 2, p.9

<sup>4</sup> Eye decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7-flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) eye transparent-element.

a heart decad-kalāpa.<sup>1</sup> The colour object is known first by a mind-consciousness, second by an eye-consciousness, and is then known by further mind-consciousnesses. When a sound-object strikes upon the ear-door, it strikes upon the transparent, tenth element in an ear decad-kalāpa etc. Apart from the objects that also strike the five sense-doors, there are also objects that strike the mind-door (bhavaṅga) alone: they are the six types of dhamma objects.<sup>2</sup>

3. **Sex-materiality decad-kalāpas** are found throughout the body. Their tenth, the opaque-element, is sex materiality (*bhāva*), which is of two types:<sup>3</sup>

- i) Male sex-materiality .....(*purisa bhāva*)  
which provides the physical characteristics of males, by which we know:  
'This is a male.' It is found in only males.
- ii) Female sex-materiality .....(*itthi bhāva*)  
which provides the physical characteristics of females, by which we know:  
'This is a female.' It is found in only females.

It is because their tenth element is transparent that eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, and body decad-kalāpas are transparent. All other types of rūpa-kalāpas are without the transparent element, which is why they are opaque, as, for example, sex- and heart decad-kalāpas just discussed.

### Materiality's Four Types of Origin

Having now discussed the basic structures of ultimate materiality, we can go on to a general discussion about the origin of materiality, which you will also need to discern when doing four-elements meditation. Materiality has one of four origins: kamma,

<sup>1</sup> **Heart decad-kalāpa:** (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7-flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) heart element. Please see also Table 4, p.173

<sup>2</sup> Please see 'Introduction' p.9

<sup>3</sup> Also referred to as *purisindriya* and *itthindriya* (*indriya* = faculty)

consciousness, temperature and nutriment, which means we have four types of materiality:<sup>1</sup>

1. Kamma-produced materiality .....(*kammaja rūpa*)
2. Consciousness-produced materiality ..... (*cittaja rūpa*)
3. Temperature-produced materiality ..... (*utuja rūpa*)
4. Nutriment-produced materiality .....(*āhāraja rūpa*)

As mentioned, the materiality of our body is nothing except rūpa-kalāpas, and all rūpa-kalāpas have at least the basic eight elements: earth, water, fire, wind, colour, odour, flavour and nutritive essence. The eighth, nutritive essence, maintains materiality, which is why when there is no longer nutritive essence, the materiality falls apart.

Let us now look further at each of the four types of origin for materiality.

### Kamma-Produced Materiality

Kamma-produced materiality (*kammaja rūpa*) comprises life nonad-kalāpas, and decad-kalāpas: eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, body-, heart- and sex decad-kalāpas. Having life-faculty, they are animate. Their nutritive essence (*ojā*) is kamma-produced (*kammaja ojā*).

It is in kamma-produced materiality that we see something of the realities of the Second Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering. Animate materiality is materiality with life, which is rebirth, the First Noble Truth. And, as explained by The Buddha in the '*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*',<sup>2</sup> rebirth (suffering) takes place because of craving (*taṇhā*), and craving arises in anything that is agreeable and pleasant: sights through the eye, striking upon the transparent element of eye decad-kalāpas (the eye-

<sup>1</sup> In the *Visuddhi Magga*, the order of the four origins of materiality is: (1) kamma, (2) consciousness, (3) nutriment, (4) temperature. The order here is that taught by the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw.

<sup>2</sup> D.ii.9 ('Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness') '*Samudayasacca Niddeso*' ('Origin-Noble-Truth Description'), and Vs.xiv '*Rūpakkhanda Kathā*' ('Materiality Aggregate Discussion').

door) and the bhavaṅga (mind-door); sounds through the ear, striking upon the transparent element of ear decad-kalāpas (the ear-door) and the bhavaṅga (mind-door) etc. The transparent element that is the five sense-doors/bases, and the opaque element that is the heart-base exist because of craving for pleasant and agreeable sights, sounds, odours, flavours, tangibles and mental objects.

As the Buddha also explains, the direct cause for rebirth is kamma, but for there to be a result, it requires craving. And although the kamma that produces the materiality at a human rebirth<sup>1</sup> of a human life is kusala, rebirth itself has taken place because of clinging, which is conditioned by craving, which is conditioned by ignorance: not understanding the Four Noble Truths.

Kamma-produced materiality is being produced all the time. It is the foundation of all other materiality. Each consciousness-moment (*cittakkhaṇa*) (of the 17 that are materiality's life-span) has three stages:

1. arising.....(*uppāda*)
2. standing.....(*ṭhiti*)
3. passing away.....(*bhaṅga*)

At each stage, new kamma-produced materiality is arising. This means that during one cognitive-process, 51 (17 x 3) kamma-produced rūpa-kalāpas are produced. Their temperature produces temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, and their nutritive-essence produces new nutriment-produced rūpa-kalāpas, and the temperature and nutritive-essence of those rūpa-kalāpas produce also more etc.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> At a human rebirth, in the womb, the very first materiality is only heart-, body- and sex decad-kalāpas, all kamma-produced.

<sup>2</sup> For details, please see Table 5, p.211

### Consciousness-Produced materiality

Consciousness-produced materiality (*cittaja rūpa*) comprises octad-kalāpas. Their nutritive essence is consciousness-produced (*cittaja ojā*), and is produced only by consciousnesses that arise dependent on the heart-base, not consciousnesses of the five sense-doors/bases. And, apart from the rebirth-linking consciousness, all consciousnesses that arise dependent on the heart-base produce consciousness-produced materiality.

An example is anger and worry. Anger and worry are both hatred (*dosa*), and a consciousness of hatred produces consciousness-produced materiality with predominant fire-element. That is why, when we are angry or worried, we get hot.

Another example is bodily movement: moving the limbs and body forwards and backwards, up and down. For example, when we walk, the mind is directed at the leg and foot. That intention produces consciousness-produced materiality in the leg and foot, and throughout the body: it has predominant wind-element. Just as wind carries objects along, so too the wind-element carries the limbs and body along. The movement is a long series of different consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas being produced in different places. The consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas that arise at the raising of the foot are different from the consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas that arise at the lowering of the foot. Each rūpa-kalāpa arises and passes away in the same place, and new rūpa-kalāpas arise elsewhere and pass away there.

A third example is Samatha, Vipassanā, Path and Fruition consciousnesses. Such consciousnesses are very pure, very powerful and superior, because there are no *upakkilesa* (imperfections). That means these consciousnesses produce very many generations of pure and superior consciousness-produced materiality of which the earth-, wind- and fire-element are very soft and subtle. When those soft and subtle rūpa-kalāpas touch the body-door (the tenth element in the body decad-kalāpas) the yogi experiences great bodily comfort, with no heaviness (the earth-element). Since, as mentioned before, the fire-element of all rūpa-kalāpas produces temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, the fire-element in

those superior consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas produces many temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas inside and outside the body.

The radiance, brilliance and brightness that arises with those superior consciousnesses is produced by the brilliance of the colour-materiality of the consciousness- and temperature-produced materiality.<sup>1</sup> This accounts also for the clear and bright skin and faculties of yogis who develop these superior consciousnesses.<sup>2</sup> The materiality produced by, for example, the Venerable Anuruddha's divine-eye consciousnesses (*dibba-cakkhu abhiññāna*) spread throughout a thousand world-systems: they were lit up by the superior consciousness-produced materiality and became visible to him. You too, if you, develop sufficiently concentrated and pure consciousness, may be able to see other realms of existence etc.<sup>3</sup>

### Temperature-Produced materiality

Temperature-produced materiality (*utuja rūpa*) comprises octad-kalāpas. Being octad-kalāpas (without the ninth, life-faculty) they are in themselves inanimate.<sup>4</sup> Their nutritive essence is temperature-produced (*utuja ojā*), which comes from the fire-element (*tejo dhātu*), the third element of all rūpa-kalāpas.<sup>5</sup> The fire-element of all rūpa-kalāpas produces temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, which themselves have fire-element that produces temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, which themselves have fire-element etc.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For The Buddha's description of this light, please see Introduction p.15

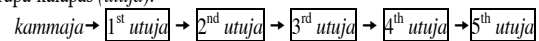
<sup>2</sup> Frequently referred to in the Texts, e.g. the ascetic who meets the newly enlightened Buddha says: 'Friend, your faculties are clear, the colour of your skin is pure and bright.' M.I.iii.6 'Ariyapariyesanā Sutta' ('Noble Search Sutta')

<sup>3</sup> AA.VIII.I.iii.10 'Anuruddha Mahāvītakka Sutta' ('Anuruddha Great Thought Sutta')

<sup>4</sup> But please see footnote 2, p.133.

<sup>5</sup> *tejo* (fire) and *utu* (temperature) refer to the same phenomenon.

<sup>6</sup> E.g. The fire-element (*tejo*) of a kamma-produced (*kammaja*) rūpa-kalāpa itself produces temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas (*utuja*):



That is how, according to its power, the fire-element produces materiality through a number of generations.

All inanimate materiality is produced and maintained by temperature. A good example is plants. Their materiality is temperature-produced materiality and is produced by the fire-element originally in the seed. Their growth is nothing except the continued production of temperature-produced materiality through many generations. It takes place with the assistance of the fire-element from the soil, sun (hot), and water (cold).

The fire-element in, for example, stones, metals, minerals and hardwood is very powerful, and produces very, very many generations of materiality. That is why that materiality can last long. But the fire-element in, for example, softwood, tender plants, flesh, food and water is very weak, not very many generations of materiality are produced, which is why the materiality soon falls apart. When materiality falls apart, it is because the fire-element no longer produces new materiality but instead consumes itself: the materiality rots, falls apart, and dissolves.

When materiality is consumed by fire, such as when wood is burning, it is because the fire-element of the external materiality (the flames that strike the wood) supports the fire-element of the internal materiality (the wood), and an huge amount of fire-element bursts forth, which means the fire-element becomes predominant and the materiality is consumed.

### Nutriments-Produced Materiality

Nutriments-produced materiality (*āhāraja rūpa*) also comprises octad-kalāpas. Their nutritive essence is nutriment-produced nutritive essence (*āhāraja ojā*). It is produced by the food and drink that we consume. The food in the bowl, the food in the alimentary canal (the food in the mouth, the newly eaten undigested food in the stomach, semi-digested- and fully digested food in the intestines, the faeces), pus, blood and urine are the same: nothing but inanimate temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas.

The digestive heat is the fire-element of life nonad-kalāpas, which are (as mentioned<sup>1</sup>) produced by kamma. When the digestive heat meets with the nutritive essence of the temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*) of the undigested, and semi-digested food, further nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas are produced: they are nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas, with nutriment-produced nutritive-essence (*ahāraja oja*) as the eighth. Again, when that nutritive-essence meets the (kammically produced) digestive heat, it reproduces further through many generations of nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas. And it supports also the nutritive-essence in kamma-, consciousness-, and temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, and the existing nutriment-produced rūpa-kalāpas.

The nutriment of food taken in one day may reproduce in this way for up to seven days, although the number of generations produced depends on the quality of the food. Divine nutriment, which is of the deva-realm and is most superior, may reproduce this way for up to one or two months.

Since life nonad-kalāpas are found throughout the body, the process of digestion found in the alimentary canal is found to a weaker degree throughout the body. That is why, for example, when medicinal oil is applied to the skin, or an injection of medicine is made under the skin, the medicine spreads throughout the body (is 'digested'). But if very much oil is applied, the weakness of the digestion may mean it takes long to digest.

That concludes the brief discussion of the origins of materiality. There is much more that could be explained, but this should be sufficient for you better to understand four-elements meditation, which will now be discussed.

If you want to attain Nibbāna, you need to know and see all these things, because you need to see materiality as it really is, not only as a concept.<sup>2</sup> You need first to see that materiality (*rūpa*)

<sup>1</sup> Please see 'Kamma-Produced Materiality', above p.136

<sup>2</sup> For The Buddha's words on the need to see the ultimate realities of materiality, please see Introduction, p.13 (M.I.iv.3 'Mahāgopālaka Sutta' ('Great Cowherd Sutta'))

consists of rūpa-kalāpas, after which you need to penetrate the delusion of compactness to see the individual elements of the individual rūpa-kalāpa, which is to see ultimate materiality, and then you need to analyse the materiality: see the different elements, their origin, and how they function. To be able to do that, you start with four-elements meditation, which is to know and see the four great elements (*mahābhūta*): earth-, water-, fire- and wind-element.

### The Beginning of Vipassanā

Although you are here not practising Vipassanā proper, we may say that this is the beginning of Vipassanā, because at the end of four-elements meditation you will have developed the ability to discern ultimate materiality, which is necessary for Vipassanā. We can say that you are now collecting the material necessary to do the work of Vipassanā.

That is why it is necessary for all yogis to develop four-elements meditation. Whether one's path to Vipassana is first to develop a Samatha subject of meditation (such as *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) up to jhāna), or one's path begins with four-elements meditation (that leads only up to access concentration), one needs to complete four-elements meditation before one can do Vipassanā. Both paths are taught at the Pa-Auk monasteries in Myanmar. If one has first developed a Samatha subject of meditation, one should please enter the fourth jhāna at every sitting, and having emerged from it, begin four-elements meditation.

### How You Develop Four-Elements Meditation

In the Pāḷi texts, there are two ways to develop four-elements meditation: in brief and in detail. The brief is for those of quick understanding, and the detailed for those who have difficulty with

the brief one. The Buddha taught the brief method in the ‘*Mahā Satipa hāna Sutta*’:<sup>1</sup>

**A bhikkhu reviews this very body, however it be positioned or placed, as consisting of just elements, thus, ‘There are in this body just**

- [1] **the earth-element** .....(*pathavī-dhātu*),  
 [2] **the water-element**.....(*āpo-dhātu*),  
 [3] **the fire-element**.....(*tejo-dhātu*),  
 [4] **the wind-element**.....(*vāyo-dhātu*).’

The *Visuddhi Magga* explains further:<sup>2</sup>

So firstly, one of quick understanding who wants to develop this meditation should go into solitary retreat. Then he should advert to his entire material body, and discern the elements in brief in this way, ‘In this body,

- [1] what is hardness or roughness is the earth-element;  
 [2] what is flowing or cohesion is the water-element;  
 [3] what is maturing or heat is the fire-element;  
 [4] what is pushing or supporting is the wind-element,’<sup>3</sup>

and he should advert and give attention to it, and review it again and again as ‘earth-element, water-element, fire-element, wind-element,’ that is to say, as mere elements, not a being, and soulless.

As he makes effort in this way, it is not long before concentration arises in him, which is reinforced by understanding that illuminates the classification of the elements, and which is only access and does not reach absorption because it has states with individual essences as its object.

Or alternatively, there are these four [bodily] parts mentioned by the Elder Sāriputta, for the purpose of showing the absence of any living being in the four great primary elements thus: ‘When a space is enclosed with bones, sinews, flesh, and skin, there comes to be the term ‘material form’ (*rūpa*)’. And he should resolve each of these, separating them out by the hand of knowledge, and then discern them in the way already stated thus [above]: ‘In these what is hardness... as its objects.’

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 ‘Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness’ (Also M.I.i.10)

<sup>2</sup> Vs.xi ‘*Catu-Dhātu Vavatthāna Bhāvanā*’ B306 (‘Four-Elements Definition Meditation’ Ñ41-43)

<sup>3</sup> Please see also footnote 1, p.149

As taught at Pa-Auk Tawya Monastery (in accordance with the *Dhammasaṅgīnī*),<sup>1</sup> you should discern the four elements in the whole body as twelve characteristics:

1. Earth-element:..... (1) hardness (2) roughness  
 (3) heaviness (4) softness  
 (5) smoothness (6) lightness
2. Water-element: ..... (7) flowing (8) cohesion
3. Fire-element: ..... (9) heat (10) coldness
4. Wind-element: ..... (11) supporting (12) pushing

To develop this meditation, you must learn how to discern each of the twelve characteristics, one at a time. Usually, the beginner is first taught the characteristics easier to discern, and later the more difficult ones. They are usually taught in this order: pushing, hardness, roughness, heaviness, supporting, softness, smoothness, lightness, heat, coldness, cohesion, flowing. Each characteristic must be discerned in first one place in the body, and then throughout the body.

### How You See the Twelve Characteristics

1. To discern pushing, begin by being aware, through the sense of touch, of pushing in the centre of your head as you breathe in and out. When you discern it, concentrate on it until it becomes clear to your mind. Then move your awareness to a part of the body nearby, and look for pushing there. This way you will slowly be able to discern pushing first in the head, then the neck, the trunk of the body, the arms, and the legs and feet. Do it again and again, many times, until wherever you place your awareness in the body you see pushing easily. If the pushing of the breath in the centre of the head is not easy to discern, then try to feel the pushing as the chest expands, or the abdomen moves when breathing. If that is not

<sup>1</sup> The first book of the *Abhidhamma*.

clear, try to feel the pulse, or any other obvious form of pushing. Wherever there is movement, there is pushing.

Wherever you begin, you must slowly develop your understanding, so that you discern pushing throughout the body, from head to feet. In some places it will be obvious, in other places less so, but it is present throughout the body.

2. When you are satisfied that you can see pushing, look for hardness. Begin by discerning the hardness in the teeth. Bite them together and feel how hard they are. Relax your bite, and feel their hardness. When you can feel this, try to discern hardness throughout the body systematically from head to feet, in the same way as you did to discern pushing. Do not deliberately tense the body.

When you can discern hardness throughout the body, again look for pushing throughout the body. Alternate between these two, pushing and hardness, again and again, discerning pushing throughout the body, and then hardness throughout the body, from head to feet. Repeat this many times until you are satisfied that you can do it.

3. Then look for roughness. Rub your tongue over the edge of your teeth, or brush your hand over your robe, or the skin of your arm, and feel roughness. Now try to discern roughness throughout the body systematically as before. If you cannot feel roughness, try looking at pushing and hardness again, and you may discern it with them.

When you can discern roughness, go back to discern the three, pushing, hardness, roughness, one at a time, again and again, throughout the body, until you are satisfied.

4. Then look for heaviness. Place one hand on top of the other in your lap, and feel the heaviness of the top hand, or feel the heaviness of the head by bending it forward. Practise systematically until you discern heaviness throughout the

body. When you can discern heaviness clearly, look for the four, pushing, hardness, roughness, and heaviness, in turn, throughout the body, until you are satisfied.

5. Then look for supporting. Relax your back, so your body bends forward. Then straighten it, and keep it straight. The force that keeps the body straight is supporting. Practise systematically until you discern supporting throughout the body. If it is not clear, try to discern it together with hardness, as this can make it easier.

Then, when you can discern supporting easily, look for the five, pushing, hardness, roughness, heaviness, and supporting throughout the body.

6. Next look for softness by pressing your tongue against the inside of your lower lip to feel its softness. Then relax your body, and practise systematically until you can discern softness easily throughout the body.

Now look for the six, pushing, hardness, roughness, heaviness, supporting, and softness throughout the body.

7. Next look for smoothness by wetting your lips and rubbing your tongue over them from side to side. Practise until you can discern smoothness throughout the body.

Then look for all seven characteristics throughout the body.

8. Next look for lightness by wagging a finger up and down, and feeling its lightness. If you cannot feel it, look for heaviness again. When you can feel the heaviness of the whole body, then again wag a finger up and down and feel its lightness. Practise until you can discern lightness throughout the body.

And then look for all eight characteristics.

9. Next look for heat (or warmth) throughout the body. This is usually very easy to do. Begin by being aware, through the sense of touch, of heat in any place where it is clear to you. And then look for all nine characteristics.

10. Next look for coldness by feeling the coldness of the breath as it enters the nostrils, and then discern it systematically throughout the body.

You can now discern ten characteristics.

The first ten characteristics are all known directly through the sense of touch, but the last two characteristics, flowing and cohe-

sion, are inferred from the other ten characteristics. That is a good reason to teach them last.

11. To discern cohesion, be aware of how the body is held together by the skin, flesh, and sinews. The blood is held inside by the skin, like water in a balloon. Without cohesion the body would fall into separate pieces and particles. The force of gravity that keeps the body stuck to the earth is also cohesion. If this is not clear, discern all ten qualities again and again, one at a time throughout the body. When you have become skilled in that, you will find that the quality of cohesion also becomes clear. If it is still not clear, discern just the qualities of pushing and hardness again and again. Then you should feel as if your whole body was wound up in rope. Discern this as cohesion, and develop it as you developed the other characteristics.
12. To discern flowing, be aware of the saliva flowing in the mouth, the blood flowing through the blood vessels, the air flowing into the lungs, or heat flowing throughout the body. If this is not clear, look at it together with coldness, heat, or pushing, and you may discern flowing.

When you can discern all twelve characteristics clearly throughout the body, from head to feet, you should discern them again and again in this order. When satisfied you should rearrange the order to the one first mentioned in the beginning: hardness, roughness, heaviness, softness, smoothness, lightness, flowing, cohesion, heat, coldness, supporting, and pushing. In that order try to discern each characteristic, one at a time from head to feet. You should try to develop this until you can do it quite quickly, at least three rounds a minute.

While practising in this way, the elements will for some yogis become unbalanced, some elements may become excessive and even unbearable. Particularly hardness, heat, and pushing can become excessive. If this occurs, you should concentrate more on the opposite quality, and continue to develop concentration in that way.

For example, if flowing is in excess concentrate more on cohesion, or if supporting is in excess concentrate more on pushing. The opposites are: hardness and softness, roughness and smoothness, heaviness and lightness, flowing and cohesion, heat and coldness, and supporting and pushing.

It is for the sake of balancing the elements that twelve characteristics were taught in the first place. When the elements are balanced, it is easier to attain concentration.

Having now become skilled in the discernment of the twelve characteristics in the whole body, with the twelve characteristics having become clear, you should discern the first six at one glance as the earth-element, the next two at one glance as the water-element, the next two as the fire-element, and the last two as the wind-element. You should thus continue to discern earth, water, fire, and wind, in order to calm the mind and attain concentration. You should do this again and again hundreds, thousands, or millions of times.

A good method for keeping the mind calm and concentrated is to no longer move your awareness from one part of the body to another. Instead, take an overview of the body. It is usually best to take the overview as if you were looking from behind your shoulders. It can also be done as if looking from above your head down, although this may lead to tension and imbalance of the elements.

### The Ten Ways to Develop Your Concentration

The subcommentary to the *Visuddhi Magga* says now to develop your concentration in ten ways.<sup>1</sup> You should discern the four elements

1. **In sequence** .....(*anupubbato*)  
Earth, water, fire, and wind: the sequence given by The Buddha.

<sup>1</sup> VsTi.xi 'Catudhātu-vavatthāna-bhāvanā' D308 ('Four-Elements Definition Meditation')



2. **Not too fast**.....(*nāṭisīghato*)  
If you discern the four elements too fast, you will not see them clearly.
3. **Not too slow** .....(*nāṭisaṇikato*)  
If you discern the four elements too slowly, you will not reach the end.
4. **Warding off distractions**.....(*vikkhepapaṭibāhanato*)  
You should keep the mind with only the object of meditation, the four elements, and not let it wander.
5. **Going beyond concepts**.....(*paññattisamatikkamanato*)  
You should not just mentally note, ‘earth, water, fire, wind’, but be aware of the actual realities the concepts represent:  
hardness, roughness, heaviness, softness, smoothness, lightness, flowing, cohesion, heat, coldness, supporting, and pushing.
6. **Discarding what is unclear**.....(*anupaṭṭhānamuñcanato*)  
Once you can discern all twelve characteristics, you may temporarily leave out characteristics that are unclear, but not if it leads to pain or tension, because of an imbalance in the elements. You need also to keep at least one characteristic for each of the four elements. You cannot work on just three, two, or one element. And it is best if all twelve characteristics are clear, with none left out.
7. **Discerning the characteristics**.....(*lakkhaṇato*)  
When you begin to meditate, and the characteristics of each element are not yet clear, you can also concentrate on the function and manifestation of the elements.<sup>1</sup>  
When your concentration gets better, however, you should concen-

<sup>1</sup> [earth] Natural Characteristic: hardness (1), softness (2), roughness (3), smoothness (4), heaviness (5), lightness (6); Function: act as foundation (for all other types of materiality); Manifestation: receive (all other types of materiality within the same rūpa-kalāpa) [water] C: fluidity/flow/trickle (7); F: expand/dilate; M: bind/cohere [here C and M are sometimes seen as the same thing] (8) [fire] C: heat (9)/cold(10); F: warm/age/digest/consume/mature; M: soften (as in cooking raw materials into edible food) [wind] C: Support (11) F: move/push (12) M: carry. Please see also M.II.ii.2 ‘Mahārāhulovāda Sutta’ (Great Advice-to-Rāhula Sutta), and Vs.xi ‘Catudhātuvavathānabhāvanā’ B350 (‘Definition of the Four Elements’ N93)

trate on only the natural characteristics (*sabhāva lakkhaṇa*): the hardness and roughness of the earth-element, the flowing and cohesion of the water-element, the heat and coldness of the fire-element, and the supporting of the wind-element.

At this point you will see only elements, and not see them as a person or self.

8-9-10.The sub-commentary further recommends that you develop your concentration according to:

- (8) ‘*Adhicitta Sutta*’ (‘Higher Mind Sutta’)
- (9) ‘*Sītibhāva Sutta*’ (‘Becoming Cool Sutta’)
- (10) ‘*Bojjhaṅga Sutta*’ (‘Enlightenment Factors Sutta’)<sup>1</sup>

In those three suttas, The Buddha advises balancing the five faculties (*indriya*): faith, effort, mindfulness, concentration, and understanding; and balancing the seven factors of enlightenment (*bojjhaṅga*): mindfulness, investigation of phenomena, effort, joy, tranquillity, concentration and equanimity. They were discussed in the first talk.<sup>2</sup>

## How You See Ultimate Materiality

### Seeing the Body Transparent- Element as One Block

As you continue to develop concentration on the four elements, and approach access concentration (*upacāra samādhi*), you will see different kinds of light. To some yogis it is a smoky grey light. If you continue to concentrate on the four elements in that grey light, it will become whiter like cotton wool, and then bright white, like clouds, and your whole body will appear as a white form. As you continue to concentrate on the four elements in the

<sup>1</sup> (8) A.III.II.v.11 (Also called ‘*Nimitta Sutta*’ (‘Sign Sutta’)); (9) A.VI.IX.1 ‘*Sītibhāva Sutta*’ (‘Becoming Cool Sutta’); (10) S.V.II.vi.3 ‘*Enlightenment Factors Sutta*’ also called ‘*Aggi Sutta*’ (‘Fire Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> Balancing the five faculties, please see p.50 ff, and the enlightenment factors, please see p.54 ff.

white form, it will eventually become transparent like a block of ice or glass.

This transparent materiality is the five sensitivities (*pasāda*), which we call also the five ‘transparent-elements’: the body-, eye-, ear-, nose-, and tongue transparent-elements. The body transparent-element is found throughout the body, in all six sense-bases, which is why your whole body appears transparent. You see the transparent-elements as one transparent form or block, because you have not yet seen through the three kinds of compactness (*ghana*): compactness of continuity, of group and of function.<sup>1</sup>

### How You See the Rūpa-kalāpas

If you continue to discern the four elements in the transparent form (or block), it will sparkle and emit light. When you can concentrate on the four elements in this form (or block) continuously for at least half an hour, you have reached access concentration. With the light, discern the space-element in the transparent form, by looking for small spaces in it. You will now find that the transparent form breaks down into small particles; they are called rūpa-kalāpas.<sup>2</sup> Having reached this stage, which is purification of mind (*citta visuddhi*), you can proceed to develop purification of view (*diṭṭhi visuddhi*), by analysing the rūpa-kalāpas. That is the beginning of Vipassanā meditation.

### (Benefits of Concentration)

Before explaining how to develop Vipassanā meditation, let us look at a practical benefit that is to be gained from both the access concentration that a pure-insight yogi has here reached, and the jhāna concentration of a Samatha yogi.

<sup>1</sup> Regarding compactness of materiality and mentality, please see also Answer 1.3, p.60

<sup>2</sup> *Rūpa* (materiality) + *kalāpa* (group/cluster)

There is much to discern in Vipassanā meditation, and tiredness will usually occur. When this happens, it is good to take a rest. There is a simile in the commentary to the ‘*Dvedhāvitakka Sutta*’<sup>1</sup> of the *Majjhima Nikāya*, which explains how a yogi can rest in jhāna. It says that during a battle, sometimes the warriors feel tired. The enemy may be strong, and many arrows flying. So the warriors retreat to their fortress. Inside the fortress they are safe from the enemy’s arrows and can rest. Then, when they feel strong and powerful again, they leave the fortress and return to the battle-field. Jhāna is like a fortress, and can be used as a resting-place during Vipassanā meditation. Pure-Vipassanā yogis, who have no jhāna, and have started directly with four-elements meditation, can instead use their access concentration as a fortress to rest in. In both cases, the yogi can then return to the battle-field of Vipassanā clear and refreshed. There is thus great benefit in having a resting-place.

Let us then go back to discussing how you develop Vipassanā meditation, and start with the analysis of rūpa-kalāpas.

### Transparent and Opaque Rūpa-kalāpas

Rūpa-kalāpas fall into two groups: transparent rūpa-kalāpas and opaque ones. Rūpa-kalāpas that contain one of the five transparent-elements (eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- or body transparent-element) are the transparent rūpa-kalāpas. All other rūpa-kalāpas are opaque.

### How You Analyse the Rūpa-kalāpas

#### How You See the Four Elements

You should first discern the four elements, earth, water, fire, and wind, of individual transparent- and opaque rūpa-kalāpas.

<sup>1</sup> MA.I.ii.9 ‘*Dvedhāvitakka Sutta*’ (‘Two Kinds of Thought Sutta’)

You will find that the rūpa-kalāpas arise and pass away very, very quickly, and will be unable to analyse them, because you still see them as small particles with size. Since you have not yet seen through the three kinds of compactness, you are still in the realm of concepts (*paññatti*), and have not arrived at ultimate reality (*paramattha*).<sup>1</sup>

It is because you have not seen through the concepts of group and shape that the particles, the small lumps, remain. If you do not go any further, but try to do Vipassanā by contemplating the arising and passing away of those small lumps, which are the rūpa-kalāpas, you will be trying to do Vipassanā on concepts.<sup>2</sup> So you must analyse the rūpa-kalāpas further, until you can see the elements in single ones: in order to reach ultimate reality.

If, because they arise and pass away very, very quickly, you are unable to discern the four elements in single rūpa-kalāpas, then ignore their arising and passing away: just as when meeting someone you do not want to meet, you would pretend not to see or notice him. You should in the same way take no notice of the arising and passing away of the rūpa-kalāpas, and concentrate on only the four elements in single ones. It is possible for you to do this because of the power of your concentration.

If you are still unsuccessful, you should concentrate on the earth-element alternately in the whole body at once and in a single rūpa-kalāpa. And do the same with the water-, fire-, and wind-element. You need to discern the four elements in a single transparent rūpa-kalāpa and a single opaque one.

This is the procedure that we teach at Pa-Auk: you discern the elements one-by-one. The Texts explain that one should discern all the elements at once, but they were composed by skilled yogis and also meant for skilled yogis. Because discerning the elements of materiality is very profound, the power of Vipassanā of beginners is usually not yet strong and powerful enough for them to see

<sup>1</sup> Compactness of continuity (*santati-ghana*), of group (*samūha-ghana*), and of function (*kicca-ghana*). For details about compactness of materiality and mentality, please see Answer 1.3 p.60

<sup>2</sup> For a discussion of Vipassanā on concepts, please see 'Introduction' p.11ff

all the elements at once. So we teach them to discern the elements one-by-one, base-by-base, from the easiest to the more difficult. Then, when they have become very skilled in the practice, they can see all four elements (eight characteristics) in a rūpa-kalāpa at once.<sup>1</sup>

When you have seen the four elements in a single transparent- and a single opaque rūpa-kalāpa, it is the end of your Samatha practice, the end of Purification of Mind (*citta visuddhi*), and the beginning of your Vipassanā practice, the beginning of Purification of View (*ditṭhi visuddhi*): you have begun discerning ultimate mentality-materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariggaha*) and analysing ultimate mentality-materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda*). That is how four-elements meditation comprises both Samatha and Vipassanā.

When you have succeeded, discern the four elements in a number of transparent and opaque rūpa-kalāpas of the six sense-bases: the eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, body- and heart-base in turn.

As mentioned before, transparent and opaque rūpa-kalāpas all comprise a basic eight elements. You will now have discerned the first four, and should go on to discern the remaining four: colour, odour, flavour, and nutritive essence.

But before proceeding, let us first discuss the general procedure for discerning these four elements.

*The Dispeller of Delusion*, an Abhidhamma commentary, says:<sup>2</sup>

*Sabbopi panesa pabhedo manodvārikajavaneyeva labbhati.*

**(All phenomena are known by the mind-door impulsion (*javana*)<sup>3</sup> alone.)<sup>4</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> Although the yogi has discerned twelve characteristics, he can discern only eight characteristics in one given rūpa kalāpa: (1) hardness, (2) roughness, (3) heaviness (or (1) softness, (2) smoothness, (3) lightness), (4) flowing, (5) cohesion, (6) heat (or coldness), (7) supporting, (8) pushing. There are not opposing characteristics within one rūpa kalāpa.

<sup>2</sup> VbhA.xvi.1 'Ekakaniddeṣa Vaṇṇana' B766 ('One-Description Comment')

<sup>3</sup> The actual knowing of an object is performed by seven *javana* consciousnesses in the mind-door cognitive process, this regardless of the door through which the object has arrived. Please see also 'Introduction' p.10, and Table 6, p.213

<sup>4</sup> For The Buddha's explanation of how the mind-faculty knows the objects of the other five faculties, please see quotation above, p.8

The earth-, water-, fire- and wind-elements of a rūpa-kalāpa you knew with mind-consciousnesses alone. And you can know, for example, also the colour, odour, and flavour of a rūpa-kalāpa that way. But although it is easy to see colour with a mind-consciousness alone, it is difficult to see odour and flavour that way, because it is a life-long habit to use the nose and tongue. Therefore, until your meditation has become strong and powerful, you use a nose- or tongue-consciousness to help you.

Having now explained the two ways for discerning an object, we can then look at how you discern the colour, odour, flavour and nutritive-essence in rūpa-kalāpas.

### How You See Colour

Colour (*vaṇṇa*) is the fifth element to be discerned, is the object of sight (*rūpārammaṇa*), and is found in all rūpa-kalāpas. It is very easily known with a mind-consciousness alone, because by seeing the rūpa-kalāpas you have already seen colour. Colour is always the colour of something, and that something is the four elements.<sup>1</sup>

### How You See Odour

Odour (*gandha*) is the sixth element to be discerned, is the object of smell (*gandhārammaṇa*), and is also found in all rūpa-kalāpas. Because it is a lifelong habit to use the nose to smell with, you will in the beginning need a nose-consciousness to help you know odour with a mind-consciousness.

To do this, you need first to discern the materiality that the two types of consciousness depend on, namely the nose transparent-element and opaque heart-materiality. The nose transparent-e-

<sup>1</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw explains that just as we see the transparency of a glass by looking at the glass, so do we see the transparency of a rūpa-kalāpa by discerning the four elements: they are the 'glass' that possesses the transparency.

ment is the tenth element of a nose decad-kalāpa, and heart materiality is the tenth element of a heart decad-kalāpa.

To find the nose transparent-element, first discern the four elements in the nose, but be sure to look at a decad-kalāpa in the nose that is of the nose-base and not of the body-base. Only nose decad-kalāpas have the nose transparent-element.

Next, to find heart-element, you need to discern the bright, luminous mind-door (the bhavaṅga).<sup>1</sup> It should be easy to do because you have already discerned the four elements in the transparent and opaque rūpa-kalāpas of the six sense-bases.

Having now discerned the nose transparent-element (the nose-door) and the bhavaṅga (the mind-door), you can proceed to discern the odour of a rūpa-kalāpa near the nose decad-kalāpa where you discerned the transparent-element. You will see that the odour impinges on the nose- and mind-door at the same time.

### How You See Flavour

Flavour (*rasa*) is the seventh element to discern, is the object of taste (*gandhārammaṇa*), and is also found in all rūpa-kalāpas. As with the nose, you will in the beginning need a tongue-consciousness to help you know flavour with a mind-consciousness. And here too, you need first to discern the materiality that the two types of consciousness depend on: the tongue transparent-element and opaque heart-materiality. Having done that, you then discern the flavour of a rūpa-kalāpa. You can take a rūpa-kalāpa from the saliva on your tongue.

<sup>1</sup> To speak of the bhavaṅga's luminosity is to use a metaphor, because it is in fact the luminosity of the rūpa-kalāpas produced by the bhavaṅga: consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas, the temperature of which produces further bright rūpa-kalāpas. A Samatha-Vipassanā mind produces particularly bright rūpa-kalāpas because there are no *upakkilesa* (imperfections). For details, please see above 'Consciousness-Produced Materiality' p.138.

### How You See Nutritive Essence

Nutritive essence (*ojā*) is the eighth element to discern. It is also found in all rūpa-kalāpas, and is, as mentioned earlier, of four types:<sup>1</sup>

1. Kamma-produced nutritive-essence .....(*kammaja ojā*)
2. Consciousness<sup>2</sup>-produced nutritive-essence .....(*cittaja ojā*)
3. Temperature-produced nutritive-essence .....(*utuja ojā*)
4. Nutriment-produced nutritive-essence .....(*āhāraja ojā*)

Examine any rūpa-kalāpa, and you will find nutritive essence from which rūpa-kalāpas are seen to multiply forth again and again.

Having now discerned the eight basic elements that are found in all rūpa-kalāpas, you should try to discern the remaining three basic elements that are found in specific rūpa-kalāpas: the life-faculty-, sex-, and heart-element.<sup>3</sup>

### How You See Life-Faculty- and Sex-element

The life-faculty (*jīvitindriya*) element sustains only kamma-produced materiality, which means it is found only there. Since, as explained earlier,<sup>4</sup> all transparent rūpa-kalāpas are kamma-produced, it is easiest for you to discern life-faculty first in a trans-

<sup>1</sup> For an explanation of kamma-, consciousness-, temperature- and nutriment-produced materiality, please see above p.135 ff

<sup>2</sup> According to usage in the Pāli Texts, *citta* is usually 'mind', but sometimes also 'consciousness', which means it is sometimes synonymous with *viññāna* (the usual term for 'consciousness'), as is the case here (Please see also S.II.I.vii.1 'Assutavā Sutta' ('Unlearned Sutta')). Out of respect for the authority of the Pāli Texts, the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw remains faithful also to the terminology used in the particular Pāli Text, which is why he will often use more than one Pāli term for the same thing: depending on which text he is referring to.

<sup>3</sup> When discerning odour and flavour, it was the mind-door (mentality), not the mind-base (materiality) that was discerned. The base needs still to be discerned.

<sup>4</sup> Please see 'Kamma-Produced Materiality' above p.136

parent rūpa-kalāpa. Discern an eye decad-kalāpa,<sup>1</sup> and see that the life-faculty element sustains the elements of its own rūpa-kalāpa only, not the materiality of others.

Then you need also try to discern the life-faculty element in an opaque rūpa-kalāpa. The body has three types of opaque rūpa-kalāpa with the life-faculty element:

1. Heart decad-kalāpas<sup>2</sup> .....(*hadaya dasaka-kalāpa*)  
only in the heart.
2. Sex decad-kalāpas<sup>2</sup> .....(*bhāva dasaka-kalāpa*)  
throughout the body.
3. Life nonad-kalāpas<sup>2</sup> .....(*jīvita navaka-kalāpa*)  
throughout the body.

It is easiest first to discern the life-faculty element of either a life nonad-kalāpa or a sex decad-kalāpa. To tell the two rūpa-kalāpas apart, you look for the sex-element (*bhāva rūpa*).

Just now you discerned the life-faculty element in a transparent rūpa-kalāpa of the eye, so look again in the eye and discern an opaque rūpa-kalāpa with the life-faculty element. Since life nonad-kalāpas and sex decad-kalāpas are found in all six sense-organs, it will be either one. If it has the sex-element, it is a sex decad-kalāpa, if not, it is a life nonad-kalāpa. In that case, discern another opaque rūpa-kalāpa until you discern the sex-element, and then look for it in a rūpa-kalāpa of also the ear, nose, tongue, body and heart.

To discern an opaque rūpa-kalāpa of the heart, you concentrate again on the bright, luminous mind-door, the bhavaṅga. To see it very clearly, wiggle your finger, and see the consciousness that wants to wiggle the finger. Then try to discern the rūpa-kalāpas that support the bhavaṅga. You should be able to find them in the

<sup>1</sup> Eye decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7- flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) eye transparent-element.

<sup>2</sup> Heart decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7- flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) heart element. Sex decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements & (9) life-faculty & (10) sex-materiality. Life nonad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements & (9) life-faculty. Please see also Tables 2-4, p. 171ff

lower part of the bhavaiga: they are opaque, heart decad-kalāpas.<sup>1</sup>

With this, you have completed the discernment of all the elements in rūpa-kalāpas: earth, water, fire, wind, colour, odour, flavour, nutritive essence, life-faculty and sex-materiality. And you have discerned them in the appropriate transparent and opaque rūpa-kalāpas in all six sense-organs. The next stage in discerning materiality is to analyse the materiality of each of the six sense-organs: the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and heart, and see the different types of rūpa-kalāpa there.<sup>2</sup> You start by analysing just the two types of transparent-element.

### How You Analyse Each Sense Organ

#### How You Analyse the Transparent-Elements

Each organ has several kinds of rūpa-kalāpa mixed together. The eye, ear, nose, and tongue have, for example, two types of transparent rūpa-kalāpa mixed together like rice- and wheat flour: the transparent rūpa-kalāpa of the respective organ and transparent rūpa-kalāpa of the body. The two types of transparent rūpa-kalāpa in, for example, the eye are:

1. The eye decad-kalāpa.....(*cakkhu dasaka-kalāpa*)  
The tenth element is the eye transparent-element.
2. The body decad-kalāpa.....(*kāya dasaka-kalāpa*)  
The tenth element is the body transparent-element.

<sup>1</sup> Heart decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7-flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) heart element. Please see also Table 4, p.173

<sup>2</sup> These six sense-organs are referred to also as the six 'sense-bases', but since the bases have already been explained as being in fact only the tenth element in the appropriate rūpa-kalāpas, it has been considered safer to say 'sense-organ' here, referring to the actual physical entity, the eye-ball etc.

Body decad-kalāpas are found throughout the six sense-organs (eye, ear, nose-, tongue, body and heart), mixed with the decad-kalāpas there: in the eye mixed with the eye decad-kalāpas, in the ear mixed with the ear decad-kalāpas (*sota dasaka-kalāpa*) etc. Sex decad-kalāpas too are found throughout the six sense-organs, and are also mixed with the transparent rūpa-kalāpas. To see all this, you need to analyse the transparent rūpa-kalāpas in the five sense-organs, and identify the transparent-element respective to each (the eye-, ear-, nose- and tongue transparent-element) as well as the body transparent-element there.

1. The eye transparent-element.....(*cakkhu pasāda*)  
It is sensitive to colour, whereas the body transparent-element is sensitive to touch (tangible objects). This difference allows you to know which is which. First discern the four elements in the eye to discern a transparent rūpa-kalāpa, and discern that rūpa-kalāpa's transparent-element. Then look at the colour-element of a group of rūpa-kalāpas some distance away from the eye. If it impinges on the transparent-element, the transparent-element is an eye-transparent-element (of an eye decad-kalāpa). Otherwise it is a body transparent-element (of a body decad-kalāpa).
2. The body transparent-element.....(*kāya pasāda*)  
It is sensitive to touch, to tangible objects. Tangible objects are the earth-, fire-, and wind-elements. Again discern a transparent-element in the eye. Then look at the earth-, fire-, or wind-element of a group of rūpa-kalāpas nearby. If it impinges on the transparent-element, the transparent-element is a body transparent-element (of a body decad-kalāpa).
3. The ear transparent-element.....(*sota pasāda*)  
It is sensitive to sound. Discern a transparent-element in the ear. Then listen. If a sound impinges on the transparent-element, the transparent-element is an ear transparent-element (of an ear decad-kalāpa). Then discern the body transparent-element as you did in the eye.
4. The nose transparent-element.....(*ghāna pasāda*)  
It is sensitive to odour. Discern a transparent-element in the nose. Then smell the odour of a group of rūpa-kalāpas nearby. If it impinges on the transparent-element, the transparent-element is a nose

transparent-element (of a nose decad-kalāpa). Discern the body decad-kalāpa as you did in the eye and ear.

5. The tongue transparent-element ..... (*jivhā pasāda*)  
It is sensitive to taste. Discern a transparent-element in the tongue. Then taste the flavour of a group of rūpa-kalāpas nearby. If it impinges on the transparent-element, the transparent-element is a tongue transparent-element (of a tongue decad-kalāpa). Discern the body decad-kalāpa as you did in the eye, ear and nose.

Once you have analysed the two types of transparent-element in each of the five sense-organs, you need also to see that the body transparent-element (in body decad-kalāpas) is found in also the heart, and that also the opaque sex-element (in sex decad-kalāpas) is found in all six sense-organs.

Having done that, you will have analysed all five types of transparent element,<sup>1</sup> and two of the six types of opaque element. Now you need to analyse the remaining opaque elements in each sense-organ.

### Fifty-Four Elements in the Eye

So far, we have discussed three basic types of rūpa-kalāpa:

1. The decad-kalāpas of each of the six sense-organs (the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and heart).
2. The life nonad-kalāpas.
3. The octad-kalāpas.

The eye, ear, nose, tongue, and heart comprise, as we have now seen, a seven types of rūpa-kalāpa, with altogether sixty-three elements.<sup>2</sup> But when analysing the materiality of each sense-

<sup>1</sup> (1) eye-, (2) ear-, (3) nose-, (4) tongue-, (5) body transparent-element; (1) heart-, (2) sex-, (3) life-faculty-, (4) consciousness-produced-, (5) temperature-produced-, (6) nutriment-produced materiality.

<sup>2</sup> Taking the eye as example: (1) eye decad-kalāpas (ten elements); (2) body decad-kalāpas (ten elements); (3) sex decad-kalāpas (ten elements); (4) life nonad-kalāpas (nine elements); (5) consciousness-produced octad-kalāpas (eight elements); (6) temperature-produced octad-kalāpas (eight elements); (7) nutriment-produced octad-kalāpas (eight elements) (10 + 10 + 10 + 9 + 8 + 8 + 8 = 63

*Please see further next page*

organ, the Pāḷi Texts say you should look at only six types of rūpa-kalāpa (not the life nonad-kalāpas): you should concentrate on only fifty-four types of materiality (63 - 9 = 54).<sup>1</sup> The life nonad-kalāpas you discern in another way later. And since one of the six types of rūpa-kalāpa is (as you just saw) the body decad-kalāpa, when you analyse the materiality of the body itself (outside the eye, ear, nose, tongue, and heart), you can analyse only five types of rūpa-kalāpa, only forty-four types of materiality (54 - 10 = 44).

Let us then look at the said fifty-four types of materiality of, for example, the eye. The six types of rūpa-kalāpa in the eye are first the three types of rūpa-kalāpa you just discerned and analysed, altogether thirty types of materiality:

1. The eye decad-kalāpa<sup>2</sup> ..... (*cakkhu dasaka-kalāpa*)  
It is sensitive to colour, is transparent, and produced by kamma.
2. The body decad-kalāpa<sup>2</sup> ..... (*kāya dasaka-kalāpa*)  
It is sensitive to tangible objects (earth-, fire-, and wind-elements), is transparent, and produced by kamma.
3. The sex decad-kalāpa<sup>2</sup> ..... (*bhāva dasaka-kalāpa*)  
It is opaque, and produced by kamma.

And then there are three more types of rūpa-kalāpa, with eight types of materiality each, altogether twenty-four (3 x 8 = 24). They are the three types of nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas, which are opaque:

---

elements) The same equation applies for the ear, nose, tongue, and heart. The body has only (63 - 10) fifty-three elements.

<sup>1</sup> The life nonad-kalāpas are included in only the analysis of what is called the forty-two parts of the body (Vs.xviii. 'Mentality-materiality Definition Explanation' B664/Ñ6). Only then (following the Texts) does the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw instruct the yogi to discern the life nonad-kalāpas. Nevertheless, the yogi can, if he so wishes, include them at this point.

<sup>2</sup> Eye decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements [1-earth 2-water 3- fire 4-wind 5-colour 6-odour 7-flavour 8-nutritive essence] & (9) life-faculty & (10) eye transparent-element. Body decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements & (9) life-faculty & (10) body transparent-element. Sex decad-kalāpa: (8) the basic eight elements & (9) life-faculty & (10) sex-materiality. Nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas: (8) the basic eight elements, which includes nutritive essence as the eighth. Please see also Table 2, p.171

4. The consciousness-produced kalāpa ..... (*cittaja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*)
5. The temperature-produced kalāpa..... (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*)
6. The nutriment-produced kalāpa ..... (*āhāraja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*)

The first three types of rūpa-kalāpa (the decad-kalāpas) are kamma-produced, whereas the last three types of rūpa-kalāpa (octad kalāpas) are either temperature-, consciousness-, or nutriment-produced. As discussed in the beginning of this talk, there are four origins of materiality.<sup>1</sup> Since you have by now discerned the kamma-produced rūpa-kalāpas, we will discuss how to discern which type of octad kalāpa is which.

**How You See Consciousness-Produced Materiality**

As also mentioned in the introduction,<sup>2</sup> every single consciousness that arises dependent on heart-materiality (apart from the re-birth-linking consciousness) produces a great number of consciousness-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*cittaja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*). They are opaque and spread throughout the body.

That is why, if you concentrate on the bhavaṅga, you will see many consciousnesses dependent on heart-materiality producing rūpa-kalāpas. If it is not clear, concentrate again on the bhavaṅga, and again wiggle one of your fingers. You will then see a large number of rūpa-kalāpas being produced because the mind wants to wiggle the finger. And you will see that such rūpa kalāpas can arise anywhere in the body.

---

<sup>1</sup> For a brief discussion of the four origins of materiality (kamma, consciousness, temperature and nutriment) please see above p.135ff

<sup>2</sup> For a brief discussion (with examples) of consciousness-produced materiality, please see above p.138ff

**How You See Temperature– Produced Materiality**

As mentioned in the introduction,<sup>1</sup> the fire-element (*tejo*) is also called ‘temperature’ (*utu*), and is found in all rūpa-kalāpas. The fire-element of all rūpa-kalāpas produces temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*). They themselves contain the fire-element, which produces further temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas. You need to see that this process takes place in all the types of rūpa-kalāpa in each sense-organ.

First discern the fire-element in, for example, an eye-decad-kalāpa. Then see that it produces temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas: that is the first generation. Then discern the fire-element in a rūpa-kalāpa of that first generation of temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas, and see that it too reproduces: that is the second generation. In this way, see that the temperature in the eye decad-kalāpa (which is itself kamma-produced)<sup>2</sup> reproduces through four or five generations.<sup>3</sup>

You need to see that this process takes place for each type of rūpa-kalāpa in each sense-organ, and need yourself to see how many generations of temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas each type of rūpa-kalāpa produces.

**How You See Nutriment-Produced Materiality**

As mentioned above,<sup>4</sup> four parts of the body, namely, undigested food, digested food (faeces), pus, and urine, are nothing but inanimate temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*). And the body’s digestive heat

---

<sup>1</sup> For a brief discussion (with examples) of temperature-produced materiality, please see above p.139ff

<sup>2</sup> For a brief discussion (with examples) of kamma-produced materiality, please see above p.136ff

<sup>3</sup> The fire-element (*tejo*) of a kamma-produced (*kammaja*) rūpa-kalāpa produces temperature-produced (*utuja*) rūpa-kalāpas through five generations:

$$kammaja \rightarrow \boxed{1^{st} \text{ utuja}} \rightarrow \boxed{2^{nd} \text{ utuja}} \rightarrow \boxed{3^{rd} \text{ utuja}} \rightarrow \boxed{4^{th} \text{ utuja}} \rightarrow \boxed{5^{th} \text{ utuja}}$$

<sup>4</sup> For a brief discussion (with examples) of nutriment-produced materiality, please see above p.140ff



(which is most powerful in the alimentary canal) is just the fire-element of life nonad-kalāpas (*jīvita navaka-kalāpa*), which are kamma-produced.<sup>1</sup>

When the nutritive essence of the temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas meets with the digestive heat, further materiality is produced, namely, nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*āhāraja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*). They have themselves nutritive-essence (nutriment-produced nutritive essence (*āhāraja oja*)) which reproduces in the same way through many generations. Nutriment taken in one day reproduces like this for up to a week, during which time it also supports the nutritive essence in kamma-, consciousness-, and temperature-produced rūpa-kalāpas, as well as preceding nutriment-produced rūpa-kalāpas.<sup>2</sup> Divine nutriment reproduces for up to one or two months.

To see these things you meditate when eating. At that time the nutriment-produced rūpa-kalāpas can be seen to spread throughout the body, from the entire alimentary canal: the mouth, the throat, the stomach, and the intestines. First you discern the four elements in the newly eaten food in those places, and see the rūpa-kalāpas there. Continue to look until you see that when the digestive heat (the fire-element of the life nonad-kalāpas) meets the nutritive essence of the newly eaten food (temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas), many generations of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas are produced, which spread throughout the body. See that they are opaque, and contain the eight types of materiality. You can also see these things after you have eaten, in which case you analyse the undigested food in the stomach and intestines.

Next, you need to discern these nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas as they spread out through the body, and reach, for example, the eye. Discern the eight types of materiality in them there, and see that their nutritive essence is nutriment-produced nutritive essence. Then see what happens when it meets

<sup>1</sup> For a brief discussion (with examples) of kamma-produced materiality, please see above p.136 ff

<sup>2</sup> preceding nutriment-produced rūpa-kalāpas please see below p.166.

the kamma-produced nutritive essence of the eye decad-kalāpas: together with the digestive heat, it causes the nutritive essence of the eye decad-kalāpas (*cakkhu dasaka kalāpa*) to produce four or five generations of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad kalāpas.<sup>1</sup> The number of generations produced depends on the strength of both the nutritive essences.

Again, in those four or five generations of rūpa-kalāpas, there is temperature. Try again to discern that at its standing phase it too reproduces through many generations.

Try also to discern that when the nutriment-produced nutritive essence meets the nutritive essence of the eye's kamma-produced body- and sex decad-kalāpas, four or five generations of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad kalāpas are produced. In also these many generations, the temperature reproduces through many generations.

Furthermore, when the nutriment-produced nutritive essence meets the nutritive essence of the eye's consciousness-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpa (*cittaja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*) two or three generations of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas are produced, and in also these generations, the temperature reproduces through many generations.

And again, there are two types of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas: preceding and succeeding.

When the preceding nutriment-produced nutritive-essence meets the succeeding nutritive-essence of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas and the digestive heat, ten to twelve generations of nutriment-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas are produced: the temperature also there reproduces through many generations.

In every case, the nutritive essence of any rūpa-kalāpa (produced by either kamma, consciousness, temperature or nutriment) reproduces only when it is supported by digestive heat.

<sup>1</sup> The nutriment-produced nutritive-essence and digestive heat are the supporting cause, and the nutritive-essence of the eye decad-kalāpas is the generating cause.

Having discerned all the types of nutritive-essence octad kalāpas in the eye, how they reproduce, and how the elements in the rūpa-kalāpas that they produce also reproduce, you will have discerned all fifty-four types of element in the eye. You should then do the same for all the types of element in the remaining five sense-organs: the ear, nose, tongue, body and heart.

### Summary

Today, we have discussed very briefly how to analyse rūpa-kalāpas, but the actual practice involves much more. For example, the so-called detailed method, involves analysing what are called the forty-two parts of the body mentioned in the ‘*Dhātuvibhaṅga Sutta*’ of the *Majjhima Nikāya*: twenty earth-element parts, twelve water-element parts, four aspects of the fire-element, and six aspects of the wind-element.<sup>1</sup> If you wish to know how to develop this, you should approach a proper teacher. By practising systematically, you will gradually become proficient in the discernment of rūpa-kalāpas, which are produced by the four causes: kamma, consciousness, temperature, and nutriment.

With the complete discernment of materiality, you will have finished the first part of the first insight-knowledge, the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*).

We shall summarize the discernment of materiality (*rūpakammaṭṭhāna*):

- To see the rūpa-kalāpas, you must develop concentration up to access concentration by concentrating on the four elements: earth, water, fire, and wind.
- When you can see the rūpa-kalāpas, you must analyse them to see all the elements in single rūpa-kalāpas, for example: in one eye decad-kalāpa, you must see earth, water, fire, wind, colour, odour, flavour, nutritive-essence, life-faculty, and eye transparent-element.

<sup>1</sup> M.III.iv.10 ‘*Dhātuvibhaṅga Sutta*’ ‘Elements Analysis Sutta’

- With the brief method you must discern fifty-four of the elements in one sense-organ, and then do the same for the remaining five sense-organs.
- With the detailed method you must discern all the types of materiality in all forty-two parts of the body.

When you have completed the discernment of materiality (*rūpakammaṭṭhāna*), you will be skilful enough to see all the elements of all six sense-organs at a glance, and see also all forty-two parts of the body at a glance. This was what you were aiming at as you progressed through the meditation, going from element to element, and then from sense-organ to sense-organ: from the easier to the more difficult.

It is like looking at ten banisters that support a hand-rail. We may look at them individually, as one, two, three, four etc. up to ten, and we may look at all ten at once, at a glance. When you are able to see all types of element at a glance, they become your object for Vipassanā: you see all the elements as impermanence, suffering and non-self.<sup>1</sup> But if, even after completing the discernment of materiality, you are still unable to see them all at a glance, you take them individually, one-by-one, do it again and again, and try to see them all at a glance.<sup>2</sup>

This completes our discussion of the discernment of materiality (*rūpakammaṭṭhāna*). In the next talk we shall discuss how to discern mentality (*nāmakammaṭṭhāna*).

<sup>1</sup> For details, please see ‘Knowledge of Comprehension’, p. 256.

<sup>2</sup> There are two ways of discerning: As a group (*kalāpa sammāsana*) and one-by-one (*anupada*). Please see Vs.xx B606 ‘*Maggaṃmagga Nāṇadassana Visuddhi Niddesa*’ (‘Description of Purification by Knowledge and Vision of What Is the Path, and What Is Not the Path’ Ñ704). Please see also e.g. M.III.ii.1 ‘*Anupada Sutta*’ (‘One-by-One Sutta’), mentioned below at Answer 4.6, p.186ff.

Table 1: **The Twenty-Eight Material Elements**

At the end of discernment of materiality, the yogi will have examined the eighteen types of real materiality and nine of the ten types of not-real materiality.<sup>1</sup>

The eighteen types of real materiality are:

<b>Four Great Elements</b> ( <i>mahā bhūta</i> ):	<u>Total</u>
1. Earth-element.....( <i>pathavī-dhātu</i> )	
2. Water-element.....( <i>āpo-dhātu</i> )	
3. Fire-element.....( <i>tejo-dhātu</i> )	
4. Wind-element.....( <i>vāyo-dhātu</i> )	4
<b>Five Types of Transparent Materiality</b> ( <i>pasāda rūpa</i> ):	
1. Eye transparent-element.....( <i>cakkhu pasāda</i> )	
2. Ear transparent-element.....( <i>sota pasāda</i> )	
3. Nose transparent-element.....( <i>ghāna pasāda</i> )	
4. Tongue transparent-element.....( <i>jivhā pasāda</i> )	
5. Body transparent-element.....( <i>kāya pasāda</i> )	5
<b>Four Types of Sense-field Materiality</b> ( <i>gocara rūpa</i> ):	
1. Colour.....( <i>vaṇṇa</i> )	
2. Sound.....( <i>sadda</i> )	
3. Odour.....( <i>gandha</i> )	
4. Flavour.....( <i>rasa</i> )	4
<b>Nutritive essence</b> .....( <i>ojā</i> )	1
<b>Life-faculty</b> .....( <i>jīvitindriya</i> )	1
<b>Heart-materiality</b> .....( <i>hadaya-rūpa</i> )	1
<b>Two Types of Sex-materiality</b> ( <i>bhāva-rūpa</i> ):	
1. Male sex-materiality.....( <i>purisa bhāva-rūpa</i> )	
2. Female sex-materiality.....( <i>itthi bhāva-rūpa</i> )	2
	<u>18</u>

The ten types of not-real materiality are:

1. <b>Space-element</b> .....( <i>ākāsa-dhātu</i> )
2. <b>Bodily Intimation</b> .....( <i>kāyaviññatti</i> )
3. <b>Verbal Intimation</b> .....( <i>vacīviññatti</i> )
4. <b>Lightness of Real Materiality</b> <sup>1</sup> .....( <i>lahutā</i> )
5. <b>Softness of Real Materiality</b> <sup>1</sup> .....( <i>mudutā</i> )
6. <b>Wieldiness of Real Materiality</b> <sup>1</sup> .....( <i>kammaññatā</i> )
7. <b>Growth of Real Materiality</b> .....( <i>upacaya</i> )
8. <b>Continuity of Real Materiality</b> .....( <i>santati</i> )
9. <b>Ageing of Real Materiality</b> .....( <i>jaratā</i> )
10. <b>Impermanence of Real Materiality</b> .....( <i>aniccatā</i> )

<sup>1</sup> These exist only in consciousness-, temperature-, and nutriment-produced materiality.

<sup>1</sup> They yogi will not have examined Growth of Real Materiality because it refers only to the initial generation of materiality in one life. It brings to completion the faculties of the foetus in the womb. This materiality the yogi discerns first when he discerns dependent origination. Please see below p.229ff

**Table 2: The Basic Elements of the Eye<sup>a</sup>**

(3 types of decad-kalāpa [3 x 10 = 30] + nonad kalāpas [9] + 3 types of octad-kalāpa [3 x 8 = 24] = [63 elements])

<i>type</i>	EYE DECAD-KALĀPA <sup>b</sup>	BODY DECAD-KALĀPA	SEX DECAD-KALĀPA
<i>quality</i>	<i>transparent</i>	<i>transparent</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>kamma</i>
<i>property</i>	<i>sensitive to light<sup>c</sup></i>	<i>sensitive to touch (earth, fire, and wind)</i>	<i>determinative of sex</i>
1	earth	earth	earth
2	water	water	water
3	fire	fire	fire
4	wind	wind	wind
5	colour	colour	colour
6	odour	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty	life-faculty	life-faculty
10	eye transparent-element <sup>d</sup>	body transparent-element	sex-element

- a. With due changes, please read the same for the ear, nose and tongue. For the body and heart, please see Tables 3 and 4.
- b. For the ear, nose and tongue, please read **EAR DECAD-KALĀPA**, **NOSE DECAD-KALĀPA** and **TONGUE DECAD-KALĀPA** respectively.
- c. For the ear-, nose- and tongue-door, please read sound, odour, and flavour respectively.
- d. For the ear-, nose- and tongue-door, please read ear-, nose- and tongue transparent-element respectively.

+

<i>type</i>	LIFE NONAD-KALĀPA	OCTAD-KALĀPA		
<i>quality</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>consciousness</i>	<i>temperature</i>	<i>nutriment</i>
1	earth	earth	earth	earth
2	water	water	water	water
3	fire	fire	fire	fire
4	wind	wind	wind	wind
5	colour	colour	colour	colour
6	odour	odour	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty			

The life nonad-, and octad-kalāpas are the same throughout the six sense-organs.

**Table 3: The Basic Elements of the Body**

(2 types of decad-kalāpa [2 x 10 = 20] + nonad kalāpas [9] + 3 types of octad-kalāpa [3 x 8 = 24] = 53 elements)

<i>type</i>	BODY DECAD-KALĀPA	SEX DECAD-KALĀPA
<i>quality</i>	<i>transparent</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>kamma</i>
<i>property</i>	<i>sensitive to touch (earth, fire, and wind)</i>	<i>determinative of sex</i>
1	earth	earth
2	water	water
3	fire	fire
4	wind	wind
5	colour	colour
6	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty	life-faculty
10	body transparent-element	sex-element

These two types of decad-kalāpa are found in all six sense-organs.

+

<i>type</i>	LIFE NONAD-KALĀPA	OCTAD-KALĀPA		
<i>quality</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>consciousness</i>	<i>temperature</i>	<i>nutriment</i>
1	earth	earth	earth	earth
2	water	water	water	water
3	fire	fire	fire	fire
4	wind	wind	wind	wind
5	colour	colour	colour	colour
6	odour	odour	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty			

The life nonad-, and octad-kalāpas are the same throughout the six sense-organs.

**Table 4: The Basic Elements of the Heart**

(3 types of decad-kalāpa [3 x 10 = 30] + nonad kalāpas [9] + 3 types of octad-kalāpa [3 x 8= 24] = 63 elements)

<i>type</i>	HEART DECAD-KALĀPA <sup>a</sup>	BODY DECAD-KALĀPA	SEX DECAD-KALĀPA
<i>quality</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>transparent</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>kamma</i>
<i>property</i>	<i>supporting the mind- and mind-consciousness element</i>	<i>sensitive to touch (earth, fire, and wind)</i>	<i>determinative of sex</i>
1	earth	earth	earth
2	water	water	water
3	fire	fire	fire
4	wind	wind	wind
5	colour	colour	colour
6	odour	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty	life-faculty	life-faculty
10	heart-element	body transparent-element	sex-element

<sup>a</sup> Eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body-consciousnesses arise dependent upon the transparent, tenth element (the door) of respectively the eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body decad-kalāpas, whereas all other consciousnesses (which comprise the mind element and mind-consciousness element) arise dependent upon the opaque, tenth element of heart decad-kalāpas. Please see also p.133ff

+

<i>type</i>	LIFE NONAD-KALĀPA	OCTAD-KALĀPA		
<i>quality</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>	<i>opaque</i>
<i>origin</i>	<i>kamma</i>	<i>consciousness</i>	<i>temperature</i>	<i>nutriment</i>
1	earth	earth	earth	earth
2	water	water	water	water
3	fire	fire	fire	fire
4	wind	wind	wind	wind
5	colour	colour	colour	colour
6	odour	odour	odour	odour
7	flavour	flavour	flavour	flavour
8	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence	nutritive essence
9	life-faculty			

The life-nonad-, and octad kalāpas are the same throughout the six sense-organs.

## Questions and Answers 4

**Question 4.1** Is a bodhisatta, including Arimetteyya Bodhisatta, a worldling (*puthujjana*)? If Arimetteyya Bodhisatta is a worldling like us, then at the time for him to come down to become Metteyya Buddha, what is the difference between the conditions for him to become a Buddha and for us?<sup>1</sup>

**Answer 4.1** The difference is that his pāramī s have matured, as they had for our Sakyamuni Buddha as the bodhisatta Prince Siddhattha. Such bodhisattas will for many lives have been cultivating their pāramī s. There are ten pāramī s:

1. Generosity.....(*dāna*)
2. Virtue.....(*sīla*)
3. Renunciation.....(*nekkhamma*)
4. Wisdom.....(*paññā*)
5. Energy.....(*vīriya*)
6. Patience.....(*khantī*)
7. Truthfulness.....(*sacca*)
8. Resolution.....(*adhiṭṭhāna*)
9. Lovingkindness.....(*mettā*)
10. Equanimity.....(*upekkhā*)

When these ten pāramī s are mature, they push the bodhisatta to renounce the world, even though he is enjoying sensual pleasures. In his last life, a bodhisatta marries and has a son; this is a law of nature. We forget the names of Metteyya Bodhisatta's wife and son. According to the Theravāda Tipi aka, it is his last life, because no arahant, including The Buddha, is reborn after his Parinibbāna. His Parinibbāna is the end of his round of rebirths. He will not be reborn anywhere.<sup>2</sup>

Take our Sakyamuni Bodhisatta: in his last life, before his enlightenment, he was a worldling. How? When he was sixteen

<sup>1</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw's audience was almost only Buddhists of the Mahāyana tradition, for whom the goal is not arahantship but Buddhahood.

<sup>2</sup> Please see also The Buddha's words quoted below p. 222.

years old, he became prince Siddhattha and married princess Yasodharā. They had a son. He enjoyed sensual pleasures for more than thirteen years. He did not have five hundred female deities on his left, and five hundred female deities on his right, but was surrounded by twenty thousand princesses. This is *kāmasukhallikanuyogo*: enjoyment of sensual pleasures, indulgence in sensual pleasures.

After he had renounced those sensual pleasures, he practised self-mortification in the Uruvela forest. After six years of that futile practice, he abandoned it, practised the middle way, and before long attained enlightenment. After His enlightenment, in His first sermon, the '*Dhammacakkapavattana Sutta*', He declared:<sup>1</sup>

*Kāmesu kāmasukhallikanuyogo*

*hīno, gammo, puthujjaniko, anariyo, anatthasamhito.*

(This enjoyment of sensual pleasures is inferior (*hīno*),

the practice of villagers (*gammo*), the practice of worldlings (*puthujjaniko*).

It is the practice of unenlightened ones (*anariyo*).

It is unbeneficial (*anatthasamhito*).

This means that the enjoyment of sensual pleasures is not the practice of enlightened ones. And sensual pleasures are unbeneficial because although they provide mundane benefit such as human happiness, deva happiness and brahma happiness, they do not provide the supramundane benefit that is Nibbāna happiness, which can be enjoyed only by Path- and Fruition Knowledge.

So, in His first sermon The Buddha declared that anyone who enjoys sensual pleasures is a worldling. When he was still a bodhisatta, he too had enjoyed sensual pleasures, that is, with Yasodharā in the palace. At that time, he too was a worldling, because enjoyment of sensual pleasures is the practice of a worldling.

This is not only for our bodhisatta, but for every bodhisatta. There may be many bodhisattas here among the present audience.

<sup>1</sup> S.V.XII.ii.1 'Dhamma-Wheel Rolling Sutta'

You should consider this carefully: are the bodhisattas here worldlings (*puṭhujjana*) or noble ones (*ariya*)? We think you may know the answer.

**Question 4.2** After finishing the meditation course, can a yogi attain Path (*magga ñāṇa*) and Fruition Knowledges (*phala ñāṇa*) and? If not, why not?

**Answer 4.2** Maybe he can; it depends on his *pāramī* s. Take, for example, the case of Bāhiya Dāruciriya.<sup>1</sup> He practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*sañkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*) in the time of Kassapa Buddha’s dispensation. He had about twenty thousand years of practice, but did not attain any Path and Fruition Knowledges, because he had received a definite prophecy from Padumuttara Buddha. It was that he was to be the *hippābhiñña*, the quickest to attain arahantship in Sakyamuni’s dispensation. Hence, his *pāramī* s would mature only then.<sup>2</sup> In the same way, other disciples (*sāvaka*), who attained the Four Analytical Knowledges (*paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*) in this Sakyamuni Buddha’s dispensation, had also practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations in the dispensation of previous Buddhas; this is a law of nature. The four analytical knowledges they attained are:

1. The analytical knowledge of meaning.....(*attha paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*)  
The insight-knowledge of effect, which is the Noble Truth of Suffering.
2. The analytical knowledge of dhamma.....(*dhamma paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*)  
The insight-knowledge of cause, which is the Noble Truth of the Cause for Suffering.
3. The analytical knowledge of enunciation of language.....(*nirutti paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*)  
Knowledge of grammar, especially Pāḷi grammar.

<sup>1</sup> Apadāna.II.liv.6 (&A.) ‘Bāhiyatthera Apadāna’ (Bāhiyatthera’s Heroic Deed’)

<sup>2</sup> AA.I.XIV.iii ‘Bāhiya Dārucīriyattheravattu’ B216 (The Case of Bāhiya Dārucīriyatthera’)

4. The analytical knowledge of the kinds of knowledge.....(*paṭibhāna paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*)  
The insight-knowledge that knows the above three analytical knowledges.

There are five causes for attaining these four analytical knowledges:<sup>1</sup>

1. Achievement.....(*adhigama*)  
The attainment of the Arahant Path and Fruition, or any other Path and Fruition.
2. Mastery of scriptures.....(*pariyatti*)  
Learning the Dhamma scriptures.
3. Hearing.....(*savana*)  
Listening to Dhamma explanations attentively and respectfully.
4. Inquiry.....(*paripuccha*)  
Discussing the difficult passages and explanations in the texts and commentaries.
5. Prior effort.....(*pubbayoga*)  
The practice of Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*sañkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*) during the dispensations of former Buddhas.

If those who practise in this dispensation do not attain Nibbāna, it is because their *pāramī* s have not yet matured. The reason may also be that they have received a definite prophecy from a previous Buddha, or have made an aspiration to escape from the round of rebirths (*samsāra*) in a future dispensation such as Arimetteyya Buddha’s. For example, there were two thousand bhikkhunī s, all ordinary arahants, who attained Parinibbāna on the same day as Yasodharā. They had, during Dīpaṅkara Buddha’s time, made an aspiration to escape from the round of rebirths (*samsāra*) in the dispensation of Sakyamuni Buddha, which would be four incalculables and one hundred thousand aeons later. To become an ordinary arahant does not require that one cultivate one’s *pāramī* s for

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xiv ‘Paññāpabhedakathā’ B429 (‘How Many Kinds of Understanding Are There? [Ñ’s title]’ Ñ28)

that long, but these two thousand bhikkhunis had remained in the round of rebirths for that long period because of their aspiration only, not because of a definite prophecy.

**Question 4.3** A yogi who has finished the meditation course, but not yet attained the Path Knowledge (*maggāñāṇa*) and Fruition Knowledge (*phalañāṇa*), if his concentration drops, will his insight-knowledge also drop? Can he be reborn in a woeful state (*apāya*)?

**Answer 4.3** Maybe his insight-knowledge will also drop, but it is very rare. If he does not practise for a long time, his Samatha-Vipassanā may slowly weaken. The force of kamma, however, remains as latent energy.

There is an example of this in the Pāḷi Texts.<sup>1</sup> It takes place in Sri Lanka. Some thirty bhikkhus and novices (*sāmaṇeras*) had paid homage at the Great Shrine at Kalyāṇī, and as they were coming down the forest track on to the main road, they saw a man coming in the opposite direction. He had been working in a charcoal burner's field beside the road; his body was smeared with ashes, and the single yellow loin-cloth he wore hitched up was also smeared with ashes, so that he seemed like a charcoal stump. Having done his day's work, he had picked up a bundle of half-burnt wood and was coming along a by-path with his hair hanging down his back; and he stood facing the bhikkhus.

The novices, when they saw him, joked with each other, saying, 'That is your father, that is your grandfather, your uncle!' and laughed as they went along. Then they asked 'What is your name, lay follower?'. On being asked his name, the man was remorseful and, putting down his bundle of wood and arranging his clothes, he did obeisance to the Mahāthera in order to detain him for a while.

The bhikkhus waited, but the novices came up and laughed even in front of the Mahāthera. The man said to the Mahāthera: 'Bhante, you laugh on seeing me. You think you fulfill the bhik-

<sup>1</sup> VbhA.viii.1 'Suttantabhājanīyavaṇṇanā' ('By Sutta Comment')

khu's life just on account of your robes. But you have not attained so much as mental one-pointedness.

I was once a recluse like you, and I was mighty with the psychic powers and powerful in this dispensation. I treated the air like the earth and the earth like the air; I treated the far like the near and the near like the far. I penetrated in a moment the one hundred thousand worlds systems. You see my hands now? Now they are like the hands of a monkey.

Then pointing to a tree, he said further, 'Sitting under that tree I would touch with these very hands the moon and the sun. I would sit with the moon and the sun as the ground on which to rub these very feet. Such were my psychic powers, but they vanished through negligence. Do not be negligent. Through negligence people reach ruin such as this. But those who live strenuously make an end of birth, old age and death. Therefore, take me as an example, and do not neglect practising Samatha-Vipassanā wholesome dhammas. Be strenuous, Venerable Sirs.'

Thus, he admonished and warned them. Impelled by the urgency of his words, standing in that place, thirty Bhikkhus practised Samatha-Vipassana and attained Arahantship. So Samatha-Vipassana may drop temporarily because of negligence (*pamāda*), but the force of kamma remains.

There are four types of person who attain Nibbāna. The first type is a Paccekabuddha, which we shall not discuss. The remaining three types are: (1) a bodhisatta, (2) a chief disciple (*agga sāvaka*) or great disciple (*mahā sāvaka*), and (3) an ordinary disciple (*pakati sāvaka*).

1. Our **bodhisatta** had the eight attainments (*samāpatti*) and five mundane psychic powers during Dīpaṅkara Buddha's time. He had in past lives also practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhāruppekkhā ñāṇa*). Had he really wanted to attain Nibbāna, he could have attained it quickly, by listening to a short stanza by Dīpaṅkara Buddha about the Four Noble Truths. But he did not want only to attain Nibbāna, so he made an aspiration to be a Buddha in the future, after which he received a definite



prophecy from Dī paṅkara Buddha.

During the four incalculables (*asaṅkhyeyya*) and one hundred thousand aeons (*kappa*) which followed, that is from Dī paṅkara Buddha's time to Kassapa Buddha's time, our bodhisatta was ordained as a bhikkhu in nine lives, each time under the guidance of a Buddha. In each life as a bhikkhu, our bodhisatta's training included seven practices:<sup>1</sup>

1. Study of the Three Piṭ akas by recitation<sup>2</sup> ..... (*tipiṭakam Buddhavacanam uggamhitvā*)
2. Purification in the four types of morality<sup>3</sup> ..... (*catu pārisuddhi sīle supatīṭhāya*)
3. The thirteen ascetic practices ..... (*terasa dhutaṅgāni samādāya*)
4. Always the forest-dweller ascetic practice<sup>4</sup> ..... (*araññam pavisitvā*)
5. The eight attainments ..... (*aṭṭha samāpattiyo*)
6. The five mundane psychic powers ..... (*pañca abhīññā*)
7. Vipassanā meditation up to Knowledge of Conformity<sup>5</sup> ..... (*vipassanam vadḍhatvā yāva anulomañānam*)

These pāramī s must be fulfilled for the attainment of Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbaññuta ñāṇa*). But before his pāramī s had matured, that is, from the time of his definite prophecy till his birth as Prince Siddhattha, our bodhisatta was sometimes reborn in the animal kingdom because of previous unwhole-

<sup>1</sup> MA.II.iv.1 'Ghaṭṭikāra Sutta' ('Ghaṭṭikāra Sutta'). This text lists only 1, 2, 3 and 4, with a fifth being: *gata-paccāgata-vattam pūrayamānā samanadhammam karontā* (practising the 'going & going-back duty recluse practice'), which refers to full-time meditation (Samatha and Vipassanā), also when going out for alms, and going back to the dwelling from alms. From sources that explain the Bodhisatta's practice, this fifth one may be understood specifically to be 5, 6 & 7. In other contexts, however, *samaṇa dhamma* (recluse practices) refers to all these seven practices.

<sup>2</sup> This is *gantha dhura* (book burden/obligation), which is also called *pariyatti* (learning), and 2-7 are *Vipassanā dhura* (Insight burden/obligation), which is also called *paṭipatti* (practice). Please see above, p.xxi

<sup>3</sup> For the four types of purification of morality, please see above Answer 2.3, p.92

<sup>4</sup> Although the forest-dweller practice is included in the thirteen ascetic practices, the Commentary mentions it separately for reasons of emphasis.

<sup>5</sup> This is the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*)

some kamma. The lives as a bhikkhu, and the lives as an animal, however, were very far apart. This is the nature of a bodhisatta.

2. Some chief disciples will also have received a definite prophecy; for example, the Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna had received one from Anomadassī Buddha. Also great disciples will sometimes have received a definite prophecy; the Venerables Kassapa and Ānanda had received one from Padumuttara Buddha. In our Buddha's time, all these disciples became arahants possessed of the Four Analytical Knowledges.<sup>1</sup> This type of arahants will also have been skilful in Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*), in times of many previous Buddhas; this is a law of nature. Even so, from the time of their definite prophecy till the time of our Buddha, some of them were sometimes reborn in one of the four woeful states, because of unwholesome kamma, sometimes together with our bodhisatta. This is the nature of a chief or great disciple.<sup>2</sup>
3. As for ordinary disciples, if they have practised Samatha-Vipassanā thoroughly up to the Knowledge of Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*) or the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away (*udayabbaya ñāṇa*), or the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*), they will not be reborn in one of the four woeful realms (*apāya*) after death, even though they may not have attained Path and Fruition in this life. This is explained in the *Visuddhi Magga* as:

...*laddhassāso laddhapatiṭṭho niyatagatiko cūlasotāpanno nāma hoti*  
 (...he has found relief in the Buddha's Dispensation,  
 he has found a secure place, he has a sure, good destination,  
 so he is called a Lesser Stream-Enterer (*cūla sotāpanna*),)

<sup>1</sup> For the Four Analytical Knowledges, please see above Answer 4.2, p.177

<sup>2</sup> Vs.xiv 'Paññāpabhedakathā' B429 ('How Many Kinds of Understanding Are There? [Ñ's title] Ñ28)

Lesser Stream-Enterers may thus be reborn in the deva realm, and then there are four things that can happen. In the ‘*Sotānugata Sutta*’, The Buddha taught which four:<sup>1</sup>

1. If, as soon as he attains rebirth in the deva realm, the Lesser Stream-Enterer reflects on the Dhamma, it will be clear to his insight-knowledge, and he can attain Nibbāna quickly.
2. If he does not attain Nibbāna by reflecting on the Dhamma with insight-knowledge, he can attain Nibbāna by listening to a bhikkhu who has psychic powers, and has come to the deva realm to teach the Dhamma.
3. If he does not get the opportunity to listen to the Dhamma from a bhikkhu, he may get the opportunity to listen to it from Dhamma-teaching devas (*Dhamma-kathika deva*), like Sanaḥkumāra Brahmā, etc., and attain Nibbāna by listening to them.
4. If he does not get the chance to listen to the Dhamma from Dhamma-teaching devas, he may get the chance to meet friends who were fellow yogis in his past human life in a dispensation. Those fellow yogis may say, for example: ‘Oh friend, please remember this and that Dhamma which we practised in the human world.’ He may then remember the Dhamma, and if he practises Vipassanā, he can attain Nibbāna very quickly.

An example of a Lesser Stream-Enterer who was reborn in the deva realm, and who attained Nibbāna very quickly afterwards, is the Venerable Samaṇa-devaputta. He was a bhikkhu who practised Samatha-Vipassanā earnestly. He died while practising, and was reborn in the deva realm. He did not know he had died, and continued meditating in his mansion in the deva realm. When the female devas in his mansion saw him, they realized he must have been a bhikkhu in his previous life, so they put a mirror in front of him and made a noise. He opened his eyes, and saw his image

<sup>1</sup> A.IV.v.1 ‘*Sotānugata Sutta*’ (‘One Who Has Heard Sutta’), mentioned also p.124, and p. 248

in the mirror. He was very disappointed, because he did not want to be a deva; he wanted only Nibbāna.

So immediately he went down to The Buddha to listen to the Dhamma. The Buddha was teaching Dhamma about the Four Noble Truths. After listening to the Dhamma, Samaṇa-devaputta attained the Stream-Entry Path Knowledge (*sotāpatti maggañāṇa*) and Stream-Entry Fruition Knowledge (*sotāpatti phalañāṇa*).<sup>1</sup>

Thus, when an ordinary disciple practises Samatha and Vipassanā very hard, and even attains the Knowledge of Cause and Condition, the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, or the Knowledge of Equanimity towards Formations, although he may not attain a path and fruition in this life, the practice he has done does mean that he will very likely attain them in one of his future lives.

At the time of death, a yogi may not have strong Samatha or Vipassanā, but because of the powerful Samatha-Vipassanā meditation wholesome kamma, a good nimitta appears at his mind-door. Death may take place with that good nimitta as object, and because of this wholesome kamma, he will definitely reach a good place, and can in there attain Nibbāna.

If, however, he practises Vipassanā up to the moments of the near-death impulsion (*maraṇāsanna javana*), he will be of the first type of person mentioned in the ‘*Sotānugata Sutta*’, which we just discussed.

**Question 4.4** Can a yogi who has finished the course, but not yet attained Nibbāna, attain the Knowledge Standing on Phenomena (*dhammatṭhiti ñāṇa*)? If so, can it regress?

**Answer 4.4** Yes, he can attain that knowledge.

***Pubbe kho Susīma dhammatṭhitiñāṇam pacchā nibbāne ñāṇam.***  
(The Knowledge Standing on Phenomena (*dhammatṭhiti ñāṇa*) comes first, the Path Knowledge that takes Nibbāna as object comes next.).

<sup>1</sup> S.II.v.6 ‘*Accharā Sutta*’ (‘Deva Sutta’) & SA.ibid.

This was The Buddha's explanation to Susī ma.<sup>1</sup> Susī ma was a wanderer (*paribbājaka*), who ordained to 'steal' the Dhamma. But The Buddha saw that he would attain Nibbāna within a few days, so He accepted him.

Susī ma had heard that many arahants went to The Buddha and reported that they had attained arahantship. So Susī ma asked them whether they had the eight attainments and five psychic powers. They answered 'No'. 'If you do not have the eight attainments and five psychic powers, how did you attain arahantship?' Then they answered '*Paññāvimuttā kho mayamānvuso Susī ma*': 'Oh, friend Susī ma, we are free from defilements, and attained arahantship by the pure-Vipassanā vehicle (*suddha-vipassanā yānika*).' He did not understand, so he asked The Buddha the same question. The Buddha said:

*Pubbe kho Susīma dhammatthitiññāṇam pacchā Nibbāne ñāṇam.*

(The Knowledge Standing on Phenomena comes first;  
the Path Knowledge that takes Nibbāna as object comes next.)

What does this mean? The Path Knowledge is not the result of the eight attainments and five psychic powers, it is the result of insight-knowledges. So the Path Knowledge can occur only after the insight-knowledges have occurred. In the '*Susī ma Sutta*', all insight-knowledges are referred to as the Knowledge Standing on Phenomena. The Knowledge Standing on Phenomena is the insight-knowledge of the impermanent, suffering and non-self nature of all formations, conditioned things (*saṅkhāra dhamma*), that is, mentality, materiality, and their causes. This is how the Knowledge Standing on Phenomena comes first, and the Path Knowledge that takes Nibbāna as object comes next.

Afterwards, The Buddha gave a Teaching on the Three Rounds<sup>2</sup> (*teparivatta Dhamma-desanā*), which is like the '*Anattalakkhaṇa Sutta*'

<sup>1</sup> S.II.I.vii.10 '*Susīma Sutta*' ('Susīma Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> Here, the three rounds refer to the three characteristics: impermanence, suffering, and non-self.

'Non-self Characteristic Sutta'.<sup>1</sup> When the teaching was finished, Susī ma attained arahantship, even though he did not have the eight attainments or five psychic powers. He too became a pure-Vipassanā-vehicle person. At that time he understood clearly the meaning of The Buddha's discourse.

If a yogi attains the Knowledge Standing on Phenomena, then although he does not attain Nibbāna in this life, his insight-knowledge will not decrease. His latent Vipassanā kammic force is still powerful. If he is an ordinary disciple, he may attain Nibbāna in his next life.

**Question 4.5** Can one attain supramundane states with only access concentration?<sup>2</sup>

**Answer 4.5** Yes, one can. At access concentration there is also bright, brilliant and radiant light. With that light, one can discern the rūpa-kalāpas, ultimate materiality, ultimate mentality, and their causes. One can then continue with Vipassanā meditation stage by stage.

**Question 4.6** Can one with only momentary concentration (*khaṇika samādhi*), practise mindfulness of feeling (*vedānānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna*) to attain supramundane states?<sup>2</sup>

**Answer 4.6** Here we need to define momentary concentration. What is momentary concentration? There are two types of momentary concentration:

1. Momentary concentration in Samatha meditation
2. Momentary concentration in Vipassanā meditation

In Samatha meditation there are three types of concentration:

1. Momentary concentration (a type of preparatory concentration)
2. Access concentration
3. Absorption concentration

<sup>1</sup> S.III.II.i.7, quoted 'Introduction' p.32

<sup>2</sup> For a discussion of the different types of concentration, please see also 115

The momentary concentration in Samatha refers in particular to the concentration that takes a *paṭibhāga-nimitta* as object, like the *ānāpānā paṭibhāga-nimitta*. It is the concentration before access concentration. This is for a Samatha vehicle person (*samatha yānika*).

There is another type of momentary concentration for a pure-Vipassanā vehicle yogi (*suddha-vipassanā yānika*). A pure-Vipassanā-vehicle yogi must usually begin with four-elements meditation in order to attain access concentration or momentary concentration, and see the *rūpa-kalāpas*, and the four elements in one *kalāpa*. The *Visuddhi Magga* says that is access concentration. But the sub-commentary to the *Visuddhi Magga* says it is only a metaphor, not real access concentration, because real access concentration is close to *jhāna* concentration.

But *jhāna* cannot be attained with four-elements meditation. When one is able to see the four elements in individual *rūpa-kalāpas* there is deep concentration. Even so, one cannot attain *jhāna* using them as object. There are two reasons for this:

1. To see the four elements in individual *rūpa-kalāpas* is to see ultimate materiality (*paramattha rūpa*), and to see ultimate materiality is deep and profound. One cannot attain *jhāna* with ultimate reality as object.
2. One cannot concentrate deeply on the four elements in individual *rūpa-kalāpas* because the *rūpa-kalāpas* pass away as soon as they arise. That means the object is always changing. One cannot attain *jhāna* with an object that is always changing.

Thus, since four-elements meditation does not produce *jhāna*, we may understand that the access concentration which takes the four elements in individual *rūpa kalāpas* as object is not real access concentration, but momentary concentration.

Then let us discuss the momentary concentration in Vipassanā. It is discussed in the section on *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) of the *Visuddhi Magga*.<sup>1</sup>

Here you should know that Vipassanā momentary concentration is seeing thoroughly the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes. Without seeing ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes, how can there be Vipassanā momentary concentration? It is impossible.

When a Samatha-vehicle yogi wants to practise Vipassanā, who has attained *ānāpānā jhāna* enters the first *jhāna*. This is Samatha. He emerges from it, and discerns the thirty-four mental formations of the first *jhāna*, and then impermanence, suffering or non-self by seeing the arising and passing-away nature of those *jhāna* formations (*jhāna dhamma*). He does the same with the second *jhāna*, etc.

At the time of discerning there is still concentration. He concentrates on the impermanent, suffering, or non-self nature of those *jhāna* formations. His concentration is at that time deep and profound, and does not go to other objects. This is momentary concentration, because the object is momentary; as soon as it arises, it passes away.

In the same way, when a yogi is practising Vipassanā to see either the impermanent, suffering, or non-self nature of ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes, then usually his mind does not leave the object. His mind has sunk into one of the characteristics. This is also called momentary concentration.

If a yogi can see ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes thoroughly and clearly, without having done any Samatha meditation, it is of course not necessary for him to practise Samatha meditation. If not, he should cultivate one of the Samatha meditation subjects, and develop sufficient concentration so as to be able to see ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes.

<sup>1</sup> Vs.viii 'Ānāpānasati Kathā' B235 ('Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation' Ñ232)

But in the ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ of the ‘*Khandha Saṃyutta*’ The Buddha says:<sup>1</sup>

*Samādhim bhikkhave bhāvētha,  
samāhito bhikkhave bhikkhu yathābhūtam pajānāti.*  
(Develop concentration, bhikkhus,  
Having developed concentration, bhikkhus,  
a bhikkhu understands dhammas as they really are (*yathābhūtam pajānāti*.)

So, you should cultivate concentration to know the five aggregates, their causes and cessation; you should cultivate concentration to know their nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self. Their cessation you will be able to see at the time of the arahant path and Parinibbāna.

Also in the ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ of the *Sacca Saṃyutta*, The Buddha says one should cultivate concentration, to know the Four Noble Truths.<sup>2</sup>

Now, if a yogi wants to discern only feeling, he should be aware of the following facts explained by The Buddha:

*Sabbam, bhikkhave,  
anabhijānam aparijānam avirājayam appajham abhabbo dukkhakkhayāya ...  
Sabbāṅca kho, bhikkhave,  
abhijānam parijānam virājayam pajham bhabbo dukkhakkhayāya.*  
(Bhikkhus,  
if a bhikkhu does not know all mentality, materiality, and their causes  
with the three types of full-understanding (*pariññā*),  
he cannot attain Nibbāna.

Only those, bhikkhus,  
who know them with the three types of full understanding  
can attain Nibbāna.)

<sup>1</sup> ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ (‘Concentration Sutta’) of the ‘*Khandha Saṃyutta*’ (‘Section on the Aggregates’) S.III.I, quoted above, p.29.

<sup>2</sup> ‘*Samādhi Sutta*’ (‘Concentration Sutta’) of the ‘*Sacca Saṃyutta*’ (‘Section on the Truths’) S.V.XII quoted above, p.14.

This is from the ‘*Aparijānana Sutta*’ in the ‘*Saḷāyatana Vagga*’ of the *Saṃyutta Nikāya*.<sup>1</sup>

In the same way, The Buddha says in the ‘*Kūṭāgāra Sutta*’ of the ‘*Sacca Vagga*’ that, without knowing the Four Noble Truths with insight-knowledge and Path Knowledge, one cannot reach the end of the round of rebirths (*saṃsāra*).<sup>2</sup> So if a yogi wants to attain Nibbāna, he must try to know all mentality, materiality, and their causes with the three types of full understanding.

What are the three types of full understanding? They are:

1. The Full Understanding as the Known .....(*ñāta pariññā*)  
This is the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*), and Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*). They are the insight-knowledges that know all ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes.
2. The Full Understanding as Investigation .....(*tīraṇa pariññā*)  
This is the Knowledge of Comprehension (*sammasana ñāṇa*), and Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away (*udayabbaya ñāṇa*). These two insight-knowledges comprehend clearly the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes.
3. The Full Understanding as Abandoning.....(*pahāna pariññā*)  
This is the higher insight-knowledges from the Knowledge of Dissolution (*bhāṅga ñāṇa*) to the Path Knowledge (*magga ñāṇa*).

The teaching in those two suttas, the ‘*Aparijānana Sutta*’ and ‘*Kūṭāgāra Sutta*’, is very important. So, if a yogi wants to practise Vipassanā beginning with mindfulness of feeling, he should remember the following:

- He must have discerned ultimate materiality.
- Discerning feeling alone is not enough: he must also discern the mental formations associated with feeling in the six-door cognitive-processes.

<sup>1</sup> S.IV.I.iii.4 ‘*Paṭhama-aparijānana Sutta*’ (‘First Non-Understanding Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> S.V.XII.v.4 ‘*Pinnacled House Sutta*’, quoted ‘Introduction’ p.2

Nevertheless, it is in fact possible to become enlightened by discerning only one dhamma, but that is only so long as all the other dhammas have been discerned before: either in this life or in a past life. Take for, example, the Venerable Sāriputta. When he heard the Venerable Assaji utter one sentence of Dhamma, he became a stream-enterer. Then he became a bhikkhu and practised meditation. In the ‘*Anupada Sutta*’<sup>1</sup> The Buddha describes how the Venerable Sāriputta was very skilled in discerning the individual mental formations of his jhāna attainments.<sup>2</sup> But even though the Venerable Sāriputta meditated hard, he did not attain arahantship.

Then one day, The Buddha taught the ‘*Dīghanakha Sutta*’ to the Venerable Sāriputta’s nephew, explaining one dhamma: feeling (*vedanā*).<sup>3</sup> At this time, the Venerable Sāriputta was standing behind The Buddha fanning Him, and listening to the teaching. At the end of the teaching, the Venerable Sāriputta attained arahantship, and his nephew attained stream-entry. He attained arahantship by reflecting on only one dhamma, but that was because he had meditated on all five aggregates beforehand.<sup>4</sup>

We shall repeat: The Buddha said that if a bhikkhu does not know all mentality-materiality and their causes with the three types of full-understanding, he cannot attain Nibbāna. It is, therefore, not enough if a yogi tries to discern feeling alone, such as unpleasant feeling, and does not discern ultimate mentality-materiality thoroughly. Here ‘it is not enough’ means he will not attain Nibbāna.

<sup>1</sup> M.III.ii.1 ‘*Anupada Sutta*’ (‘One-by-one Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> For details about how to discern the individual mental formations of one’s jhāna attainments, please see ‘How You Discern Jhāna Cognitive-Processes’, p.201

<sup>3</sup> M.II.iii.4 ‘*Dīghanakha Sutta*’ (‘Dīghanakha Sutta’)

<sup>4</sup> For details regarding the past practice of those who attain, please see Answer 4.3, p.180, and Answer 5.2, p.219

**Question 4.7** The Buddha was a great arahant. What was the difference between Him, and disciples like the Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmogallāna who were also arahants?

**Answer 4.7** A Buddha’s Arahant Path is always associated with Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbaññuta ñāṇa*), but the Arahant Path of disciples is not. The Arahant Path of disciples comprises the enlightenment (*bodhi*) of the three types of disciples:

1. Chief Disciple Enlightenment ..... (*aggasāvaka bodhi*)
2. Great Disciple Enlightenment ..... (*mahāsāvaka bodhi*)
3. Ordinary Disciple Enlightenment ..... (*pakatisāvaka bodhi*)

The Arahant Path of disciples is sometimes associated with the Four Analytical Knowledges (*paṭisambhidā ñāṇa*);<sup>1</sup> sometimes with the Six Direct Knowledges (*abhiññā*);<sup>2</sup> sometimes with the three Direct Knowledges (*tevijja*);<sup>3</sup> or is sometimes a pure Arahant Path: either Both Ways Liberated (*ubato bhāga vimutta*),<sup>4</sup> or Wisdom Liberated (*paññā vimutta*).<sup>5</sup> But it is never associated with Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbaññuta ñāṇa*). Thus, for example, the Venerables Sāriputta’s and Mahāmogallāna’s Arahant Paths were not associated with Omniscient Knowledge. A Buddha’s Arahant Path, on the other hand, is not only associated with Omniscient Knowledge, but also all the other knowledges, as well as all special qualities of a Buddha.

Another thing is that Buddhas have, because of their matured pāramī s, attained the Path, Fruition, and Omniscient Knowledges by themselves, without a teacher. But a disciple can only attain

<sup>1</sup> For the Four Analytical Knowledges, please see Answer 4.2, p.177

<sup>2</sup> (1) various kinds of supernormal power (*iddhi-vidhā*), (2) divine ear (*dibba sota*), (3) knowledge of the minds of others (*parassa ceto-pariyāñāṇa*), (4) divine eye (*dibba cakkhu*), (5) recollection of past lives (*pubbe nivāsānussati*), (6) destruction of the taints (*āsavakkhaya*).

<sup>3</sup> (4), (5), (6) of the Direct Knowledges just mentioned.

<sup>4</sup> **Both Ways Liberated** (*ubato bhāga vimutta*): this refers to those who escape first from the material sphere with the attainment of the immaterial jhānas, and second, escape also from the immaterial sphere with the attainment of arahantship.

<sup>5</sup> **Wisdom Liberated** (*paññā vimutta*): this refers to pure-insight arahants.

the Path and Fruition Knowledges by listening to Dhamma related to the Four Noble Truths from a Buddha, or a Buddha's disciple. They cannot practise by themselves, without a teacher. These are the differences.

**Question 4.8** What is the 'intermediate life' (*antara bhava*)?

**Answer 4.8** According to the Theravāda Piṭ aka there is no such thing as an intermediate life (*antara bhava*). Between a death consciousness (*cuti citta*) and its subsequent rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*), there are no consciousness moments, or anything resembling an intermediate life. If a person were to reach the deva world after death, then between his death-consciousness and the deva's rebirth-linking consciousness, there would be no consciousness moment or anything like an intermediate life. As soon as death takes place, the deva rebirth-linking consciousness arises. In the same way, if a person were to reach hell after death, then between his death-consciousness and the rebirth-linking consciousness in hell, there would be no such thing as an intermediate life. He would go to hell directly after death.

The idea of an intermediate life usually arises when someone dies, inhabits the peta world for a short time, and is then reborn as a human being again. He may think his peta life was something like an intermediate life, even though it was, in fact, nothing like an intermediate life. What really happened is this: after the human death-consciousness had passed, the peta rebirth-linking consciousness arose; after the peta death-consciousness had passed, a human rebirth-linking consciousness arose again. The person suffered in the peta world because of his unwholesome kamma. The kammic force of that unwholesome kamma finished after only a short time, and he took a human rebirth-linking consciousness again, because of wholesome kamma that had matured.

The short life in the peta world is mistaken for an intermediate life by those who cannot see the reality of the round of rebirths or dependent-origination. If they could discern dependent-origination with insight-knowledge, then this misbelief would disappear. So we should like to suggest that you discern dependent-

origination with your own insight-knowledge. Then the question about an intermediate life will disappear from your mind.

**Question 4.9** Are the methods for *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) and four-elements meditation the same? Why must we practise four-elements meditation only after *ānāpānasati*?

**Answer 4.9** No, the methods are not the same.

In Vipassanā you must discern materiality and mentality, and their causes, which is why there are two types of meditation: discernment of materiality and discernment of mentality.

When The Buddha taught discernment of materiality, he always taught four-elements meditation, either in brief or in detail. So if you want to discern materiality, you must practise according to The Buddha's instructions. It is better to practise four-elements meditation with deep concentration like the fourth *ānāpānā jhāna*, because it helps us see ultimate materiality, ultimate mentality, and their causes clearly.

But if you do not want to practise Samatha meditation like *ānāpānasati*, you can practise the four-elements meditation directly: no problem. We discussed this in a previous question.

**Question 4.10** Could the Sayadaw please explain the light experienced in meditation scientifically?

**Answer 4.10** What is the light seen in meditation? Every consciousness (*citta*), except rebirth-linking consciousnesses, which arises dependent upon the heart-base (*hadaya-vatthu*) produces consciousness-produced materiality (*cittaja rūpa*), also called rūpa-kalāpas. One consciousness produces many consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas. Of the heart-base-dependent consciousnesses, Samatha meditation-consciousnesses (*samatha bhāvanā-citta*) and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses (*vipassanā bhāvanā-citta*) are very strong and powerful; they produce very many rūpa-kalāpas. When we analyse those rūpa-kalāpas, we see the eight types of materiality. They are: the earth-, water-, fire-, and wind-elements, colour, odour, flavour, and nutritive essence. The materiality of colour is bright. The more powerful the Samatha and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses are, the brighter is the colour. Since, rūpa-

kalāpās arise simultaneously as well as successively, the colour of one rūpa-kalāpa and the colour of another rūpa-kalāpa arise closely together like in an electric bulb: that is why light appears.

Again, in each rūpa-kalāpa produced by Samatha and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses, there is the fire-element, which also produces many new rūpa-kalāpas. They are called temperature-produced materiality, because they are produced by the fire-element, which is temperature (*utu*). This occurs externally as well as internally. When we analyse these rūpa-kalāpas we see the same eight types of materiality: the earth-, water-, fire-, and wind-elements, colour, odour, flavour, and nutritive essence. Colour is again one of them. Because of the power of the Samatha and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses, that colour too is bright. So the brightness of one colour, and the brightness of another colour arise closely together, like in an electric bulb.

The light of consciousness-produced materiality and temperature-produced materiality appear simultaneously. Consciousness-produced colour-materiality arises internally only, but temperature-produced colour-materiality arises both internally and externally and spreads in all directions up to the whole world system or universe (*cakkavāla*) or farther, depending on the power of the Samatha and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses. A Buddha's Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality produces light in up to ten thousand world systems. The Venerable Anuruddha's divine-eye consciousness (*dibba-cakkhu citta*) produced light in up to one thousand world systems. Other disciples' insight-knowledge produces light going up to one league (*yojana*), two leagues, etc., in every direction depending on the power of their Samatha and Vipassanā meditation-consciousnesses.

Usually many yogis realize that this light is a group of rūpa-kalāpas, when they have reached the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away. While practising Samatha meditation, they do not yet understand that it is a group of rūpa-kalāpas, because the rūpa-kalāpas are very subtle. It is not easy to understand, and see the rūpa-kalāpas when practising only Samatha meditation. If you want to know with certainty, you should try to acquire the

Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away. That is the most scientific way to understand the light experienced in meditation.

**Question 4.11** Can those who have discerned the thirty-two parts of the body see them in someone else, with their eyes open?

**Answer 4.11** It depends. Beginners can with their eyes open see only the external parts. They can see the internal parts only with their insight-knowledge eyes. If you want to know this scientifically, please try to see it yourself with your insight-knowledge.

A Mahāthera, however, may because of previous practice, be able to see another's skeleton with his eyes open, like the Venerable Mahā Tissa, who was an expert in skeleton meditation. He always practised internal skeleton meditation as repulsiveness up to the first jhāna, and then Vipassanā. He discerned mentality-materiality, their causes, and nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self. This was his usual practice.

One day he went for alms (*piṇ apāta*), from Anuradhapura to Mahāgāma village. On the way, he met a woman who tried to attract his attention with loud laughter. When he heard the sound, he looked her way, saw only her teeth, and then used them for skeleton meditation. Because of his previous constant practice he saw her as a skeleton, and not as a woman. He saw only a skeleton. Then he concentrated on his own skeleton, attained the first jhāna, and practised Vipassanā quickly. He attained the arahant path standing in the road.

The woman had quarrelled with her husband, and had left home to go to her parents' house. Her husband followed her, and also met Mahā Tissa Mahāthera. He asked him, 'Bhante, did you see a woman go this way?' The Mahāthera answered, 'Oh, lay-supporter (*dāyaka*), I saw neither man nor woman, I saw only a skeleton going this way.' This story is mentioned in the *Visuddhi Magga* in the Morality Chapter.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vs.i 'Indriyasainvarasīlanī' B15 ('Sense Restraint Morality' Ṇ55)



This is an example of how someone who has, like Mahā Tissa Mahāthera, practised skeleton meditation thoroughly may be able to see another's skeleton with his eyes open.

## Talk 5

**How You Discern Mentality****Introduction**

In our last talk, we discussed how to develop four-elements meditation, and also how to analyse the particles of materiality called ‘rūpa-kalāpas’. In this talk, we shall discuss briefly about how to discern mentality (*nāma kammaṭṭhāna*), which is the next stage in Vipassanā meditation.

Let me begin by explaining briefly the basic facts of the mind necessary to understand the discernment of mentality.

As is explained in the Abhidhamma, the mind consists of a consciousness (*citta*) that knows its object, and associated mental factors (*cetasika*) that arise with that consciousness. There are fifty-two such associated mental factors, for example: contact (*phassa*), feeling (*vedāna*), perception (*saññā*), intention (*cetanā*), one-pointedness (*ekaggatā*), life-faculty (*jīvitindriya*), and attention (*manasikāra*).<sup>1</sup>

There are a total of eighty-nine types of consciousness,<sup>2</sup> and they can be classified according to whether they are wholesome, unwholesome, or indeterminate, or according to their realm of existence, the sensual realm (*kāmāvacara*), fine-material realm (*rūpāvacara*), immaterial realm (*arūpāvacara*), or supramundane realm (*lokuttarā*).<sup>3</sup> We may, however, speak of just two basic types of consciousness:

1. The consciousness of the cognitive-process (*citta vīthi*).
2. The ‘process-freed’ (*vīthi mutta*) consciousness outside the cognitive-process: at rebirth and death, and in the bhavaṅga.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Mentality consists thus of 1 consciousness + 52 mental factors = 53 types of mentality

<sup>2</sup> For the eighty-nine types of consciousness, please see p.12

<sup>3</sup> For the four realms of existence, please see footnote 1, p.127

<sup>4</sup> For details regarding the bhavaṅga, please see Answer 3.12, p. 127, and Tables 4&5 p.173ff.

There are six types of cognitive-process. The first five are the eye-door-, ear-door-, nose-door-, tongue-door-, and body-door cognitive-processes, whose respective objects are visible forms, sounds, smells, tastes, and tangibles. They are together called the ‘five-door cognitive-process’ (*pañcadvāra vīthi*).<sup>1</sup> The sixth type of cognitive-process has all objects<sup>2</sup> as its objects, and is called the ‘mind-door cognitive-process’ (*manodvāra vīthi*).<sup>3</sup> Each cognitive-process comprises a series of different types of consciousness. The consciousnesses in any one cognitive-process occur according to the natural order of consciousness (*cittaniyāma*). If you want to discern mentality, you must see them as they occur in that natural order.

To do so, you must first have developed concentration with either *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), another Samatha meditation subject, or four-elements meditation. A pure-Vipassanā-vehicle yogi must also have finished the discernment of materiality (*rūpa kammaṭṭhāna*), before he starts on discernment of mentality (*nāma kammaṭṭhāna*). A Samatha-vehicle yogi, however, can choose: he can first discern materiality, or first discern the mentality of the jhānas he has attained (fine-material<sup>4</sup>/immaterial mentality<sup>5</sup>). Although to discern sensual realm mentality, he too needs first to have finished the discernment of materiality.<sup>6</sup>

**The Four Stages to Discerning Mentality**

Mentality is discerned in four stages:

1. To discern all the types of consciousness (*citta*) that occur internally.

<sup>1</sup> Please see also Table 5, p.211

<sup>2</sup> For the mind-faculty’s taking of all objects, please see quotation p.8 (‘Uṇṇābha Brahmin Sutta’)

<sup>3</sup> Please see also Table 6, p.213

<sup>4</sup> These are the four jhānas.

<sup>5</sup> These are the immaterial jhānas, but not the Base of Neither-Perception-Nor-Non-Perception. (Vs.xviii ‘*Diṭṭhi Visuddhi Niddesa*’ B663 (‘Description of Purification of View’) Ṅ3-4).

<sup>6</sup> VsTi.xviii ‘*Diṭṭhi Visuddhi Niddesa*’ D664 (‘Description of Purification of View’)

2. To discern each and every mental formation (*nāma dhamma*) in all the types of consciousness.
3. To discern the sequences of consciousnesses, that is, the cognitive-processes (*vīthi*) that occur at the six sense-doors (*dvārā*).
4. To discern external mentality (*bahiddha nāma*) generally.<sup>1</sup>

### How You Discern Jhāna Cognitive-processes

If you have attained jhāna with, for example, *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), the best place to start to discern mentality is the jhāna consciousnesses and associated mental factors.

There are two reasons for this. The first reason is that when developing jhāna, you discerned the five jhāna factors, which means you have some experience in discerning those associated mental factors. The second reason is that the jhāna impulsion-consciousnesses (*jhāna javana-citta*) occur many times in succession, and are therefore prominent, and easy to discern. This is in contrast to a sensual-realm cognitive-process (*kāmāvacara vīthi*), in which impulsion (*javana*) occurs only seven times before a new cognitive-process occurs.<sup>2</sup>

So, to discern the mentality of jhāna you begin by re-establishing the first jhāna with, for example, *ānāpānasati*. Emerge from it and discern the bhavaṅga (mind-door), and the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta together. When the nimitta appears in the bhavaṅga, discern the mental formations that are the five jhāna factors according to their individual characteristic. The five jhāna factors are:

1. Applied thought..... (*vitakka*)  
Directing and placing the mind on the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.

<sup>1</sup> M.I.i.10 'Satipaṭṭhāna Sutta' ('Mindfulness Foundations Sutta') **In this way he abides contemplating mind as mind internally, or he abides contemplating mind as mind externally...** This is not the psychic power of penetrating the mind of others (*ceto-pariya-ñāna*), but Vipassanā power. Hence, it is usually not possible to discern external mentality in detail. Please see also quotation 'Aggregates Sutta' p.5

<sup>2</sup> Jhāna cognitive processes are fine-material realm cognitive processes (*rūpāvacara*).

2. Sustained thought.....(*vicāra*)  
Maintaining the mind on the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.
3. Joy.....(*pīti*)  
Liking for the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.
4. Bliss.....(*sukha*)  
Happiness about the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.
5. One-pointedness.....(*ekaggatā*)  
One-pointedness of mind on the ānāpāna paṭ ibhāga-nimitta.

Practise until you can discern these five mental formations (mental factors) all at once in each first-jhāna impulsion-consciousness (*javana-citta*).

Having discerned the five jhāna factors in this way, you need to discern the remaining twenty-nine mental formations.<sup>1</sup> You begin with either consciousness (*viññāṇa*), contact (*phassa*), or feeling (*vedanā*); whichever is most prominent. Then add one mental formation at a time: discern first one type, then add one, so you discern two types of mental formation; add one more, so you see three; add one more, so you see four etc. until eventually you see all thirty-four types of mental formation in each first-jhāna impulsion-consciousness.

After this, discern all the types of mental formation in the sequence of six types of consciousness that comprises a mind-door cognitive-process (*manodvāra vīthi*) of the first jhāna. The six types of consciousness are first:

1. A mind-door adverting-consciousness..... (*manodvārāvajjana*)  
(12 mental formations)

<sup>1</sup> The thirty-four mental formations of the first jhāna are the jhāna consciousness, and its thirty-three mental factors: (The five in *italics* are the jhāna factors.) (1) consciousness (2) contact (3) *feeling* [bliss] (4) perception (5) volition (6) *one-pointedness* (7) life faculty, (8) attention (9) *applied thought* (10) *sustained thought* (11) decision (12) energy (13) *joy* (14) desire (15) faith (16) mindfulness (17) shame of wrongdoing (18) fear of wrongdoing (19) non-greed (20) non-hatred (21) neutrality of mind (22) tranquillity of mental body (23) tranquillity of consciousness (24) lightness of mental body (25) lightness of consciousness (26) malleability of mental body (27) malleability of consciousness (28) wieldiness of mental body (29) wieldiness of consciousness (30) proficiency of mental body (31) proficiency of consciousness (32) rectitude of mental body (33) rectitude of consciousness (34) wisdom faculty.

2. A preparatory-consciousness .....(*parikamma*)  
(34 mental formations)
3. An access-consciousness .....(*upacāra*)  
(34 mental formations)
4. A conformity-consciousness .....(*anuloma*)  
(34 mental formations)
5. A change-of-lineage consciousness .....(*gotrabhu*)  
(34 mental formations)
6. An uninterrupted sequence of jhāna impulsion-consciousnesses  
(*jhāna javana-citta*) (34 mental formations), which you have by now already discerned.

To discern all these mental formations, you must again re-establish the first jhāna, such as the first ānāpānā-jhāna, emerge from it, and again discern the bhavaṅga and paṭibhāga-nimitta together. When the nimitta appears in the bhavaṅga, discern the jhāna mind-door cognitive-process that just occurred. You discern each of the different consciousnesses in the first-jhāna mind-door cognitive-process, and their twelve or thirty-four types of mental formation.

After this, and to give you an understanding of mentality (*nāma*) as a whole, discern the characteristic common to all mentality (*nāma*), to all thirty-four mental formations, which is the characteristic of bending towards (*namana*) and adhering to the object, in this case, the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta.

You need, in the same way, to discern and analyse the mentality of also the second, third, and fourth ānāpānā-jhānas, as well as any other jhānas of other meditation subjects that you have attained; for example, foulness-, white kasiṇa-, and lovingkindness-jhāna.

If, however, you have only access concentration, with four-elements meditation, you must begin your discernment of mentality there: you cannot discern the mentality of a jhāna-consciousness without jhāna. In that case, you must with four-elements meditation re-establish access concentration, where the transparent form of your body sparkles and emits light. After resting there for

some time, turn to Vipassanā with a refreshed and clear mind, and discern the mentality of that concentration.

Having now discerned the different cognitive-processes in all your previous Samatha practice, be it access or jhāna concentration, you then move on to discern the different mental formations of a cognitive-process of the sensual realm (*kāmāvacara vīthi*).<sup>1</sup>

### How You Discern Sensual Realm Cognitive-processes

#### Wise and Unwise Attention

A cognitive-process of the sensual realm is either wholesome or unwholesome: it depends on wise attention (*yoniso manasikāra*) or unwise attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*). Attention determines whether a sensual-realm consciousness is wholesome or unwholesome.

If you look at an object and know it as materiality, mentality, cause or effect, impermanence, suffering, non-self, or repulsiveness, then your attention is wise attention, and the impulsion-consciousness is wholesome.

If you look at an object and see it as a concept, such as a person, man, woman, being, gold, silver, or see it as permanence, happiness, or self, then your attention is unwise attention, and the impulsion-consciousness is unwholesome.

In exceptional cases, however, an impulsion-consciousness connected with a concept may be wholesome, for example, when practising lovingkindness and making offerings. You will see the difference when you discern those cognitive-processes.

<sup>1</sup> The three realms: (1) The sensuous realm (*kāmāvacara*), which includes the human world, the hells and the deva-worlds. (2) The fine-material realm (*rūpāvacara*), which includes the Brahma worlds, where the materiality is very subtle. (3) The immaterial realm (*arūpāvacara*), where there is only mentality.

### How You Discern Mind-Door Cognitive-processes

To discern sensual-realm cognitive-processes, you should start by discerning a mind-door cognitive-process, because there the types of consciousness are fewer. You may start with a wholesome mind-door cognitive-process.

A wholesome mind-door cognitive-process of the sensual realm consists of a sequence of three types of consciousness:

1. A mind-door adverting-consciousness.....(*mano-dvārā-vajjana*)  
(12 mental formations)
2. Seven impulsion-consciousnesses ..... (*javana-citta*)  
(34/33/32 mental formations)
3. Two registration-consciousnesses.....(*tadārammaṇa-citta*)  
(34/33/32/12/11 mental formations)

To discern all this, you cause a mind-door cognitive-process to occur. First, you discern the bhavaṅga (mind-door), and then the eye transparent-element (*cakkhu pasāda*) in a rūpa-kalāpa in the eye. When it appears in the bhavaṅga, you cognize it as: ‘This is eye-transparent element’, or ‘This is materiality’ (or impermanent, suffering, non-self or repulsive), and see how there occurs a mind-door cognitive-process.

Then, to discern the different types of mental formation in the consciousnesses of that mind-door cognitive-process, you then do as you did with the jhāna mind-door cognitive-process: begin with either consciousness, feeling, or contact: whichever is most prominent. Then add one mental formation at a time: discern first one type, then add one, so you discern two types of mental formation; add one more, so you see three; add one more, so you see four etc. until eventually you see all thirty-four, thirty-three or thirty-two types of mental formation in each consciousness of a wholesome mind-door cognitive-process of the sensual realm. You should do this again and again until you are satisfied.

You need to thus discern the mind-door cognitive-processes that take place when you look at each of the eighteen types of real ma-

teriality (*rūpa-rūpa*), and ten types of artificial materiality (*arūpa-rūpa*) examined when you discerned materiality (*rūpa kamaṭṭhāna*).<sup>1</sup>

### How You Discern Five-Door Cognitive-processes

Once you have finished discerning the mind-door cognitive-processes, you should go on to discern the five-door cognitive-processes, starting with the eye-door cognitive-process.

To discern the mental formations of each consciousness in an eye-door cognitive-process, you cause an eye-door cognitive-process to occur. First, you first discern the eye-door, then the bhavaṅga (mind-door), and then both at once. Then concentrate on the colour of a nearby group of rūpa-kalāpas as it appears in both doors, cognize it as ‘This is colour’, and see how there occurs first an eye-door cognitive-process, and then (in accordance with the natural order of the mind (*citta niyāma*)) many mind-door cognitive-processes, all with the same object.

The eye-door cognitive-process will consist of a sequence of seven types of consciousness.

1. A five-door adverting-consciousness .....(*pañcadvārāvajjana*)  
(11 mental formations)
2. An eye-consciousness.....(*cakkhuvīñāṇa*)  
(8 mental formations)
3. A receiving-consciousness.....(*sampaṭicchana*)  
(11 mental formations)
4. An investigating-consciousness..... (*santīraṇa*)  
(11/12 mental formations)
5. A determining-consciousness .....(*voṭṭhapana*)  
(12 mental formations)
6. Seven impulsion-consciousnesses ..... (*javana-citta*)  
(34/33/32 mental formations)
7. Two registration-consciousnesses.....(*tadārammaṇa-citta*)  
(34/33/32/12/11 mental formations)

<sup>1</sup> When discerning materiality, all these types of materiality need to be discerned. Talk 4 ‘How You Discern Materiality’ explains only how to discern . For a list of the eighteen types of real materiality, and ten types of artificial materiality, please see ‘Table 1’ p.169

After this follows a sequence of bhavaṅga-consciousnesses, and then the three types of consciousness of the mind-door cognitive-process, as described before:

1. A mind-door adverting-consciousness
2. Seven impulsion-consciousnesses
3. Two registration-consciousnesses

Having discerned the above two series, you then discern all the remaining types of mental formation of the mind-door cognitive-processes: the mind-door cognitive processes that with the same object (colour) follow the eye-door cognitive process.<sup>1</sup> Here again, you begin with the most prominent of either consciousness, contact, or feeling. As before, add one at a time, until you see all the different types of mental formation in each consciousness.

As you did for the eye-door, you then discern the cognitive-processes of the other four doors: the ear, nose, tongue, and body.

By this stage, you will have developed the ability to discern mentality associated with wholesome consciousnesses, and now need to discern mentality associated with also unwholesome consciousnesses. To do this, you simply take the same objects as you did for the wholesome consciousnesses, and instead pay unwise attention to them.

This is merely a brief explanation, but the examples given here should be sufficient for you at least to understand what is involved in discerning mentality internally.

In summary, you have so far completed the first three stages of discerning mentality:

1. You have discerned all the types of consciousness (*citta*) that occur internally.<sup>2</sup>
2. You have discerned each and every mental formation (*nāma dhammā*) in all the types of consciousness.

<sup>1</sup> For details, please see Tables 5 & 6, p.213f

<sup>2</sup> It is understood that the supramundane types of consciousness are as yet out of reach.

3. You have discerned the sequences of consciousnesses, that is, the cognitive-processes (*vīthi*) that occur at the six sense-doors.

As mentioned earlier, there is also a fourth stage to discerning mentality.

### How You Discern External Mentality

The fourth stage is to discern mentality also externally. You begin by discerning the four elements internally, and then externally in the clothes you are wearing. You will see that your clothes break down into rūpa-kalāpas, and that you are able to discern the eight types of materiality in each. They are temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*), and the temperature they arise from is the temperature in rūpa-kalāpas.<sup>1</sup>

You should alternate between the internal and external materiality three or four times, and then with the light of concentration discern external materiality a little farther away, such as the floor. You will also there be able to discern the eight types of materiality in each rūpa-kalāpa, and should again alternate between the internal and external three or four times.

In this way, gradually expand your field of discernment to the materiality in the building in which you are sitting, the area around it, including the trees, other buildings, etc., until you discern all inanimate materiality externally. While doing this, you will see also animate materiality (transparent materiality, etc.) in the inanimate objects: it is the insects and other small animals in the trees, buildings, etc.

Once you have discerned all inanimate materiality externally, you now go on to discern all animate materiality: the materiality of other living beings, external materiality that has consciousness. You are discern only their materiality, and see that they are not a man, a woman, a person, or a being: only materiality. Discern all

<sup>1</sup> For details regarding temperature-produced nutritive-essence octad-kalāpas etc., please see p.139

external materiality at once, then all the different types of materiality both internally and externally.

To do this, you should first see the six basic types of rūpa-kalāpa<sup>1</sup> in your own eye, and then in an external eye, another being's eye. As when you analysed materiality, discern the fifty-four types of materiality, but now do it both internally and externally.<sup>2</sup> Do the same for the remaining five sense-bases, and remaining types of materiality.

Having now discerned materiality completely, you proceed to discern mentality internally and externally.

You discern mentality internally by again starting with the mind-door, and then five-door cognitive-processes, discerning all their wholesome and unwholesome mental formations.

To do this externally, you do as you did internally, but discern the eye-door and bhavaṅga (mind-door) of other beings in general. Then, when the colour of a group of rūpa-kalāpas appears in both doors, discern also here the eye-door cognitive-process that occurs, and the many mind-door cognitive-processes that occur, all with the same object.

You should do this again and again, internally and externally, and again for each of the other four sense-doors, until you are satisfied. If you have jhāna, you should (if you can) also discern external jhāna mind-door cognitive-processes. That may be in another meditator, although jhāna concentration is now very, very rare in the human world. But you will find beings in jhāna in the deva- and Brahma-worlds.

Following the same procedure as before, you should gradually extend your range of discernment until you can see materiality throughout the infinite universe, and can see mentality throughout

the infinite universe. Then you should discern them together throughout the infinite universe.

Lastly, you define all that mentality and materiality with wisdom to see no beings, men, or women: only mentality and materiality throughout the infinite universe. That concludes the discernment of mentality (*nāma kammaṭṭhāna*).

Having reached this stage in your meditation, you will have developed concentration, and will have used it to discern all twenty-eight kinds of materiality,<sup>1</sup> and all fifty-three kinds of mentality throughout the infinite universe:<sup>2</sup> you will have completed the first insight-knowledge, the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*).

Our next talk will be about the next stage of insight: the discernment of dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*).

---

<sup>1</sup> For the twenty-eight types of materiality, please see p.169

<sup>2</sup> For the fifty-three types of mentality, please see above footnote 1, p.199.

---

<sup>1</sup> Six basic types of rūpa-kalāpa: (1) eye decad-kalāpas; (2) body decad-kalāpas; (3) sex decad-kalāpas; (4) consciousness-produced octad-kalāpas; (5) temperature-produced octad-kalāpas; (6) nutriment-produced octad-kalāpas. Please see also p.162f.

<sup>2</sup> Although you have in fact discerned sixty-three types of materiality, you do here discern only fifty-four. Why you do this is explained in detail, p.161f.

Table 5 **The Five-Door Cognitive Process** (*pañcadvāravīthi*) with eye-door cognitive process as example.<sup>1</sup>

Eye-door Cognitive Process <i>Cakkhu-Dvāra Vīthi</i>																			
Material Base <i>Vatthu</i>	Heart <i>Hadaya</i>				Eye <i>Cakkhu</i>	Heart <i>Hadaya</i>													
	⇒⇒⇒⇒⇒	1⇒	2⇒	3⇒		4⇒	5⇒	6⇒	7⇒	8⇒	9⇒	10⇒	11⇒	12⇒	13⇒	14⇒	15⇒	16⇒	17⇒
Object <i>Arammaṇa</i>	Kamma, kamma sign ( <i>kamma-nimitta</i> ) or rebirth sign ( <i>gatī-nimitta</i> )				Colour Object <i>Rūpārammaṇa</i>														Kamma, kamma sign or rebirth sign.
Consciousness <i>Citta</i>	Life- Continuum <i>Bhavaṅga</i> ↑   ↓	Past Life- Continuum <i>Añña</i> <i>Bhavaṅga</i> ↑   ↓	Trembling Life- Continuum <i>Bhavaṅga</i> <i>Calana</i> ↑   ↓	Arrest Life- Continuum <i>Bhavaṅga</i> - <i>upaccheda</i> ↑   ↓	Five-door Adverting <i>Pañca-</i> <i>Dvārāvajjana</i> ↑   ↓	Eye <i>Cakkhu-</i> <i>vinṇāna</i> ↑   ↓	Receiving <i>Sampajī-</i> <i>chana</i> ↑   ↓	Investigation <i>Sanīraṇa</i> ↑   ↓	Determining <i>Voṭṭhapana</i> ↑   ↓	1st Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	2nd Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	3rd Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	4th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	5th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	6th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	7th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	1st Registration <i>Tadārammaṇa</i> ↑   ↓	2nd Registration <i>Tadārammaṇa</i> ↑   ↓	Life- Continuum <i>Bhavaṅga</i> ↑   ↓

- Five-door cognitive processes of either door (eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue- and body-door) have the same structure, with their respective object.
- The constituents and sequence of five-door cognitive-processes are the same for all: according to the natural law of the mind (*citta-niyāma*).
- The duration of one consciousness is a consciousness-moment (*cittakkhaṇa*). The life-span of materiality is equal to 17 consciousness-moments.
- Each consciousness (*citta*) has a rising stage (*uppāda*) (↑), a standing stage (*thiti*) (|), and a passing-away stage (*bhaṅga*)(↓).
- The object of the life-continuum consciousnesses is the same throughout one life. It is the object of the last impulsion-consciousness of the previous life.<sup>2</sup>
- In between each cognitive-process arise any number of life-continuum consciousnesses, depending on the person.  
A Buddha has very few life-continuum consciousnesses between each cognitive-process.

<sup>1</sup> For further details, please see Talk 4 ‘How You Discern Materiality’ (p.131ff), Talk 5 ‘How You Discern Mentality’ (p.199ff), and Tables 2-4 (p.171ff) and the *Abhidhammattha Saṅgaha* (e.g. *A Comprehensive Manual of Abhidhamma*, Ed. Bhikkhu Bodhi, BPS.)

<sup>2</sup> Please see also Answer 3.12, p.127.

*Knowing and Seeing*

- The cognition of the object is performed by the seven impulsion consciousnesses.
- The five-door cognitive-process only ‘picks up’ the object; only cognizes that there is colour, does not ‘know’ the colour or the object yet. The ‘knowing’ of the colour and the object is performed by subsequent mind-door cognitive-process.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Please see above Table 6, p.213.



Table 6 **The Mind-Door Cognitive Process** (*manodvāravūthi*) with colour object as example.<sup>1</sup>

Material Base <i>Vaṭṭu</i>	Heart <i>Hadaya</i>											
	⇒⇒⇒⇒⇒	1⇒	2⇒	3⇒	4⇒	5⇒	6⇒	7⇒	8⇒	9⇒	10⇒	⇒⇒⇒⇒⇒
Object <i>Ārammaṇa</i>	Kamma, kamma sign or rebirth sign.	Colour Object <i>Rūpārammaṇa</i>										Kamma, kamma- or rebirth sign.
Consciousness <i>Citta</i>	Life- Continuum  <i>Bhavaṅga</i> ↑   ↓	Mind-door Adverting <i>Mano- Dvārāvajjana</i> ↑   ↓	1st Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	2nd Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	3rd Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	4th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	5th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	6th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	7th Impulsion <i>Javana</i> ↑   ↓	1st Registration <i>Tadārammaṇa</i> ↑   ↓	2nd Registration <i>Tadārammaṇa</i> ↑   ↓	Life- Continuum  <i>Bhavaṅga</i> ↑   ↓

- Mind-door cognitive processes may arise with a preceding 5-door cognitive process; they may arise with another preceding mind-door cognitive process.
- The constituents and sequence of cognitive-processes are the same for all: according to the natural law of the mind (*citta-niyāma*).
- Each consciousness has a rising stage (*uppāda*) (↑), a standing stage (*thiti*) (|), and a passing-away stage (*bhaṅga*) (↓).
- The object of the life-continuum processes is the same throughout one life. It is the object of the last impulsion-consciousness of the previous life.<sup>2</sup>
- In between each cognitive-process arise any number of life-continuum consciousnesses, depending on the person. A Buddha has very few life-continuum consciousnesses between each cognitive-process.
- The ‘knowing’ of each cognitive-process is performed by the seven impulsion consciousnesses.
- After the first cognitive process (the five-door cognitive process), follows a series of mind cognitive-processes. The whole procedure is:

<sup>1</sup> For further details, please see, Talk 5 ‘How You Discern Mentality’ (p.199ff), Answers 3.5, 3.11, 7.9, 7.11, 7.12, and the *Abhidhammattha Saṅgaha* (e.g. *A Comprehensive Manual of Abhidhamma*, Ed. Bhikkhu Bodhi, BPS.)

<sup>2</sup> Please see also Answer 3.12, p.127.

*Knowing and Seeing*

1. Five-door cognitive process that ‘picks-up’ the object; in the case of the eye and a colour object, it cognizes only that there is colour.<sup>1</sup>
2. Mind-door cognitive process that perceives the colour; compares the present colour with a past colour; knows the past colour.
3. —" —" —" knows which colour it is; knows the colour’s name.
4. —" —" —" knows the ‘meaning’ of the object; sees the whole image, a concept, determined by past experience (perception (*saññā*)).
5. Mind-door cognitive process that judges and feels. This is the beginning of true cognition, when mental proliferation takes place (*papañca*) and kamma is performed, as we perceive the object to be permanent (*nicca*), happiness (*sukha*), and self (*atta*). (The Vipassanā mind-door cognitive process sees the object as impermanent (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*)).
6. With this same object arise countless cognitive-processes (mental formations (*saṅkhārā*)), re-inforcing the cognition.

It is from the fifth cognitive process onwards that there is the knowing of the conceptual reality: ‘a man’, ‘a woman’, ‘a pot’, ‘a sarong’, ‘gold’, ‘silver’ etc. And it is from that cognitive process onwards that wholesome mind-states arise from wise attention (*yoniso manasikāra*), with, for example, respect for and worship of one’s teacher, a Buddha-statue or a bhikkhu; or unwholesome mind-states arise from unwise attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*), with, for example, attachment to one’s husband, wife, children, property etc. This process continues until again the mind adverts towards a new object.

<sup>1</sup> Please see Table 5 above, p.211.

## Questions and Answers 5

**Question 5.1** The eight attainments (*samāpatti*)<sup>1</sup> make it possible to attain the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*), and to see their subtle arising and passing-away, so as to become disgusted with them, and attain the Path Knowledge (*maggañāṇa*). Are there, apart from this, other benefits to the eight attainments?

**Answer 5.1** There are five benefits to jhāna concentration:<sup>2</sup>

The first benefit of jhāna concentration is a blissful abiding here and now (*ditṭhadhamma sukha vihāra*): enjoying jhāna happiness in this very life. This refers to arahants. Even though pure Vipassanā arahants naturally possess the supramundane jhānas (*lokuttāra jhāna*), they may still want to develop the mundane jhānas (*lokiya jhāna*), because they want to enjoy the blissful abiding of jhāna. Since they are arahants, with all defilements removed by Path Knowledge (which means also their hindrances have been removed<sup>3</sup>), it is very easy for them to develop jhāna. Another reason why they will usually develop jhāna is that they want to attain cessation (*nirodhānisamsa*): it requires mastery of the eight attainments.

A bhikkhu's duty is to learn the scriptures (*pariyatti*), to practise Vipassanā meditation (*paṭipatti*), and to attain the four paths and four fruitions (*paṭivedha*). That is what arahants have done, so there is no more work for them to do. They practise jhāna concentration for no reason other than the enjoyment of jhāna bliss (*jhāna sukha*) in this very life.

The second benefit of jhāna concentration is the benefit of insight (*vipassanānisamsa*): Jhāna concentration is a support for insight-knowledge, because with jhāna, one can see ultimate mentality-

<sup>1</sup> The four mundane jhānas, and four immaterial jhānas.

<sup>2</sup> Vis.xi 'Samādhi Niddesa' B362 ('Description of Concentration' Ñ120ff)

<sup>3</sup> The hindrances are removed already at the attainment of Non-Return (*anāgāmi*).

materiality and their causes clearly, and can discern their impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature.

When a yogi has practised Vipassanā thoroughly, especially up to the Path Knowledge (*maggañāṇa*) and Fruition Knowledge (*phalañāṇa*), or the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*), jhānas are usually stable. They make the insight-knowledge clear, bright, strong and powerful. That strong and powerful insight-knowledge in its turn, also protects the jhānas from falling down.

Then again, when a yogi has been practising Vipassanā for a long time, tiredness may occur. Then he should go into jhāna for long, to rest the mind. Refreshed he can then switch back to Vipassanā. When it happens again he can again rest in jhāna.<sup>1</sup>

So, because of concentration, Vipassanā is clear, bright, strong and powerful, and well protected. Vipassanā in its turn destroys the defilements that hinder concentration, and keeps it stable. Samatha protects Vipassanā and vice-versa.

Furthermore, the concentration of the eight attainments is not only a support for the discernment of mentality-materiality and their causes, because those eight attainments are themselves mentality, and included in the discernment of mentality.<sup>2</sup> And if a yogi has discerned mentality-materiality and their causes (including the eight attainments) as impermanence, suffering, and non-self, up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*), he can thereafter keep his discernment of the jhāna formations to only one of the eight attainments. This is yoking (*yuganaddha*) Samatha and Vipassanā together, like two bullocks pulling one cart. It is another support for the attainment of the Path, Fruition, and Nibbāna.

The third benefit of jhāna concentration is psychic powers (*abhiññānisamsa*): If one wants to master the mundane psychic powers, like the recollection of past lives (*pubbenivāsānussati abhiññā*), the divine eye (*dibba cakku*), the divine ear (*dibba sota*), knowing the mind

<sup>1</sup> For a more detailed explanation, please see p.151

<sup>2</sup> Please see p.201ff

of others (*paracitta vijānana*), and the supernormal powers (*iddhividha*), flying, walking on water, etc., one must develop the ten kasiṇas and eight attainments (*samāpatti*) in fourteen ways.<sup>1</sup>

The fourth benefit of jhāna concentration is what is called ‘a specific existence’ (*bhavavisesāvahānisamsa*). That is, if one wants rebirth in a brahma realm at death, one must develop concentration such as the ten kasiṇa-, ānāpānā-, or lovingkindness-jhāna. But to be sure of rebirth in a brahma realm means the jhāna must be maintained up to the moment of death.

The fifth benefit of jhāna concentration is cessation (*nirodhānisamsa*): the attainment of cessation (*nirodha samāpatti*), which is the temporary cessation of consciousness (*citta*), associated mental factors (*cetasika*) and consciousness-produced materiality (*cittaja rūpa*). ‘Temporary’ means usually for a day up to seven days, depending on one’s prior determination (*adhittjhāna*).

Only non-returners (*anāgāmi*) and arahants can attain cessation. And for arahants, apart from when they are asleep, and apart from when they pay attention to concepts, they never stop seeing the arising and passing-away, or just the passing-away of mentality-materiality and their causes: all day, all night, for days, months, and years.<sup>2</sup> Sometimes they get disenchanted and ‘bored’, and just do not want to see those ‘phenomena of passing-away’ (*bhaṅga dhamma*) anymore. But, because their life span is not over, it is not yet time for their Parinibbāna. Therefore, to stop seeing those phenomena of passing-away, they enter cessation.

Why do they never stop seeing those phenomena? Because, with arahantship, they have destroyed the hindrances opposite the jhāna factors, and have therefore concentration. The concentrated mind sees ultimate phenomena (*paramattha dhamma*) as they really are, so it sees always ultimate mentality-materiality as they really

<sup>1</sup> For details, please see Vs.xii ‘*Iddhividha Niddesa*’ (‘Description of Direct Knowledge’)

<sup>2</sup> For related details, please see below, ‘Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away’ p.264ff.

Details regarding the path to arahantship, and thence the arahant’s ‘permanent dwelling’ (seeing only the continuous rising and passing-away of formations) are described by The Buddha in S.III.I.i.5 ‘*Sattatthāna Sutta*’ (‘Seven Cases Sutta’).

are, which are the ‘phenomena of passing-away’. When one enters cessation, let’s say for seven days, one does not see the phenomena of passing-away, because (for as long as the attainment lasts) the consciousness and associated mental factors that would have known those phenomena have ceased.

Although arahants are able to abide in Nibbāna-attainment, they may still prefer to abide in cessation, because although the Nibbāna-attainment takes the Unformed as object, there remains the mental formation of feeling. But in the attainment of cessation the only formation that remains is the material formation of kamma-, temperature- and nutriment-produced materiality: no consciousness-produced materiality, and no consciousness.

To enter cessation, one must establish the first jhāna, emerge from it, and discern the first-jhāna dhammas as impermanence, suffering, or non-self. One must do the same progressively up to the base of boundless consciousness, which is the second immaterial jhāna (*viññānañcāyatana jhāna*). Then one must enter the base of nothingness, the third immaterial jhāna (*ākārañcāyatana jhāna*), emerge from it and make four determinations:

1. To reflect on the limit of one’s life-span, and then within that to determine a period for the attainment of cessation (for example, seven days), at the end of which one will emerge from the attainment.
2. To emerge from the attainment of cessation should one be wanted by a Buddha.
3. To emerge from the attainment of cessation should one be wanted by the Saṅgha.
4. That one’s requisites not be destroyed by, for example, fire.

Then one enters the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception, the fourth immaterial jhāna (*nevasaññā-nāsaññāyatana jhāna*). After only one or two consciousness-moments in that attainment, one enters cessation for the determined period, for example, seven days. One does not see anything while in the attainment, because all consciousness and associated mental factors have ceased.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xxiii ‘*Nirodhasamāpatti Kathā*’ B879 (‘Cessation-Attainment Explanation’ Ñ43)

**Question 5.2** Which is easiest and quickest for the attainment of Nibbāna: using theory to perceive impermanence, suffering, and non-self, or using concentration to discern ultimate phenomena (*paramattha dhamma*)?

**Answer 5.2** What is impermanence? Impermanence is the five aggregates.<sup>1</sup> This definition is mentioned in many commentaries. If a yogi sees the five aggregates clearly, he can see impermanence, suffering, and non-self: no problem. But without seeing the five aggregates, how can he see impermanence, suffering and non-self? If he tries to do so without seeing the five aggregates, his Vipassanā will be only reciting Vipassanā; not true Vipassanā. Only true Vipassanā produces the Path and Fruition Knowledges.

What are the five aggregates? They are the materiality-aggregate, the feeling-aggregate, the perception-aggregate, the formations-aggregate and the consciousness-aggregate. The materiality-aggregate is the twenty-eight types of materiality (*rūpa*). The feeling-, perception- and formations-aggregate are the fifty-two associated mental factors (*cetasika*). The consciousness-aggregate is the eighty-nine types of consciousness (*citta*). The twenty-eight types of materiality are what is called materiality, and the fifty-two associated mental factors and eighty-nine types of consciousness are what is called mentality. So, the five aggregates and mentality-materiality are one and the same thing.

These are all ultimate mentality-materiality. If a yogi sees these ultimate mentality-materiality, he can practise Vipassanā, and see the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of these mentality-materiality. But if he cannot see ultimate mentality-materiality, how can he practise Vipassanā, since they and their causes are the necessary objects of insight-knowledge? This is true Vipassanā. Only true Vipassanā produces the Path and Fruition Knowledges.

<sup>1</sup> *Aniccanti khandapañcakarī... Pañcakkhandhā aniccanti.* (VbhA.ii.1 'Suttantabhājanīya Vaṇṇanā' ('By Sutta Comment')). Quoted also above Answer 2.3, p.92

In the '*Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna Sutta*'<sup>1</sup> The Buddha taught that to attain Nibbāna there is only one way (*ekāyana*): no other way. What is the way? The Buddha said to practise concentration first, because a concentrated mind can give rise to the seeing of ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes. Again, a concentrated mind can give rise to the seeing of impermanence, suffering, and non-self nature of ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes. But we cannot say which is the quickest way to attain Nibbāna: it depends on one's pāramī s.

For example, the Venerable Sāriputta needed about two weeks' hard work to attain the arahant path and fruition, whereas the Venerable Mahāmogallāna needed only seven days. And, Bāhiya Daruciriya needed only to listen to a very short discourse: '*Diṭṭhe diṭṭhamattā...*' (In the seeing there is only the seeing.)<sup>2</sup> The speed with which they each attained arahantship was because of their individual pāramī s.

The Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmogallāna had developed their pāramī s for one incalculable (*asaṅkhyeyya*) and a hundred thousand aeons (*kappa*), and Bāhiya Daruciriya for about one hundred thousand aeons. The Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmogallānas' arahant paths were associated with the Knowledge of Enlightenment of a Chief Disciple (*aggasāvaka bodhi nāṇa*), whereas Bāhiya Daruciriya's arahant path was associated with only the Knowledge of Enlightenment of a Great Disciple (*mahāsāvaka bodhi nāṇa*). The Knowledge of Enlightenment of a Chief Disciple is higher than the Knowledge of Enlightenment of a Great Disciple.<sup>3</sup>

Since there is only one way to attain Nibbāna, these disciples did not attain arahantship because of a wish: they attained arahantship through present effort supported by their past effort, their pāramī s.

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.9 'Great Sutta on the Foundations of Mindfulness'

<sup>2</sup> U.i.10 '*Bāhiya Sutta*' ('Bāhiya Sutta')

<sup>3</sup> For the four types of person who attains Nibbāna, please see p.180; for the four types of arahant path, please see Answer 4.7, p.192.

**Question 5.3** The round of rebirths (*samsāra*) is without beginning or end. Beings are also infinite in number, so those who have been our mother are infinite too. How can we develop lovingkindness by contemplating that all beings have been our mother? Can we attain lovingkindness jhāna (*mettā jhāna*) by contemplating that all beings have been our mother?

**Answer 5.3** Lovingkindness meditation does not concern the past and future. It concerns only the present. Only an object of the present can produce lovingkindness jhāna (*mettā jhāna*), not one of the past or future: we cannot attain jhāna by extending lovingkindness to the dead. In the endless round of rebirths (*samsāra*), there may very well be no one who has not been our father or mother, but lovingkindness meditation is not concerned with the endless round of rebirths. It is not necessary to consider that this was our mother, this our father.

In the '*Karaṇī yamettā Sutta*', The Buddha said:

*Mātā yathā niyaṃputtamāyusā ekaputtamanurakkhe;  
evampi sabbabhūtesu, mānasam bhāvaye aparimāṇam.*

This means that just as a mother with an only son would give up even her life for him, so a bhikkhu should extend lovingkindness to all beings. This is The Buddha's instruction. But the attitude of a mother cannot alone lead to jhāna. If we extend lovingkindness with the thought, 'May this person be well and happy' it will produce jhāna.

**Question 5.4** (The following questions are all covered by the same answer.)

- Was there a bodhisatta during The Buddha's time? If so, did he attain a path or was he just a worldling (*puthujjana*)?
- Why can a noble one (*ariya*) not become a bodhisatta?
- Can a disciple (*sāvaka*) change to become a bodhisatta? If not, why not?
- When by following the Sayadaw's teaching one is able to attain the Path and Fruition Knowledges of Stream-Entry (*sotāpatti maggañāṇa* and *sotāpatti phalañāṇa*), can one choose to not do so, because of a desire and vow to practise the bodhisatta path?

**Answer 5.4** One can change one's mind before attaining a path or fruition, but not afterwards. In many suttas, The Buddha taught that the path occurs according to a law of nature (*sammatta niyāma*). The law of nature says:

- The Stream-Entry Path (*sotāpatti magga*) produces the Stream-Entry Fruition (*sotāpatti phala*), after which one can progress to the once-returner (*sakadāgāmi*) stage, but one cannot regress to the worldling (*puthujjana*) stage.
- A once-returner can progress to the non-returner (*anāgāmi*) stage, but cannot regress to the stream-enterer or worldling stages.
- A non-returner can progress to arahantship, but cannot regress to the once-returner, stream-enterer or worldling stages.
- An arahant attains Parinibbāna at death, and cannot regress to the lower noble stages, the worldling stage, or any other stage.

Arahantship is the end. This is a law of nature (*sammatta niyāma*). Referring to arahantship, The Buddha said many times:<sup>1</sup>

*Ayamantimā jāti, natthidāni punabbhavoti.  
(This is the last rebirth, now there is no new rebirth.)*

This means that one cannot change one's mind, and decide to become a bodhisatta after having attained a path or fruition. Moreover, one cannot change one's mind after having received a definite prophecy from a Buddha or arahant. But one may wish to wait, and become an arahant some time in the future, and then change one's mind, and attain arahantship in this life.

The *Visuddhi Magga* gives an example of a Mahāthera, the Venerable Mahāsaṅgharakkhita, who did this.<sup>2</sup> He was expert in the four foundations of mindfulness, had practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, and had never performed a bodily or verbal action without

<sup>1</sup> For example, D.iii.6 '*Pāsādika Sutta*' ('Delightful Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> Vs.i '*Paṭhamasīlapaṅcakam*' B20 ('First Morality Pentad' Ṅ135)

mindfulness. And he had developed sufficient Samatha-Vipassanā pāramīs to be able to attain arahantship if he wanted to. But, because he wanted to see Arimetteyya Buddha, he had decided to wait, and become an arahant only in that dispensation. According to the law of nature we just mentioned, he would not be able to see Arimetteyya Buddha, if he attained arahantship now.

But, at the time near his death, a large number of people gathered, because they thought he was an arahant, and thought he was going to attain Parinibbāna, although he was in fact still a worldling. When his disciple told him many people had gathered, because they thought he was going to attain Parinibbāna, the Mahāthera said, ‘Oh, I had wanted to see Arimetteyya Buddha. But if there is a large assembly, then let me meditate.’ And he practised Vipassanā. Now that he had changed his mind, and because he had in his past lives not received a definite prophecy, he very soon attained arahantship.

During The Buddha’s time there was no mention of a definite prophecy to a bodhisatta except for Arimetteyya Bodhisatta, who was a bhikkhu named Ajita. The Tipiṭaka does not say either when the next Buddha after Arimetteyya Buddha will arise, so we cannot say how many bodhisattas there were during The Buddha’s time.

**Question 5.5** Is it possible to practise the path to liberation (*vimuttimaggā*) and the path of bodhisatta [path to Buddhahood]<sup>1</sup> at the same time? If so, what is the method?

**Answer 5.5** Liberation (*vimutti*) means escape from defilements or the round of rebirths. When a bodhisatta becomes a Buddha, he escapes from the round of rebirths at his Parinibbāna. If you, as a disciple (*sāvaka*), try to attain arahantship and succeed, you will also escape from the round of rebirths at your Parinibbāna. A per-

<sup>1</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Sayadaw’s audience was almost only Buddhists of the Mahāyana tradition, for whom the path is not towards arahantship (liberation) but the bodhisatta path towards Buddhahood (saving all beings).

son cannot become a Buddha as well as a disciple. He must choose either one or the other, but they both escape from the round of rebirths when they attain arahantship. The way to attain the arahant path is the final path to liberation (*vimuttimaggā*).

**Question 5.6** Is this method [of meditation] for liberation only, or is it also for the bodhisatta path?

**Answer 5.6** It is for both. In a previous talk, we mentioned that Sakyamuni Buddha was a bhikkhu in nine of his past lives as a bodhisatta.<sup>1</sup> If we look at his practice in those nine lives, we see the three trainings: morality (*sīla*), concentration (*samādhi*), and wisdom (*paññā*). The bodhisatta was able to practise the eight attainments, five mundane psychic powers, and Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations.

Now you too are developing Samatha-Vipassanā meditation based on virtuous conduct. When you have practised the three trainings up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, you can choose either way. If you want liberation you can choose to go to Nibbāna; if you want to become a bodhisatta you can choose the bodhisatta way: no problem.

**Question 5.7** Do all the good and bad kammās of an arahant mature prior to his Parinibbāna?

**Answer 5.7** Not all. Some good and bad kamma may mature and produce their results. If they do not mature they do not produce a result, and are lapsed kamma (*ahosi kamma*), kamma that no longer bear any fruit. For example, the unwholesome kamma of one of the Venerable Mahāmoḅḅallāna’s past lives produced its results just before his Parinibbāna. In one of his past lives he had tried unsuccessfully to kill his blind parents. Due to that unwholesome kamma, he suffered in hell for many thousands of years, and when he escaped from hell, he was killed in about two hundred lives. In each of those lives his skull was crushed. In his last life too, every bone in his body was crushed, including his skull.

<sup>1</sup> Please see p.181

Why? The unwholesome kamma had matured. Unless unwholesome and wholesome kammās have matured, they do not produce any results. They are kamma by name only.

**Question 5.8** After His enlightenment, did The Buddha say, ‘Originally all beings have the Tathāgata’s wisdom and other qualities’?

**Answer 5.8** Now you have accepted that Sakyamuni Buddha attained enlightenment. You should consider whether the Tathāgata’s qualities of enlightenment are present in all beings, especially in yourself. Do you possess any of the Tathāgata’s qualities?

**Question 5.9** Is the arahant’s perception of voidness (*suññatā*) in his own five aggregates the same as his perception of voidness in outside inanimate things? Is Nibbāna the same as entering voidness?

**Answer 5.9** The perception of voidness in one’s five aggregates and in outside inanimate things is the same.

Nibbāna was given the name voidness (*suññatā*) because of the path. When a yogi knows formations (*saṅkhāra dhamma*) as non-self, and if at that time he sees Nibbāna, his Path Knowledge is called the void liberation (*suññatā vimokkha*). Just like the path is called the void liberation, so is the object of the path, which is Nibbāna, also called voidness. Here the void liberation means the escape from defilements by seeing the non-self nature of formations.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 5.10** Are all suttas taught by The Buddha only?

**Answer 5.10** Most of the suttas in the Tipiṭ aka are taught by The Buddha. A few suttas are said to be taught by disciples like the Venerable Sāriputta, the Venerable Mahākaccāyana, and the Venerable Ānanda. But the suttas taught by disciples have the same meaning as had they been taught by The Buddha. This is

<sup>1</sup> Further to Nibbāna as the perception of voidness, please see also p.33, and the three entrances to Nibbāna, p.69

evident when The Buddha in some of the suttas gives his approval by uttering, **It is good** (*sādhu*), for example, in the ‘Mahākaccāyana Bhaddekaratta Sutta’, of the *Majjhima Nikāya*.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 5.11** Since we cannot see The Buddha while in concentration, can we see Him by psychic powers to discuss Dhamma with Him?<sup>2</sup>

**Answer 5.11** No, you cannot. One of the psychic powers is called recollection of past lives (*pubbenivāsānussati*). If a yogi possesses this psychic power, and met a Buddha in one of his past lives, he can see that as a past experience only, not as a new experience. If Dhamma was discussed, there will be only old questions and answers; there cannot be new questions and answers.

<sup>1</sup> M.III.iv.3 ‘Mahākaccāyana-Bhaddekaratta Sutta’ (‘Mahākaccāyana One-Good-Attachment Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> Please see further the end of ‘Recollection of The Buddha’, p.110.

## Talk 6

## How You See the Links of Dependent-Origination

### Introduction

In our last talk, we discussed how to discern mentality (*nāma*), and in the talk before that, how to discern materiality (*rūpa*). If you are able to discern mentality and materiality in the way then described, you will also be able to discern their causes. This means discerning dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*). Dependent-origination is about how causes and effects operate over the three periods of past, present, and future.

The Buddha taught four ways to discern dependent-origination, according to the character of his listeners, and there is a fifth method taught by the Venerable Sāriputta, recorded in the *Paṭ is-ambhidāmagga*.<sup>1</sup> It would take some time to explain the many methods in detail, so we shall look at only the two methods we at the Pa-Auk monasteries teach most often to yogis. They are what we call the Venerable Sāriputta's fifth method, and then what we call the first method, taught by The Buddha, in for example, the '*Mahānidāna Sutta*' in the *Dī gha Nikāya*, and the '*Nidāna Vagga*' in the *Saṃyutta Nikāya*.<sup>2</sup>

Both methods involve discerning the five aggregates (*khandha*) of the present, of the past, and of the future<sup>3</sup>, discerning which of

<sup>1</sup> Ps.I.i.4 *Dhammatṭhitiṅṅa Niddeso* ('Standing-on-Phenomena Knowledge Description'). Please see also Vs.xvii '*Paññā Bhūmi Niddesa*' B653 ('Description of the Soil of Understanding') N284ff

<sup>2</sup> '*Mahānidāna Sutta*' ('Great Causation Sutta' D.ii.2); '*Nidāna Vagga*' ('Causation Section' S.II)

<sup>3</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw is here speaking of insight (*Vipassanā*) power, which enables you to see only the five aggregates of clinging. (SA.III.I.viii.7 '*Khajjanīya Sutta*' ('Being Consumed Sutta'). He is not speaking of the psychic power, Recollection of Past Lives (*pubbenivāsānussati abhiññā*), which enables you to see: 1) The aggregates (*khandhā*) associated with supramundane states (*lokuttaradhamma*), which are the aggregates (four/five in the Brahmā world; five in the deva/human world) of beings who have attained one of the four path consciousnesses and four fruit

*Please see further next page*

them is cause and which is effect. When you can do this, you can also learn how to discern dependent-origination in the other ways taught in the suttas and commentaries.

### The Fifth Method

#### The Three Rounds of Dependent-Origination

Dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*) consists of twelve factors.<sup>1</sup>

They can be said to comprise three rounds (*vaṭṭa*), two rounds of causes (five causes), and one round of results (five results):<sup>2</sup>

1. The defilements round.....(*kilesavaṭṭa*):
  - Ignorance .....(*avijjā*)
  - Craving .....(*taṇhā*)
  - Clinging.....(*upadāna*)
2. The kamma round.....(*kammavaṭṭa*):
  - Volitional formations .....(*saṅkhārā*)
  - Kamma-process becoming.....(*kammabhava*)
3. The results round.....(*vipākavaṭṭa*):
  - Consciousness .....(*viññāna*)
  - Mentality-materiality.....(*nāmarūpa*)
  - Six sense-bases .....(*salāyatana*)
  - Contact.....(*phassa*)
  - Feeling .....(*vedāna*)

tion consciousnesses; 2) The aggregates of clinging (*upādānakkhandhā*); 3) Clan, appearance, food, pleasure and pain etc; 4) Concepts such as names and race.

<sup>1</sup> (1) ignorance, (2) volitional formations, (3) consciousness, (4) mentality-materiality, (5) six sense-bases, (6) contact, (7) feeling, (8) craving, (9) clinging, (10) becoming (also translated as *existence*), (11) birth, (12) ageing and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, suffering and despair. Please see e.g. '*Mahānidāna Sutta*' ('Great Causation Sutta' D.ii.2), or '*Tiṭṭhāyatana Sutta*' ('Sectarian Doctrines Sutta' A.III.II.ii.1) quoted 'Introduction' p.25

<sup>2</sup> Please see footnote 1, p.226.



The defilements round is the cause for the kamma round, which is the cause for the results round, which is, in other words, birth, ageing and death (the eleventh and twelfth factors). The discernment of dependent-origination involves seeing this sequence of rounds, and starts with discernment of the past.

### How You Discern Your Past

To discern the past, you begin by making an offering of either candles, flowers, or incense at a pagoda, or to a Buddha image. You should make a wish for the rebirth you desire, for example, to become a monk, nun, man, woman, or deva.

Afterwards, you should go and sit in meditation, develop concentration, and discern in turn internal and external mentality-materiality (*nāma-rūpa*). This is necessary, because if you cannot discern external mentality-materiality, you will have great difficulty discerning past mentality-materiality. That is because the discernment of past mentality-materiality is similar to the discernment of external mentality-materiality.

Then you should discern the mentality-materiality that occurred when you made the offering at the pagoda or Buddha image, as if they were external objects. When doing this, an image of yourself at the time of offering will appear: you should discern the four elements in that image.

When the image breaks into *rūpa-kalāpas*, discern all the material elements of the six doors, especially the fifty-four elements in the heart-base.<sup>1</sup> You will then be able to discern the bhavaiga-consciousnesses, and the many mind-door cognitive-processes that arise in-between. You should look among those many mind-door cognitive-processes, searching backwards and forwards, until you find the defilements round (*kilesavajña*) mind-door cognitive-process with twenty mental formations in each impulsion consciousness-moment, and kamma-round (*kammavajña*) mind-door

<sup>1</sup> For how you do this, please see above Talk IV, 'How You Discern Materiality'.

cognitive-process (*manodvāra vīthi*) with thirty-four mental formations in each impulsion consciousness-moment.

Let us illustrate with a practical example: the case of making an offering of candles, flowers, or incense to a Buddha image, and making a wish to be reborn to become a monk.

In this case,

- ignorance is to deludedly think that 'a monk' truly exists;
- craving is the desire and longing for life as a monk; and
- clinging is the attachment to life as a monk.

These three, ignorance, craving, and clinging, are all found in the consciousnesses that make up the defilements round (*kilesavajña*).

If, you had instead made a wish to be reborn to become a woman, then

- ignorance would be to deludedly think that a woman truly exists;
- craving would be the desire and longing for life as a woman; and
- clinging would be the attachment to life as a woman.

In the examples, volitional formations (*saṅkhāra*) are the wholesome intentions (*kusala cetanā*) of the offering, and kamma is their kammic force. Both are found in the consciousnesses that make up the kamma round (*kamma vajña*) of dependent-origination.

When you are thus able to discern the mentality-materiality of the defilements round and kamma round of the recent past, you should go back to the more distant past, to some time previous to the offering, and in the same way discern the mentality-materiality. Then go back a little further again, and repeat the process. In this way, you discern the mentality-materiality of one day ago, one week ago, one month ago, one year ago, two years ago, three years ago and so on. Eventually you will be able to discern right back to the mentality-materiality of the rebirth-linking conscious-

ness (*paṭisandhi citta*) that arose at the conception of your present life.<sup>1</sup>

When looking for the causes of conception, you go back even further, and see either the mentality-materiality of the time near death in your previous life, or the object of the near-death impulsion-consciousness (*maraṇāsanna javana-citta*).

There are three possible objects for the near-death impulsion-consciousness:

1. Kamma..... :  
Again having the thoughts that produced a particular good or bad action in the past, for example, an offering or killing.
2. Kamma sign .....(*kamma nimitta*)  
For example, a pagoda, a monk, flowers, or an object offered.
3. Rebirth sign ..... (*gati nimitta*)  
The place where you will be reborn (your destination). For a human rebirth it is the future mother's womb, and is usually red like a red carpet.

The object appears because of the kammic force that produced the rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*).<sup>2</sup> When you discern this, you will be able to discern also the volitional formations and kamma that produced the resultant (*vipāka*) aggregates of this life, and the preceding ignorance, craving, and clinging.<sup>3</sup> After that, you should discern the other mental formations of that kamma round and defilements round.

<sup>1</sup> In the five-aggregates realm, mentality-materiality arises dependent on consciousness, and vice-versa. Please see p.6

<sup>2</sup> Please see also Answer 3.12, p.127

<sup>3</sup> There are also so-called non-resultant (*avipāka*) aggregates: they are the product (*phala*) of a cause (*hetu*), as in, for example, consciousness-produced materiality, which is not the product of kamma.

## Examples

### What a Female Yogi Discerned

To make this clearer, let us give an example of what one yogi was able to discern. When she discerned the mentality-materiality at the time near death, she saw the kamma of a woman offering fruit to a Buddhist monk. Then, beginning with the four elements, she examined further the mentality-materiality of that woman. She found that the woman was a very poor and uneducated villager, who had reflected on her state of suffering, and had made an offering to the monk, with the wish for life as an educated woman in a large town.

In this case,

- ignorance (*avijjā*) is to deludedly think that an educated woman in a large town truly exists;
- the desire and longing for life as an educated woman is craving (*taṇhā*);
- the attachment to life as an educated woman is clinging (*upādāna*);
- the wholesome intentions (*kusala cetanā*) to offer fruit to a Buddhist monk are volitional formations (*saikhārā*), and
- the kamma is their kammic force.

In this life the yogi is an educated woman in a large town in Myanmar. She was able (with right view) to discern directly how the kammic force of offering fruit in her past life produced the resultant five aggregates of this life.

The ability to discern causes and effects in this way is called the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha nāṇa*).

### What a Male Yogi Discerned

Here is a slightly different example. A man discerned that around the time of the near death impulsion (*maraṇāsanna javana-citta*), there were four competing kammās. One was the kamma of teaching Buddhist texts, another teaching dhamma, another prac-

tising meditation, and finally one teaching meditation. When he investigated which of the four kammās had produced the resultant five aggregates of this life, he found it was the kamma of practising meditation. When he investigated further (to discern which meditation subject had been practised) he saw it was Vipassanā meditation, seeing the three characteristics, impermanence (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*) in mentality-materiality. With further investigation, he saw that before and after each meditation sitting, he had made the wish to be reborn as a human male, to become a monk, and be a monk who disseminates The Buddha's teachings.

In this case,

- ignorance is to deludedly think that a man, a monk, or a monk who disseminates The Buddha's teachings is an ultimate reality;
- craving is the desire and longing for it, and
- clinging is the attachment to it;
- volitional formations are the acts of practising Vipassanā meditation, and
- the kamma is their kammic force.

### How You Discern More Past Lives

When you are able to discern your immediate past life in this way, and are able to see the five causes in the past life, ignorance, craving, clinging, volitional formations, and kamma, and their five results in the present life, the rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*), mentality-materiality, the six sense-bases, contact, and feeling, you need in the same way to discern progressively back to the second, third, fourth, and as many lives back as you can.

Should you discern a past- or future life in the brahma realm, you will see only three sense-bases, eye, ear and mind, in contrast to the six sense-bases that you see in the human-, and deva realms.

### How You Discern Your Future

Once the power of this insight-knowledge has been developed (by discerning the causes and effects through those past lives), you can, in the same way, discern the causes and effects in future lives. The future you will see, and which may still change, is the result of both past and present causes, one of which is the meditation you are doing.<sup>1</sup> To discern the future, you begin by discerning the present mentality-materiality, and then look into the future until the time of death in this life. Then either the kamma, kamma sign, or rebirth sign will appear, because of the force of a particular kamma you performed in this life. You will then be able to discern the rebirth-linking mentality-materiality (*paṭisandhināmarūpa*) that will be produced in the future life.<sup>2</sup>

You must discern as many lives into the future as it takes till ignorance ceases without remainder. This happens with the attainment of the arahant path (*arahatta magga*), that is, your own attainment of arahantship. You should then continue discerning into the future, until you see that the five aggregates, mentality-materiality, cease without remainder, that is, at the end of the arahant life, at your own Parinibbāna. You will thus have seen that with the cessation of ignorance, mentality-materiality cease. You will have seen the complete cessation of phenomena (*dhamma*), that is, no further rebirth.

Discerning, in this way, the five aggregates of the past, present, and future, and also discerning their causal relation, is what we call the fifth method; taught by the Venerable Sāriputta. Having completed it, you can now learn what we call the first method, the one taught by The Buddha.

---

<sup>1</sup> For how the future can change, please see further p.30f

<sup>2</sup> Rebirth (*jāti*) is the manifestation of the aggregates, which is also mentality-materiality. For details, please Vs.xvii 'Paṇṇā Bhūmi Niddesa' ('Description of the Soil in Which Understanding Grows' N218ff)

### The First Method

The first method<sup>1</sup> of discerning dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*) goes over three lives, and in forward order. It begins with the causes in the past life, that is, ignorance and volitional formations. They cause the results in the present life: the resultant consciousnesses (beginning with the rebirth-linking consciousness),<sup>2</sup> mentality-materiality, the six sense-bases, contact, and feeling. There are then the causes in this life, craving, clinging, and becoming, which cause the results of birth, ageing, death, and all forms of suffering in the future life.

You have to look for ignorance, craving and clinging in the defilement round, see how it causes the kamma round, and how the kammic force of the kamma round in turn causes the five aggregates at conception, and in the course of existence.

That concludes our brief explanation of how to discern dependent-origination according to the fifth- and first methods. There are many more details that you can learn by practising with a proper teacher.

When you have fully discerned the causes of mentality-materiality in the past, present, and future, you will have completed the second insight-knowledge, the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*).

---

<sup>1</sup> Please see 'Mahānidāna Sutta' ('Great Causation Sutta' D.ii.2); 'Nidāna Vagga' ('Causation Section' S.II)

<sup>2</sup> As an example of this, the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw mentions The Buddha's back-pain (painful body-consciousness), which arose from past unwholesome kamma; please see below p.297.

## Questions and Answers 6

**Question 6.1** How should a yogi who practises *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), but who cannot see a nimitta, check himself physically and mentally, so that he can improve and enter jhāna? In other words, what are the conditions needed to have a nimitta?

**Answer 6.1** Constant practice is necessary in all types of meditation. In *ānāpānasati* you should be mindful of the breath in every bodily posture, and be so with respect. Walking, standing or sitting, take no objects apart from the breath: you should watch only the breath. Try to stop thinking; try to stop talking. If you try continuously in this way, your concentration will slowly improve. Only deep, strong and powerful concentration can produce a nimitta. Without a nimitta, especially the paṭibhāga-nimitta, one cannot attain jhāna, because the *ānāpānā* jhāna's object is the *ānāpānā* paṭibhāga-nimitta.

**Question 6.2** Does the sitting posture affect the ability for beginners to concentrate, and enter jhāna? There are many yogis who sit on a small stool to meditate; can they enter jhāna?

**Answer 6.2** The sitting posture is best for beginners. But those who have enough pāramīs in *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) can enter jhāna in any posture. A skilled yogi too can enter jhāna in any posture. So they can go into jhāna sitting on a stool or chair.

The Venerable Sāriputta and the Venerable Subhūti are examples of this. The Venerable Sāriputta was expert in the attainment of cessation (*nirodha samāpatti*).<sup>1</sup> When he went for alms in the village, he always entered the attainment of cessation at every house, before accepting their offerings. He accepted the offerings only after having emerged from the attainment of cessation. That was his nature.

<sup>1</sup> For details regarding this attainment, please see p.217

The Venerable Subhūti was expert in lovingkindness meditation. He entered the lovingkindness jhāna also at every house before accepting the offerings. After emerging from the lovingkindness jhāna he accepted the offerings. Why did they do this? They wanted the donor to get the maximum benefit. They knew that if they did this, immeasurable and superior wholesome kamma would occur in the donor's cognitive-process. They had such lovingkindness for the donors to want to do this. Thus they were able to enter an attainment while in the standing posture. You should think about *ānāpānā* jhāna in the same way.

**Question 6.3** What is the object of the fourth *ānāpānā* jhāna? If there is no breath in the fourth jhāna, how can there be a nimitta?

**Answer 6.3** There is still a paṭibhāga-nimitta in the fourth *ānāpānā* jhāna, although there is no in-and-out-breath. That *ānāpānā* paṭibhāga-nimitta arose from the ordinary, natural breath. This is why the object is still the in-and-out-breath (*assāsa-passāsa*). It is explained in the *Visuddhi Magga* sub-commentary.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 6.4** Can one enter an immaterial jhāna attainment (*arūpa jhāna samāpatti*), or practise lovingkindness meditation directly from *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing)?

**Answer 6.4** One cannot enter an immaterial jhāna attainment directly from the fourth *ānāpānā* jhāna. Why not? Immaterial jhānas, especially the base of boundless-space jhāna (*ākāśānañcāyatana jhāna*), are attained by removing a kasiṇa object. After removing the kasiṇa object and concentrating on the space (*ākāsa*) left behind, the object of the base of boundless-space jhāna will appear. When one sees the space, one must extend it gradually, and when it extends in every direction, the kasiṇa object will have disappeared. One must extend the space further out to the boundless universe. That is the object of the base of boundless-space

<sup>1</sup> In this case, the *ānāpāna*-nimitta which arises depending on the ordinary, natural breath is also said to be as *assāsa-passāsa* (in-and-out breath). (*Assāsa-passāsa nissāya uppannamittampettha assāsa-passāsa sāmāññameva vuttam.*) (VṣTi.viii 'Ānāpānasati Kathā B215' 'Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation').

jhāna, which in its turn is the object of the base of boundless consciousness jhāna (*viññāṇāñcāyatana jhāna*). The absence of the base of boundless-space jhāna is the object of the base of nothingness jhāna (*ākāśaññāyatana jhāna*), which is finally the object of the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception jhāna (*neva-saññā-nā-saññāyatana jhāna*). So the four immaterial jhānas are based on a fourth kasiṇa jhāna, and its object. Without removing the kasiṇa one cannot go to the immaterial jhānas. So if a yogi practises *ānāpānasati* up to the fourth jhāna, and then wants to go to immaterial jhānas, he should first practise the ten kasiṇas up to the fourth jhāna. Only then can he go on to the immaterial jhāna.<sup>1</sup>

If he wants to practise lovingkindness meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*) from the fourth ānāpānā jhāna he can do so; no problem. He must see the person who is the object of lovingkindness with the light of the fourth ānāpānā jhāna. If his light is not strong enough it may be a little bit problematic. But that is exceptional. If after the fourth kasiṇa jhāna, especially the fourth white kasiṇa jhāna, he practises lovingkindness he may succeed quickly. That is why we teach white kasiṇa meditation before lovingkindness meditation.<sup>2</sup>

**Question 6.5** How can one decide when to die, that is, choose the time of one's death?

**Answer 6.5** If you have practised *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) up to the arahant path, you can know the exact time of your Parinibbāna. The *Visuddhi Magga* mentions a Mahāthera who attained Parinibbāna while walking.<sup>3</sup> First he drew a line on his walking path, and then told his fellow-bhikkhus that he would attain Parinibbāna when reaching that line, and it happened exactly as he had said. Those who are not arahants can also know their life span if they have practised dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*), the relationship between causes and effects of the past, present and future, but not exactly like the Mahāthera just

<sup>1</sup> For details regarding how you develop the immaterial jhānas, please see p.79ff

<sup>2</sup> For details in this regard, please see Answer 2.2., p.90

<sup>3</sup> Vs.viii 'Ānāpānasati Kathā B238' 'Mindfulness-of-Breathing Explanation' Ṇ244

mentioned. They do not know the exact time, maybe only the period in which they will die.

But these people do not die and attain Parinibbāna according to their own wish: it is according to the law of kamma. There is a stanza uttered by the Venerable Sāriputta:<sup>1</sup>

*Nābhinandāmi jvitaṃ, nābhinandāmi maraṇaṃ;*

*kālañca paṭikañkhāmi, nibbisam bhatako yathā.*

(I do not love life, I do not love death;

I await the time of Parinibbāna, like a government servant who waits for pay-day.)

To die when one has desired to do so is called 'death by desire' (*adhimutti maraṇa*). This can usually be done by matured bodhisattas only. Why do they do so? When they are reborn in the celestial realms, where there is no opportunity to develop their pāramī s, they do not want to waste time, so sometimes they decide to die, and take rebirth in the human world, to develop their pāramī s.

**Question 6.6** If one day we were to die in an accident, for example in an air crash, could our mind at that time 'leave' so that we would not have any bodily pain? How? Can one, depending on the power of one's meditation, be without fear at that time, and be liberated? What degree of concentration is required?

**Answer 6.6** The degree of concentration required is that of the psychic power of supernormal powers (*iddhividha abhiññā*). With those powers you can escape from danger, but not if you have a matured unwholesome kamma ready to produce its result. You should remember the case of Venerable Mahāmogallāna. He was expert in psychic powers, but on the day when his unwholesome kamma matured he could not enter jhāna. This was not because of defilements or hindrances: it was only because of his matured unwholesome kamma. That is why the bandits were able to crush his bones to the size of rice grains.<sup>2</sup> Thinking he was

<sup>1</sup> *Theragāthā*.XVII.2 (v.1002)'Sāriputtattheragāthā' ('Venerable Sāriputta Verses');

<sup>2</sup> For details, please see 224

dead, the bandits left, and only then could he enter jhāna again, and regain his psychic powers. He made a determination (*adhī-tthāna*) that his body should become whole again, and then went to request The Buddha for permission to attain Parinibbāna. Then he returned to his Kalasī la Monastery, and attained Parinibbāna there. His matured unwholesome kamma first produced its result, after which it lost its power, and only then could he regain his psychic powers.

Thus, if you have no unwholesome kamma about to mature, and have psychic powers, you can escape from an air crash. But ordinary jhāna concentration and insight-knowledge, cannot save you from such danger. We can in fact say that the reason why one meets with this type of accident in the first place may be that one's unwholesome kamma is about to mature.

The mind cannot leave the body, because the mind arises dependent upon one of the six-bases. The six-bases are the eye-base, the ear-base, the nose-base, the tongue-base, the body-base and the heart-base. These six bases are in your body. A mind cannot arise in this human world without a base. That is why the mind cannot leave the body.<sup>1</sup>

We can, however, suggest that if you have jhāna, you should at the time of danger quickly enter jhāna. That means you need to have fully developed the mastery of entering jhāna. If you enter jhāna at the time of danger, then that wholesome kamma may save you, but we cannot say for sure. If you are in jhāna at the moment of death, you may go up to one of the brahma realms.

If you are skilled at Vipassanā, then you should practise it at the time of danger. You should discern the impermanent (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*) nature of formations (*saṅkhāra dhamma*). If you can practise Vipassanā thoroughly before death takes place, you may attain one of the paths (*magga*) and fruitions (*phala*), and reach a happy realm after death. But if you attain arahantship, you attain Parinibbāna. Should you, however, not have

<sup>1</sup> For the dependence between mind and body (mentality-materiality), please see also p.6

psychic powers, nor jhāna, nor be able to practise Vipassanā, you may still escape, due to good kamma alone. If you have good enough kamma, which ensures a long life, there may also be a chance to escape from this danger, just like Mahājanaka bodhisatta. He was the only person to survive a shipwreck. After swimming for seven days and seven nights, he was eventually saved by a deva.

**Question 6.7** After attaining the path and fruition, a noble one (*ariya*) does not regress to become a worldling (*puthujjana*), this is a law of nature (*sammatta niyāma*). Similarly, one who has received a definite prophecy cannot abandon his bodhisatta practice. This too is a natural law. But The Buddha declared that everything is impermanent<sup>1</sup>. Are these fixed laws in accordance with the law of impermanence?

**Answer 6.7** Here you should understand what is fixed and what is permanent. The law of kamma says unwholesome kammās (*akusala kamma*) produce bad results, and wholesome kammās (*kusala kamma*) produce good results. This is the natural law of kamma (*kamma niyāma*). Does that mean that the wholesome and unwholesome kammās are permanent (*nicca*)? Please think about it.

If the wholesome kammās are permanent then consider this: Now you are listening to Dhamma concerning The Buddha Abhidhamma. This is called wholesome kamma of listening to Dhamma (*Dhammasāvana kusala kamma*). Is it permanent? Please think about it.

If it were permanent, then during your whole life you would have only this kamma, no other. Do you understand? Wholesome kammās produce good results and unwholesome kammās produce bad results. This is a natural law, but it does not mean that the kammās are permanent. Wholesome intentions (*kusala cetanā*) and unwholesome intentions (*akusala cetanā*) are kamma. As soon as they arise they pass away; they are impermanent. That is their nature.

<sup>1</sup> The Buddha did not say: 'Everything is impermanent'; He said: All formations are impermanent. (Dhp. v.277)

But the force of kamma, the capacity to produce the results of kammās, still exists in the mentality-materiality process.

Suppose there is a mango tree. Now there is no fruit on the tree, but it is certain that one day it will bear fruit. This is a natural law. You could say the capacity to produce fruit exists in the tree. What is that capacity? If we study the leaves, branches, bark and stems we cannot see it, but that does not mean it does not exist, because one day that tree will produce fruit. In the same way we do not say wholesome and unwholesome kammās are permanent. We say the force of kamma exists in the mentality-materiality process as a capacity, and that one day, when the force matures, it produces its result.

Let us now discuss the natural fixed law, the law of nature (*sammatta niyāma*). We say path and fruition dhammas are dhammas of a natural law, but we do not say they are permanent (*nicca*). They are also impermanent (*anicca*), but the force of Path Knowledge exists in the mentality-materiality process of those who have attained a path, fruition, and Nibbāna. That force exists because of a natural fixed law, and has a natural result. For example, the force of the Stream-Entry Path (*Sotāpatti magga*) results in the Stream-Entry Fruition (*Sotāpatti phala*), and is a contributing cause for higher and higher fruits. But it cannot result in lower fruits. This is also a law of nature.

Here you should think about this: to attain arahantship is not easy. You have to practise with great effort: strong and powerful perseverance is necessary. For example, in his last life our Sakyamuni bodhisatta practised very hard (for over six years) to attain arahantship associated with Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbaññuta ñāṇa*). You can imagine how hard it was. So if after attaining arahantship with enormous difficulty, he became a worldling (*puthujjana*) again, what would be the fruit of the practice? You should think about this carefully.

In this connection, let us look at when a bodhisatta can receive a definite prophecy.<sup>1</sup>

*Manussattaṃ liṅgasampatti, hetu sathāradassanaṃ;  
Pabbājī gūṇasampatti, adhikāro ca chandatā;  
Aṭṭhadhammasamodhānā abhinīhāro samijjhatī.*

He can receive a definite prophecy when the following eight conditions are fulfilled:

1. *Manussattaṃ*: he is a human being.
2. *Liṅgasampatti*: he is a male.
3. *Hetu* (cause or root): he has sufficient pāramī s to attain arahantship while listening to a Buddha utter a short stanza related to the Four Noble Truths. That means, he must have practised Vipassanā thoroughly up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations (*saṅkhārupekkhā ñāṇa*).
4. *Sathāradassanaṃ* (sight of the Master): he meets a Buddha.
5. *Pabbājī* (going forth): he has gone forth as a hermit or bhikkhu, and has strong and firm faith in the law of kamma.
6. *Gūṇasampatti* (possession of qualities): he has acquired the eight attainments (*samāpatti*) and five mundane psychic powers (*abhiññāṇa*).
7. *Adhikāro* (extreme dedication): he has sufficient pāramī s to receive a definite prophecy from a Buddha. That means he must in previous lives have practised the pāramī s necessary for attaining Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbaññuta ñāṇa*). In other words, he must have sowed the seeds of knowledge (*vijjā*) and conduct (*carāṇa*) for Omniscient Knowledge in a previous Buddha's dispensation. According to the 'Yasodharā Apadāna', the future prince Siddhattha had made the wish to attain (and the future princess Yasodharā had made the wish for him to attain) Omniscient Knowledge in the presence of many billions of Buddhas, and had developed all the pāramī s under their guidance. And one way in which he developed his pāramī s was to make a bridge of himself for Dī paṅkara Buddha and a hundred thousand bhikkhus to cross, knowing that this act would cost him his life.

<sup>1</sup> *Buddhavaṃsa*.ii.59 'Sumedha-patthanā Kathā' (Chronicle of Buddhas: 'Sumedha's Aspirations Explanation')



8. *Chandata* (strong desire): he has a sufficiently strong desire to attain Omniscient Knowledge. How strong is that desire? Suppose the whole world were burning charcoal. If someone told him that he would attain Omniscient Knowledge by crossing the burning charcoal from one end to the other, he would go across the burning charcoal without hesitation. Here we ask you: Would you go across that burning charcoal? If not the whole world, then if just from Taiwan to Pa-Auk it were all burning charcoal, would you go across it? If it were certain that one could attain Omniscient Knowledge that way, the bodhisatta would go across that burning charcoal. That is the strength of his desire for Omniscient Knowledge.

If these eight factors are present in a bodhisatta he will certainly receive a definite prophecy from a Buddha. They were present in our Sakyamuni bodhisatta, when he was the hermit Sumedha, at the time of Dī paṅkara Buddha. That is why he received a definite prophecy from Dī paṅkara Buddha with the words:<sup>1</sup>

**You shall attain Omniscient Knowledge after four incalculables (*asaṅkhyeyya*) and a hundred thousand aeons (*kappa*), and shall bear the name of Gotama.**

Now, what does it mean that the prophecy is ‘definite’? It is definite because it cannot be changed. That does not mean it is permanent. Dī paṅkara Buddha’s mentality-materiality were impermanent. Sumedha’s mentality-materiality were also impermanent. This is a fact, but the force of kamma, especially the kammic force of his pāramī s, could not perish so long as he has not attained Omniscient Knowledge. Dī paṅkara Buddha’s words, that is the definite prophecy, also could not be changed, and could not be false. If those words were changed so that the definite prophecy was not true, then there would be another problem, namely that a Buddha would have uttered false speech. A Buddha gives a definite prophecy only when he sees that the above eight condi-

<sup>1</sup> *ibid.*

tions have been fulfilled. For example, if a person skilled in agriculture saw a banana tree that was under the right conditions, he would be able to tell you that the tree was going to bear fruit in four months. Why? Because he was skilled in agriculture, and he saw flowers and small leaves growing out from the tree. In the same way, when someone has fulfilled the eight conditions, a Buddha can see that he will attain the fruit of Omniscient Knowledge, which is why he makes a definite prophecy.

At the time of Dī paṅkara Buddha, our Sakyamuni Bodhisatta was the hermit Sumedha, a worldling (*puṭhujjana*). As Prince Siddhattha, before attaining enlightenment he was still a worldling. Only after his enlightenment did he become Sakyamuni Buddha. After attaining the arahant path associated with Omniscient Knowledge, he could not change his arahant path; this is a natural fixed law (*sammatta niyāma*). Here fixed law means that the result of that arahant path cannot change. This does not mean that the arahant path is permanent. It means that its result comes because of a force of kamma that cannot change. What does this mean exactly? It means that it is certain the arahant path will produce arahant fruition, and certain that it will destroy all the defilements, all the unwholesome kamma and all the wholesome kamma, which would otherwise have produced their result after the Parinibbāna. This law of kamma is called a natural fixed law and cannot be changed. So a natural fixed law and a definite prophecy are not contrary to the law of impermanence.

Here again, a further comment is necessary. Making an aspiration or wish alone is not enough to attain Omniscient Knowledge. When bodhisattas receive a definite prophecy, the eight conditions must already be fulfilled. Moreover, a definite prophecy alone cannot produce Buddhahood. Even after the definite prophecy, they must continue to develop the ten pāramī s on the three levels:

1. The ten basic pāramī s<sup>1</sup> ..... (pāramī)  
Giving up their sons, daughters, wives and external property.
2. The ten medium pāramī s ..... (upapāramī)  
Giving up their limbs and organs, such as eyes and hands.
3. The ten superior pāramī s ..... (paramattha pāramī)  
Giving up their life.

Altogether there are thirty pāramī s. If we summarize them we have just:

1. Giving ..... (dāna)
2. Morality ..... (sīla)
3. Mental cultivation ..... (bhāvanā)  
Samatha and Vipassanā.

They are superior wholesome kammās. Bodhisattas must perfect them by giving up animate and inanimate property, their limbs, and their lives. If you believe you are a bodhisatta, can you and will you perfect these pāramī s? If you can, and if you also have received a definite prophecy from a Buddha, then you shall one day attain Omniscient Knowledge. But according to the Theravāda teachings, only one Buddha can appear at one given time. And for how long must they perfect their pāramī s? After he had received his definite prophecy, our Sakyamuni Bodhisatta developed the pāramī s for four incalculables and a hundred thousand aeons. This is the shortest time. But we cannot say exactly how long it takes prior to the definite prophecy. So you should remember: making an aspiration or wish alone, is not enough to become a Buddha.

**Question 6.8** When an ordinary disciple has practised Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition, the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, or the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, he will not be reborn in any of the four woeful realms. Even if he loses his Samatha-

<sup>1</sup> For a list of the ten pāramīs, please see Answer 4.1 ,p.175

Vipassanā due to negligence, the kamma of having practised Samatha-Vipassanā still exists. The ‘*Sotānugata Sutta*’ says also that he will attain Nibbāna quickly.<sup>1</sup> So, why did the Sayadaw, in the Question-and-Answer session of June 2nd, say that a bodhisatta who has received a definite prophecy from a Buddha can, even if he has practised meditation up to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, be reborn in a woeful state?<sup>2</sup> In which sutta is this mentioned?

**Answer 6.8** This is because the bodhisatta way, and ordinary disciple way are not the same. You can find this in The *Buddhavaṇṇa* and *Cariyapīṭṭaka* Pāḷi Texts.

How are the two ways different? Although a bodhisatta has received a definite prophecy from a Buddha, his pāramī s have at that time not yet matured for him to attain Omniscient Knowledge. He must cultivate his pāramī s further. For example, after receiving the definite prophecy from Dīpaṅkara Buddha, our Sakyamuni Bodhisatta had to continue cultivating his pāramī s for four incalculables and a hundred thousand aeons. Between the definite prophecy and the penultimate life, a bodhisatta is sometimes reborn in the animal kingdom, because of previous unwholesome kamma. At this time he is still unable to totally destroy that unwholesome kammic force. So when those unwholesome kammās mature, he cannot escape their results. This is a law of nature.

But ordinary disciples, who have attained the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition, the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, or the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations, have pāramī s mature enough to attain the Path Knowledge and Fruition Knowledge. For this reason, they attain path and fruition, that is, see Nibbāna, in this life or in their subsequent future life. This is also a law of nature.

<sup>1</sup> A.IV.IV.v.1 ‘*Sotānugata Sutta*’ (‘One Who Has Heard Sutta’). Mentioned p. 124 and 183

<sup>2</sup> Please see Answer 4.3, p.179

**Question 6.9** An arahant can also give a definite prophecy; what is the definition of definite prophecy here? In which sutta or other source can this information be found?

**Answer 6.9** For that please refer to *The Buddhavaṃsa Pāḷi* (*Chronicle of Buddhas*) and *Apadāna Pāḷi* (*Valorous Deeds*). But only arahants who possess particularly the Knowledge of Discerning the Future (*anāgataṃsa ñāṇa*), a power secondary to the divine eye (*dibba cakkhu*), can give a definite prophecy. And they can see only a limited number of lives into the future, and not many incalculables (*asaikhyeyya*), or aeons (*kappa*), as can a Buddha.

**Question 6.10** Can one practise Vipassanā while in the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception attainment (*nevasaññā-nāsaññāyatana samāpatti*)? In which sutta or other source can the answer be found?

**Answer 6.10** One cannot practise Vipassanā while in any jhāna attainment, and the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception is a jhāna. Why? Because in developing Vipassanā, we do usually not use the same objects as we use for developing jhāna.<sup>1</sup> Also, jhāna we develop by concentrating on one and the same object (e.g. the ānāpāna-, or kasiṇa-nimitta), whereas Vipassanā we develop by examining different objects. For example, the object of the ānāpāna-jhānas is the ānāpāna paṭibhāga-nimitta: a concept, not ultimate reality. But the object of Vipassanā is not a concept; it is ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes, including the jhāna dhammas (e.g. the thirty-four mental formations of the first jhāna, the thirty-two mental formations of the second jhāna, the thirty-one mental formations of the third, fourth and immaterial jhanās).<sup>2</sup>

Only after having emerged from the jhāna can one practise Vipassanā meditation on, for example, the jhāna-consciousness and

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions are, for example, the second and fourth immaterial jhānas, when you concentrate on the consciousness of the preceding immaterial jhāna (not a concept). For details, please see above 'The Four Immaterial Jhānas', p.79.

<sup>2</sup> For how you discern jhāna cognitive processes, please see above p.201.

its associated mental factors, in this case the thirty-one mental formations. It is mentioned in the '*Anupada Sutta*' in the *Majjhima Nikāya*.<sup>1</sup> There The Buddha describes in detail the Venerable Sāriputta's meditation in the fifteen days after he had attained stream-entry.

The Venerable Sāriputta entered, for example, the first jhāna. He emerged from it, and discerned the thirty-four first-jhāna mental formations, one by one, as impermanence, suffering, and non-self, by seeing their arising-, static- and passing-away stages. He discerned in this manner up to the base of nothingness jhāna. This is Vipassanā of Individual dhammas (*anupadadhamma vipassanā*), in which the mental formations are discerned one by one. But when he reached the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception, he could discern only the mental formations as a group. This is Vipassanā of Comprehension in Groups (*kalāpa sammāsana vipassanā*). Only a Buddha can discern the mental formations of the base of neither-perception-nor-non-perception one by one. Because they are extremely subtle, even a Chief Disciple like the Venerable Sāriputta cannot discern them one by one.<sup>2</sup>

**Question 6.11** Can a person who is mentally abnormal, hears voices, has schizophrenia, a brain disease, stroke or malfunction of the brain and nerves, practise this type of meditation? If he can, what kinds of precaution should he take?

**Answer 6.11** Such people can practise this type of meditation, but usually they do not succeed, because they cannot concentrate long enough. By 'long enough' is meant that when one's concentration is strong and powerful, it must be maintained for many hours, and many sittings. Usually, such people's concentration is inconstant. This is a problem. They may succeed, if they can maintain their concentration over many successive sittings, over many days or many months.

<sup>1</sup> M.III.ii.1 '*Anupada Sutta*' ('One by One Sutta'), mentioned also in connection with insight into only feeling, Answer 4.6, p.186.

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.*A.

There is a famous example: the case of Paṭ ācārā. Her husband, two children, parents, and brothers all died on the same day. She went mad with grief, and wandered about with no clothes on. One day she came to the Jetavana monastery in Sāvatti where The Buddha was teaching Dhamma. Her pāramī s of previous lives were ready to mature. Due to this, as well as to the lovingkindness and compassion of The Buddha, she was able to listen to the Dhamma with respect.

Slowly her mind became quiet, and she understood the Dhamma. Very soon she became a stream-enterer (*sotāpanna*). She ordained as a bhikkhunī , and continued her meditation. She could maintain her concentration and insight-knowledge, and one day her meditation matured. She became an arahant with the five mundane psychic powers, and Four Analytical Knowledges.<sup>1</sup> Of the bhikkhunī s who were expert in the monastic rule, she was first. She observed the rule very strictly, and learnt it by heart, including the commentaries.

She had been developing her pāramī s from Padumuttara Buddha's dispensation till Kassapa Buddha's dispensation, and particularly during Kassapa Buddha's dispensation. At that time she was the daughter of a King Kikī . She practised *komāri brahmacariya* for twenty thousand years. *Komāri brahmacariya* is to observe the five precepts, but in place of the ordinary precept of abstinence from sexual misconduct, complete chastity is observed. She cultivated the three trainings, morality (*sīla*), concentration (*samādhi*), and wisdom (*paññā*), as a lay devotee, for twenty-thousand years. Those pāramī s matured in Gotama Buddha's dispensation. So, although she had gone mad, she was able to regain her mind, practise the three trainings well, and became an arahant.

When they practise meditation, such people need *kalyāna mitta*, which is good teachers, good friends, and spiritual friends. Proper medicine and proper food also helps. From our experience, we

<sup>1</sup> For the Four Analytical Knowledges, please see Answer 4.2, p.177

know that most of them cannot maintain their concentration for a long time. Usually they do not succeed.

**Question 6.12** If a person, who does not have good human relations, succeeds in attaining the fourth jhāna, will this improve his skill in communicating with others? Can attaining jhāna correct such problems?

**Answer 6.12** These problems occur usually because of hatred (*dosa*). It is one of the hindrances. As long as a person is unable to change this attitude, he cannot attain jhāna. But if he can remove this attitude, he can attain not only jhāna, but also the paths and fruitions up to arahantship. A famous example is the Venerable Channa Thera. He was born on the same day as our bodhisatta, in the palace of King Suddhodana in Kapilavatthu. He was the son of one of King Suddhodana's female slaves. He became one of the bodhisatta prince Siddhattha's playmates, when they were young. This gave later rise to much conceit in him. He thought things like: 'This is my King; The Buddha was my playmate; the Dhamma is our Dhamma; when he renounced the world, I followed him up to the bank of the Anomā River. No one else did. Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna etc. are flowers that blossomed later, etc.' Because of this, he always used harsh language. He did not show respect to Mahātheras like the Venerable Sāriputta, the Venerable Mahāmoggallāna and others. So no one had friendly relations with him. He could not attain jhāna or path and fruition in The Buddha's lifetime, because he was unable to remove his conceit and hatred.

On the night of The Buddha's Parinibbāna, The Buddha told the Venerable Ānanda to mete out the noble punishment (*brahmadāṇ a*) on the Venerable Channa. It means that no one was to talk to the Venerable Channa, even if he wanted to. When nobody talked with the Venerable Channa, his conceit and hatred disappeared. This act of the Saṅgha (*saṅgha kamma*) took place in the Ghositārāma monastery in Kosambī , five months after The Buddha's Parinibbāna.

The Venerable left Ghositārāma, and went to the Isipatana monastery in the deer park near Benares. He worked hard on meditation but was, in spite of great effort, not successful. So one day, he went to the Venerable Ānanda and asked him to help him. Why was he not successful? He discerned the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of the five aggregates, but did not discern dependent-origination (*paṭiccasamuppāda*). So the Venerable Ānanda taught him how to discern dependent-origination, and taught him the '*Kaccānagotta Sutta*'.<sup>1</sup> After listening to the Venerable Ānanda's Dhamma talk, the Venerable Channa attained stream-entry. He continued his practice and very soon became an arahant. So if a person can change his bad character, and practise Samatha-Vipassanā in the right way, he can attain jhāna, path and fruition.

---

<sup>1</sup> S.II.1.ii.5 '*Kaccānagotta Sutta*' '*Kaccānagotta Sutta*', and S.III.1.ix.8 '*Channa Sutta*' ('*Channa Sutta*')

## Talk 7

## How You Develop the Insight-Knowledges to See Nibbāna

### Introduction

In the last talk, we discussed briefly how to discern dependent-origination according to the fifth and first methods. Today, we shall discuss briefly how to develop the insight-knowledges to see Nibbāna.

There are sixteen insight-knowledges (*ñāṇa*) that need to be developed progressively in order to see Nibbāna.

The first insight-knowledge is the Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda ñāṇa*). This knowledge was explained when we discussed how to discern mentality and materiality.

The second insight-knowledge is the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*). This knowledge was explained in our last talk, when we discussed how to discern the causes of mentality-materiality in the past, present, and future, which is to discern dependent-origination.

After you have developed those two knowledges, you need to complete them, by again discerning all mentality, all materiality, and all the factors of dependent-origination, according to their individual characteristic, function, manifestation, and proximate cause. It is not really possible to explain this in a brief way, so it is best to learn the details at the time of actually practising.

Now let us look briefly the remaining knowledges.

### How You Develop the Knowledge of Comprehension

The third insight-knowledge is the Knowledge of Comprehension (*sammasana ñāṇa*), which is to comprehend formations by categories. To develop it you divide formations into categories:<sup>1</sup>

- Two categories, as mentality and materiality
- Five categories, as the five aggregates<sup>2</sup>
- Twelve categories, as the twelve bases<sup>3</sup>
- Twelve categories, as the twelve factors of dependent-origination<sup>4</sup>
- Eighteen categories, as the eighteen elements<sup>5</sup>

You then see the three characteristics, impermanence (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*) in each category.

For example, in the case of the five categories, The Buddha teaches in the '*Anatta Lakkhaṇa Sutta*'<sup>6</sup> to discern the five aggregates (all materiality, feeling, perception, formations, and consciousness) with right understanding in three ways, as:

1. 'This is not mine' ..... (*netam mama*)
2. 'This I am not' ..... (*nesohamasmī*)
3. 'This is not my self' ..... (*na meso attā*)<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> VsTi.xiv '*Paññā Kathā*' ('Understanding Explanation'), and Vs.xx '*Maggāmagga Ñāṇadassana Visuddhi Niddesa*' B694 ('Description of Purification by Knowledge and Vision of What is the Path, and What Is Not the Path' Ñ9

<sup>2</sup> five aggregates (materiality, feeling, perception, formations, consciousness), please see p.4

<sup>3</sup> twelve bases: eye/sights (1x2), ear/sounds (2x2), nose/odours (3x2), tongue/flavours (4x2), body/touches (5x2), mind/dhammas (6x2). Please see also p.6ff

<sup>4</sup> twelve factors of dependent origination: (1) ignorance, (2) volitional formations, (3) consciousness, (4) mentality-materiality, (5) six sense-bases, (6) contact, (7) feeling, (8) craving, (9) clinging, (10) becoming (also translated as *existence*), (11) birth, (12) ageing and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, suffering and despair.

<sup>5</sup> The twelve bases and their respective six types of consciousness: eye-, ear-, nose-, tongue-, body-, and mind-consciousness (12 + 6 = 18). Please see p.6

<sup>6</sup> S.III.II.i.7 '*Anattalakkhaṇa Sutta*' ('Non-self Characteristic Sutta'), quoted 'Introduction' p.31

<sup>7</sup> The commentary to the '*Chammovāda Sutta*' ('Advice to Channa Sutta'; M.III.v.2) explains that 'This is not mine' is a reflection on impermanence; 'This I am not' is a reflection on suffering; 'This is not my self' is a reflection on non-self.

And in the '*Khandha Sutta*', He explains, 'all' as

**past, future, and present; internal and external;  
gross and subtle; inferior and superior; far and near.**<sup>1</sup>

To develop this knowledge, you first re-establish the fourth jhāna. If you, as a pure-insight individual, have developed only the four-elements meditation, you re-establish concentration until the light is bright and strong. In either case, you take materiality as your first category. That is, you discern the real materiality<sup>2</sup> of each of the six sense-doors,<sup>3</sup> see its arising and passing-away, and know it as impermanence (*anicca*). You need to do this internally and externally, alternately, again and again. While doing this externally, you should gradually extend your range of perception from near to far, to the infinite universe.

Then, following the same procedure, see the pain and suffering one has to constantly experience because of that materiality's arising and passing-away, and know it as suffering (*dukkha*). Lastly, see the materiality as devoid of a permanent self, and know it as non-self (*anatta*).

The next category in which you need to see impermanence, suffering and non-self is mentality. First discern all the mentality at the six sense-doors, that is, the consciousness and associated mental factors in each consciousness-moment of each sense-door cognitive-process (*vīthi*), and the bhavaṅga-consciousnesses that occur between them. You follow the procedure is the same as with materiality.

Having seen these two categories (the materiality and mentality of the six sense-doors of the present), you need now to see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the materiality and mentality of this entire life, from the rebirth-linking consciousness up to the death-consciousness. Here again, you see the three charac-

<sup>1</sup> '*Khandha Sutta*' ('Aggregates Sutta') S.III.I.v.6, quoted 'Introduction' p.5

<sup>2</sup> For a list of real materiality, please see Table 1, p.169.

<sup>3</sup> For how you do this, please see p.168

teristics one at a time, again and again, both internally and externally.

After doing this life, you need to see the impermanence, suffering, and non-self of the past, present and future lives that you discerned when discerning dependent-origination. Here too, you see the three characteristics one at a time, internally and externally, again and again, in all materiality and mentality of the past, present, and future.

And then you need also to see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of each of the twelve factors of dependent origination<sup>1</sup> for the past, present and future, according to the first method of dependent origination:<sup>2</sup> one at a time, again and again, internally and externally.

At this stage, you may find that you develop the higher insight-knowledges quickly, stage by stage, up to the attainment of arahantship. If not, there are several exercises to increase your insight.

## How You Increase Your Insight Knowledge

### The Forty Perceptions

The first exercise is to see the impermanent, suffering, and non-self of mentality and materiality, internally and externally, in the past, present, and future according to forty different perceptions (*cattārīsākāra anupassanā*).<sup>3</sup> In Pāḷi they all end with the suffix 'to', so we call them the forty 'to'.

There are ten different perceptions of impermanence:

<sup>1</sup> The twelve factors of dependent origination: (1) ignorance, (2) volitional formations, (3) consciousness, (4) mentality-materiality, (5) six sense-bases, (6) contact, (7) feeling, (8) craving, (9) clinging, (10) becoming (also translated as *existence*), (11) birth, (12) ageing and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, suffering and despair.

<sup>2</sup> For the first method of dependent origination, please see above p.235

<sup>3</sup> Vs.xx '*Maggāmagga Nāṇadassana Visuddhi Niddesa*' B697 ('Description of Purification by Knowledge and Vision of What is the Path, and What Is Not the Path' N18

1. Impermanence ..... (*aniccato*)
2. Disintegrating ..... (*palokato*)
3. Fickle ..... (*calato*)
4. Perishable ..... (*pabhaṅgato*)
5. Unenduring ..... (*addhuvato*)
6. Subject to change ..... (*vipariṇāmadhammato*)
7. Coreless ..... (*asārakato*)
8. Subject to annihilation ..... (*vibhavato*)
9. Subject to death ..... (*maraṇadhammato*)
10. Formed ..... (*saṅkhatato*)

There are twenty-five perceptions of suffering:

1. Suffering ..... (*dukkhato*)
2. A disease ..... (*rogato*)
3. A calamity ..... (*aghato*)
4. A boil ..... (*gaṇḍato*)
5. A dart ..... (*sallato*)
6. An affliction ..... (*ābādhato*)
7. A disaster ..... (*upaddavato*)
8. A terror ..... (*bhayato*)
9. A plague ..... (*īṭito*)
10. A menace ..... (*upasaggato*)
11. No protection ..... (*atāṇato*)
12. No shelter ..... (*aleṇato*)
13. No refuge ..... (*asaraṇato*)
14. Murderous ..... (*vadhakato*)
15. The root of calamity ..... (*aghamaṭṭhato*)
16. A danger ..... (*ādinavato*)
17. Subject to taints ..... (*sāsavato*)
18. Mara's bait ..... (*mārāmisato*)
19. Subject to birth ..... (*jātidhammato*)
20. Subject to ageing ..... (*jarādhammato*)
21. Subject to illness ..... (*byādhidhammato*)
22. Cause of sorrow ..... (*sokadhammato*)
23. Cause of lamentation ..... (*paridevadhammato*)
24. Cause of despair ..... (*upayāsadhammato*)
25. Subject to defilement ..... (*samkilesikadhammato*)

There are five perceptions of non-self:

1. Non-self ..... (*anattato*)
2. Void ..... (*suññato*)
3. Independent ..... (*parato*)
4. Empty ..... (*rittato*)
5. Vain ..... (*tucchato*)

While seeing the forty 'to' in mentality and materiality, internally and externally, in the past, present, and future, some people's insight progresses to the attainment of arahantship.

If not, there are then the exercises called the seven ways for materiality (*rūpa sattaka*), and the seven ways for mentality (*arūpa sattaka*).<sup>1</sup>

### The Seven Ways for Materiality

The materiality you discern in the seven ways for materiality the four types according to origin (kamma-, temperature-, consciousness-, and nutriment-produced materiality).<sup>2</sup>

- (1) In the first of the seven ways for materiality, you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the materiality of this entire lifetime, from rebirth-linking to death, both internally and externally.
- (2) In the second way for materiality you see the the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the materiality of different periods in this lifetime, both internally and externally. You consider this lifetime to be a hundred years, and divide it into three periods of thirty-three years. Then see that the materiality in one period arises and ceases there, and does not pass on to the next period, which means it is impermanent, suffering and non-self. You then divide this lifetime into progressively smaller periods, and do the same. Divide the hundred years of this lifetime into: ten periods of ten years, twenty periods of five years, twenty-five periods of four years, thirty-three periods of three years, fifty periods of two

<sup>1</sup> Vs.xx 'Rūpasattakasammasana Kathā' B706ff, ('Material Septad-Group Explanation' Ñ46ff); 'Arūpasattakasammasana Kathā' B717ff, ('Immaterial Septad-Group Explanation' Ñ76ff)

<sup>2</sup> For details on these four types of materiality, please see above p.135ff



years, and one hundred periods of one year; then three hundred periods of four months, six hundred periods of two months, and two thousand four hundred periods of half-a-month; and finally divide each day into two periods, and then six periods. In each case see that the materiality in one period arises and ceases there, and does not pass on to the next period, which means it is impermanent, suffering and non-self.

You reduce the periods further to the duration of each movement of the body: the periods of going forth and going back, looking ahead and looking away, and bending a limb and stretching a limb. Then you divide each footstep into six periods: lifting, raising, moving forward, lowering, placing and pressing. Again see the impermanence, suffering and non-self in the materiality of each period every day in this hundred-year lifetime.

- (3) In the third way for materiality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of nutriment-produced materiality.<sup>1</sup> That is, you see them in the materiality of the periods when hungry, and when satisfied, and see that it does not pass on from a period of hunger to a period of satiety (and vice-versa), every day in this hundred-year lifetime.
- (4) In the fourth way for materiality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of temperature-produced materiality. That is, you see them in the materiality of the periods when hot, and when cold, and see that it does not pass on from a period of feeling hot to a period of feeling cold (and vice-versa), every day in this hundred-year lifetime.
- (5) In the fifth way for materiality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of kamma-produced materiality. That is, you see that the materiality of each of the six sense-doors arises and ceases there, and does not pass on to another door, every day in this hundred-year lifetime.
- (6) In the sixth way for materiality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the consciousness-produced materiality. That is, you see them in the materiality of the periods when happy and

---

<sup>1</sup> This means that you discern all the four types of materiality that have arisen owing to the support of nutriment-produced materiality. This principle applies also to the discernment of kamma-, consciousness-, and temperature-produced materiality.

pleased, and when unhappy and sad, every day in this hundred-year lifetime.

- (7) In the seventh way for materiality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of present inanimate materiality: materiality with none of the six internal sense-bases, such as iron, steel, copper, gold, silver, plastic, pearls, gemstones, shells, marble, coral, soil, rocks, concrete and plants. That type of materiality is found only externally.

These are the seven ways for materiality.

### The Seven Ways for Mentality

In the seven ways for mentality, you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the insight-minds (the mentality) that saw those three characteristics in the seven ways for materiality. This means your object is in each case an insight-mind, which you see with a subsequent insight-mind.<sup>1</sup>

- (1) In the first of the seven ways for mentality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the materiality of the seven ways for materiality, but see the materiality as a group. You then see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the mentality that saw this. That means, you see the grouped materiality as impermanence, and then see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of that insight-mind itself with in each case a subsequent insight-mind. You do the same with the grouped materiality seen as suffering and non-self.
- (2) In the second way for mentality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the mentality for each of the seven ways for materiality. That means, you see the materiality in each of the seven ways for materiality as impermanence, and then see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of that insight-mind itself with in each case a subsequent insight-mind. You do the same with the material-

---

<sup>1</sup> **insight-mind** insight mind-door cognitive-process: one mind-door advertent consciousness and seven impulsions, sometimes followed by two registering consciousnesses. In the mind-door advertent-consciousness there are twelve mental formations, and in each impulsion consciousness, there are thirty-four, thirty-three or thirty-two mental formations. Please see also Table 6, p.213.

ity seen as suffering and non-self, and do it with each of the insight-minds for the given periods in each day of this hundred-year lifetime.

- (3) In the third way for mentality you see again the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the mentality for each of the seven ways for materiality, but do so four times in succession. That means, you see again the materiality in each of the seven ways for materiality as impermanence, and then see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of that first insight-mind with a second insight-mind, and the second with a third etc., until you with a fifth insight-mind see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the fourth insight-mind.
- (4) In the fourth way for mentality you do as before, but continue until you with an eleventh insight-mind see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of the tenth insight-mind.
- (5) In the fifth way for mentality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of mentality for the removal of views. Here again, you see the insight-minds of the seven ways for materiality, but intensify the perception of non-self, so as to overcome views, especially the view of self.
- (6) In the sixth way for mentality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of mentality for the removal of conceit. Again you see the insight-minds of the seven ways for materiality, but intensify the perception of impermanence, so as to overcome conceit.
- (7) In the seventh way for mentality you see the impermanence, suffering and non-self of mentality for the ending of attachment. Again you see the insight-minds of the seven ways for materiality, but intensify the perception of suffering, so as to overcome attachment.

These are the seven ways for mentality. It is best, although not strictly necessary, to have done these exercises for the materiality and mentality of the present, past and future, internally and externally.

With the exercises completed, materiality and mentality will have become very clear to you.

Now the explanation of how to develop the knowledge of formations in categories is complete, so let us discuss how to develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away of formations.

## How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away<sup>1</sup>

### Introduction

The Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away (*Udayabbaya nāṇa*) is to know the arising and passing-away of formations: mentality-materiality, the five aggregates, the twelve bases, the eighteen elements, the Four Noble Truths, and dependent origination, internally and externally, in the present, past and future.<sup>2</sup> This knowledge consists, in fact, of two knowledges:

1. Knowledge of the causal..... (*paccayato*)  
(Causal arising and passing-away of formations.)
2. Knowledge of the momentary ..... (*khaṇato*)  
(Momentary arising and passing-away of formations.)

To see the causal arising and passing-away of formations, you see it, for example, according to the fifth method of dependent origination, as described in our previous talk.<sup>3</sup>

To see the momentary arising and passing-away of formations you see how the five aggregates arise and pass away in every consciousness-moment from rebirth to death of every life you have discerned.

There are two methods for developing the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away: the brief method (seeing only the momentary nature of formations), and the detailed method (seeing both the causal and momentary nature of formations). I shall explain only the detailed method.

The detailed method is developed in three stages. You see:

<sup>1</sup> **Passing-way** is here used for *vaya*, cessation for *nirodha*, although the two Pāli terms are (as are the English) synonymous.

<sup>2</sup> Vs.xx 'Maggāmagga Nāṇadassana Visuddhi Niddesa' B723 ('Description of Purification by Knowledge and Vision of What is the Path, and What Is Not the Path' N93

<sup>3</sup> For the 'fifth method', please see p.228ff.

1. Only the arising ..... (*udaya*)  
(causal and momentary arising of formations)
2. Only the passing-away ..... (*vaya*)  
(causal and momentary passing-away of formations)
3. Both the arising and passing-away ..... (*udayabbaya*)  
(causal and momentary arising and passing-away of formations)

**How You Develop  
the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away  
According to the Fifth Method of Dependent Origination**

**The Observation of the Nature of Arising**

To begin the detailed method for developing the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, you should see again and again the causal arising of formations, and then their momentary arising. This is the Observation of the Nature of Arising (*samudayadhammānupassi*).

For example, you see the causal arising of materiality according to the fifth method of dependent-origination, as just mentioned. This means you look back again to the near-death moments of your past life, to see the five past causes that caused the arising (*udaya*) in this life of kamma-produced materiality.<sup>1</sup> One by one, you see how the arising (1) of ignorance, (2) of craving, (3) of clinging, (4) of volitional formations, and (5) of kamma, each caused the arising in this life of kamma-produced materiality.

Afterwards, you see the momentary arising of kamma-produced materiality in every consciousness-moment from rebirth to death.

This means you see the five aggregates at the arising (*udaya*) of the process-freed consciousnesses (*vīthi-mutta citta*): the rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*), bhavaṅga-consciousness and death-consciousness (*cuti citta*). You see also the arising of the five aggregates of each consciousness-moment in any of the interven-

<sup>1</sup> For a brief explanation of materiality produced by kamma (with examples), please see p.136f

ing six sense-door cognitive-processes (*vīthi*).<sup>1</sup> You see this in every past life that you have discerned, and in all the future lives up to your Parinibbāna.<sup>2</sup>

You need then to see, one after the other, also the causal arising of temperature-, of consciousness-, and of nutriment-produced materiality.<sup>3</sup> You see how:

- Consciousness caused the arising of consciousness-produced materiality.
- Temperature caused the arising of temperature-produced materiality.
- Nutriment caused the arising of nutriment-produced materiality.

In each case, you see also the momentary arising of the particular type of materiality.

After this you have to see, in the same way, the causal and momentary arising of mentality, and see the arising of materiality and mentality in the next life. It would, however, take some time to list the details, so we shall pass them over, and in each instance explain the details for only materiality.

**The Observation of the Nature of Passing-Away**

After seeing the causal and momentary arising (*udaya*) of materiality and mentality, you now see again and again only their passing-away (*vaya*). This is the Observation of the Nature of Passing Away (*vayadhammānupassi*).

The passing-away of ignorance, craving, clinging, volitional formations, and the kammic force<sup>4</sup> takes place when you attain arahantship, and the cessation of the five aggregates takes place at

<sup>1</sup> For a brief explanation of process-freed consciousnesses etc., please see above p.199

<sup>2</sup> In some cases, the yogi begins with this life alone, and then looks at past and future lives.

<sup>3</sup> For a brief explanation of materiality produced by consciousness, by temperature, and by nutriment (with examples), please see p.139ff

<sup>4</sup> There is, though, still the kammic force that underlies the present five aggregates: the arahant still feels pleasure and pain owing to past kamma. There is no kammic force in the present volitional formations, however, to produce new kamma. Please see also above, p.27.

your Parinibbāna. Whereas the causal arising is the individual type of ignorance, craving, clinging, volitional formation and kammic force that you discern at each life where it takes place, the cessation is always in the same life: when the five aggregates at Parinibbāna no longer arise. But, actual Nibbāna and the Arahant Path is not evident to us, because we have not yet realized the Four Path-Knowledges (*magga ñāṇa*) and Four Fruition Knowledges (*phala ñāṇa*): we understand that our Parinibbāna has taken place, because there is no more arising of the aggregates.

For example, you see the causal cessation (*nirodha*) of materiality, again according to the fifth method of dependent-origination.<sup>1</sup> That is when you look forward to the time when you become an arahant, and see that when you attain the Arahant Path and Fruition (*arahattamagga* and *arahattaphala*), all defilements cease, and that at the end of that life all formations cease: it is directly seeing your Parinibbāna, after which no new materiality or mentality arises or passes away. Should you attain arahantship in this very life, it will be in the future: should you attain arahantship in one of your future lives, it will also be in the future. One by one, you see that the cessation (*nirodha*) (1) of ignorance, (2) of craving, (3) of clinging, (4) of volitional formations, and (5) of kamma respectively, each cause the cessation of kamma-produced materiality.

Having in that way seen the causal cessation of kamma-produced materiality, you now see only its momentary passing-away.

Afterwards, you see the momentary passing-away of kamma-produced materiality in every consciousness-moment from rebirth to death, in every past and future life that you have discerned.<sup>2</sup> This means you see the five aggregates at the arising (*udaya*) of the process-freed consciousnesses (*vīthi-mutta citta*): the rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*), bhavaṅga-consciousness and death-consciousness (*cuti citta*). You see also the arising of the five aggre-

<sup>1</sup> For causal cessation according to fifth method of dependent origination, please see p.234

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw instructs the yogi to start by looking at this life, and then to look at past lives and the future.

gates of each consciousness-moment in any of the intervening six sense-door cognitive-processes (*vīthi*).<sup>1</sup>

You need then to see, one after the other, the causal passing-away of consciousness-, of temperature-, and of nutriment-produced materiality. You see how:

- The cessation of consciousness causes the cessation of consciousness-produced materiality.
- The cessation of temperature causes the cessation of temperature-produced materiality.
- The cessation of nutriment causes the cessation of nutriment-produced materiality.

In each case, you see also the momentary cessation of the particular type of materiality.

After this you have to see the causal and momentary cessation of mentality.

### The Observation of the Nature of Arising And Passing-Away

Once you have seen both the causal and momentary cessation of materiality and mentality, you now see again and again both their arising and passing-away. This is the Observation of the Nature of Arising And Passing-Away (*samudayavayadhammānupassi*). It involves seeing first their causal arising and passing-away, and then their momentary arising and passing-away. You see each one in three ways successively:

1. The arising of the cause and its result.
2. The passing-away of the cause and its result.
3. The impermanence of the cause and its result.

For example, you see one by one how:

---

<sup>1</sup> For a brief explanation of process-freed consciousnesses etc., please see above p. 199

1. The arising of each cause ((1) ignorance, (2) craving, (3) clinging, (4) volitional formations, (5) kamma) causes the arising of kamma-produced materiality.
2. The cessation of each same cause, causes the cessation of kamma-produced materiality.
3. Each cause and the materiality it produced is impermanent.

Likewise, you see one by one how:

1. Consciousness causes the arising of consciousness-produced materiality.
2. The cessation of consciousness causes the cessation of consciousness-produced materiality.
3. Consciousness is impermanent, and consciousness-produced materiality is impermanent.

And you see the same for temperature-, and nutriment-produced materiality.

This is how you see both the causal and momentary arising and passing-away of materiality. After that, you have to see the causal and momentary arising and passing-away of mentality.

So, in the way just outlined, you see the causal and momentary arising and passing-away of also the five aggregates, and see the three characteristics of impermanence, suffering, and non-self in them. You should do this for the five internal aggregates, the five external aggregates, and the five aggregates of the past, present, and future.

### How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away According to the First Method of Dependent Origination

Next, you need to develop this insight with also the first method of dependent-origination.<sup>1</sup> In that case, to see the casual arising

<sup>1</sup> Please see also p.235

of formations, you see the factors of dependent-origination one-by-one in forward order, and see that:<sup>1</sup>

- **Ignorance** [1] causes **volitional formations** [2];
- **volitional formations** cause **consciousness** [3];
- **consciousness** causes **mentality-materiality** [4];
- **mentality-materiality** cause the **six sense-bases** [5];
- **the six sense-bases** cause **contact** [6];
- **contact** causes **feeling** [7];
- **feeling** causes **craving** [8];
- **craving** causes **clinging** [9];
- **clinging** causes **becoming** [10];
- **becoming** causes **birth** [11];
- **birth** causes **ageing, death, sorrow, lamentation, physical pain, mental pain, and despair** [12].

To see the causal cessation of formations at arahantship, and the resultant Parinibbāna, you see the factors of dependent-cessation one-by-one in forward order, to see that:<sup>2</sup>

- **With the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance** [1] **volitional formations** [2] **cease;**
- **with the cessation of volitional formations** **consciousness** [3] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of consciousness** **mentality-materiality** [4] **cease;**
- **with the cessation of mentality-materiality** **the six sense-bases** [5] **cease;**
- **with the cessation of the six sense-bases** **contact** [6] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of contact** **feeling** [7] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of feeling** **craving** [8] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of craving** **clinging** [9] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of clinging** **becoming** [10] **ceases;**
- **with the cessation of becoming** **birth** [11] **ceases;**

<sup>1</sup> M.I.iv.8 'Mahātaṇhāsārikhaya Sutta' ('Great Craving-Destruction Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> ibid.

- with the cessation of birth, ageing, death, sorrow, lamentation, physical pain, mental pain, and despair [12] cease.

**It is in this way that all forms of suffering cease.**

As before, you see both the causal and momentary arising and passing-away of formations. You see the factors of dependent origination and dependent cessation one-by-one in forward order. For example, in the case of ignorance, you see:

1. Ignorance causes volitional formations.
2. With the remainderless fading away and cessation of ignorance, volitional formations cease.
3. Ignorance is impermanent, volitional formations are impermanent.

You see each of the factors of dependent-origination in the same way, internally and externally, in the past, present, and future.

This is a very brief explanation of how you develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away of formations.

### **How You Overcome the Ten Imperfections of Insight**

It is at this stage that, as you apply these methods, and your insight becomes stronger, the ten imperfections of insight (*dasa upakkilesa*) may arise. The ten imperfections are:<sup>1</sup>

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Light ..... ( <i>obhāsa</i> )          | 6. Confidence..... ( <i>adhimokkha</i> )  |
| 2. Insight..... ( <i>ñāṇa</i> )           | 7. Effort..... ( <i>paggaha</i> )         |
| 3. Joy..... ( <i>pīti</i> )               | 8. Mindfulness ..... ( <i>upaṭṭhāna</i> ) |
| 4. Tranquillity..... ( <i>passaddhi</i> ) | 9. Equanimity ..... ( <i>upekkhā</i> )    |
| 5. Bliss ..... ( <i>sukha</i> )           | 10. Attachment ..... ( <i>nikanti</i> )   |

<sup>1</sup> Please see also Vs.xx 'Vipassanupakkilesa Kathā' B634 ('Insight Imperfection Explanation' Ñ107).

With the exception of light and attachment, the imperfections are wholesome states, and are as such not imperfections. But they can become the objects for unwholesome state (you may become attached to them), which is why they are called imperfections. Should you experience one of the ten imperfections of insight, you need to overcome the attachment and desire that may arise, by seeing it as impermanence, suffering, and non-self: that way, you can continue to make progress.

### **How You Develop the Knowledge of Dissolution**

After you have developed the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away, your insight concerning formations is steadfast and pure. Then you have to develop the Knowledge of Dissolution (*bhaṅga ñāṇa*). To do this, you concentrate on only the momentary passing-away (*vaya*) and dissolution (*bhaṅga*) of formations. You see neither the arising (*uppāda*) of formations, nor the standing (*thiti*) of formations, nor the signs (*nimitta*) of individual formations, nor the occurrence (*pavatta*) of the origination of formations. Using the power of your insight-knowledge, you see only the dissolution of formations, and perceive them as impermanence, suffering and non-self.

1. You see the destruction, fall, and dissolution of formations, to see their impermanence.
2. You see the continuous dissolution of formations as fearful, to see the suffering in them.
3. You see the absence of any permanent essence in formations, to see non-self.

You have to see the impermanence, suffering and non-self in not only the dissolution of mentality-materiality, but also in the dissolution of those insight-minds that saw this. That means, you see the dissolution of materiality and know it is impermanent. That is your first insight mind. Then, with a second insight-mind you see the dissolution of the first insight-mind, and thus know it too is impermanent. You do the same for mentality, and then

again for materiality and mentality to know them as suffering and non-self. You repeat these exercises again and again, alternating between internal and external, materiality and mentality, causal formations and resultant formations:<sup>1</sup> past, present and future.

### You Know the First Eleven Knowledges

As you continue to discern the passing-away and ceasing of formations in this way, your strong and powerful insight will progress through the next six insight-knowledges.

At this stage, you will have developed the first eleven of the sixteen knowledges. The first five knowledges that you have already developed are:

1. The Knowledge of  
Analysing Mentality-Materiality<sup>2</sup> ..... (*nāma-rūpa pariccheda nāṇa*)
2. The Knowledge of  
Discerning Cause and Condition<sup>3</sup> ..... (*paccaya-pariggaha nāṇa*)
3. The Knowledge of  
Comprehension<sup>4</sup> ..... (*sammasana nāṇa*)
4. The Knowledge of  
Arising and Passing-Away<sup>5</sup> ..... (*udayabbaya nāṇa*)
5. The Knowledge of  
Dissolution<sup>6</sup> ..... (*bhaṅga nāṇa*)

And the next six knowledges that you will progress through are:

<sup>1</sup> The causal formations are the factors of dependent origination ignorance, volitional formations, consciousness, mentality-materiality, six sense bases, contact, feeling, craving, clinging, becoming. The resultant formations are kamma-, consciousness-, temperance-, and nutriment-produced materiality (please see p.135ff), and resultant mental formations.

<sup>2</sup> Please see Talk 4 'How You Discern Materiality' (p.131ff), and Talk 5 'How You Discern Mentality', p.199ff.

<sup>3</sup> Please see Talk 6 'How You See the Links of Dependent Origination', p.227ff.

<sup>4</sup> Please see above 'How You Develop the Knowledge of Comprehension', p.256ff.

<sup>5</sup> Please see above, 'How You Develop the Knowledge of Arising and Passing-Away', p.264ff.

<sup>6</sup> Please see above, 'How You Develop the Knowledge of Dissolution', p.272f.

6. The Knowledge of  
Terror ..... (*bhaya nāṇa*)
7. The Knowledge of  
Danger ..... (*ādīnava nāṇa*)
8. The Knowledge of  
Disenchantment ..... (*nibbidā nāṇa*)
9. The Knowledge of  
Desire for Deliverance ..... (*muñcitukamyatā nāṇa*)
10. The Knowledge of  
Reflection ..... (*paṭisaṅkhā nāṇa*)
11. The Knowledge of  
Equanimity Towards Formations ..... (*saṅkhārupekkhā nāṇa*)

Since you developed the first five insight-knowledges thoroughly, these six knowledges develop quickly. There are a few instructions for them, but we do not have time to explain.

### You Know and See Nibbāna

After realizing these knowledges, as you continue to see the passing-away and vanishing of each formation, with a wish for release from them, you will find that eventually all formations cease. Your mind knows and sees Nibbāna directly: it is fully aware of the (unformed) Nibbāna as object.

When your mind sees Nibbāna, you go through the remaining five knowledges with the arising of the path cognitive-process (*magga vīthi*). The remaining five knowledges are:

12. Knowledge of  
Conformity ..... (*anuloma nāṇa*)
13. Knowledge of  
Change-of-lineage ..... (*gotrabhu nāṇa*)
14. Knowledge of  
the Path ..... (*magga nāṇa*)
15. Knowledge of  
Fruition ..... (*phala nāṇa*)
16. Knowledge of  
Reviewing ..... (*paccavekkhaṇa nāṇa*)

The Path Cognitive-Process by which the last five knowledges arise has seven stages:

1. A mind-door advertent consciousness arises that sees formations as impermanence, suffering or non-self, depending on how the Knowledge of Equanimity towards Formations<sup>1</sup> arose.
2. A first impulsion consciousness (*javana*) arises ('preliminary work' (*parikamma*)), which sees formations in the same way. It maintains the continuity of consciousness.<sup>2</sup>
3. A second impulsion consciousness arises ('access' (*upacāra*)), which also sees formations in the same way.
4. A third impulsion consciousness arises ('conformity' (*anuloma*)), which also sees formations in the same way.  
(The three impulsion-consciousnesses comprise, in fact, the twelfth knowledge:

Knowledge of Conformity.....(*anuloma ñāṇa*).

Conformity to what? To what came before, and to what will come after. It conforms to the functions of truth in the eight insight knowledges that came before (from the Knowledge of Arising and Passing Away to the Knowledge of Equanimity Towards Formations), and it conforms to the thirty-seven dhammas of the Path Consciousness<sup>3</sup> that partake of the enlightenment that will come after. The Knowledge of Conformity is the last knowledge that has formations as its object.

<sup>1</sup> Knowledge No. 11

<sup>2</sup> In some cases, if the yogi's insight is very strong, this consciousness does not arise, and the first impulsion consciousness is 'access' (*upacāra*), which in this case is number three. Please see also Table 6, p.213.

<sup>3</sup> These are the thirty-seven factors of enlightenment (*Bodhipakkhiyadhamma*): the four foundations of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four roads to power, the five faculties, the five powers, the seven enlightenment factors, and the Noble Eightfold Path. For a brief explanation, please see below p.302ff, and Vs.xxii 'Ñāṇadassana Visuddhi Niddesa' ('Description of Purification by Knowledge and Vision' N32)

5. A fourth impulsion consciousness arises, with Nibbāna as object. This is the thirteenth knowledge:  
Knowledge of Change-of-Lineage .....(*gotrabhu ñāṇa*).

Although this consciousness knows the (unformed) Nibbāna, it does not destroy the defilements: its function is to change the lineage from worldly to noble.

6. A fifth impulsion consciousness arises, with Nibbāna as object. This is the fourteenth knowledge, which destroys the appropriate defilements:<sup>1</sup>  
Knowledge of the Path.....(*magga ñāṇa*).
7. A sixth and seventh<sup>2</sup> impulsion consciousness arises, with Nibbāna as object. They are the fifteenth knowledge:  
Knowledge of Fruition.....(*phala ñāṇa*).

### You Review Your Knowledge

After this, follows the last and sixteenth knowledge, the Reviewing Knowledge (*paccavakkhaṇa ñāṇa*). It is a reviewing of five things:

1. Reviewing the Path Knowledge.
2. Reviewing the Fruition Knowledge.
3. Reviewing Nibbāna.
4. Reviewing the defilements that have been destroyed.
5. Reviewing the defilements that have yet to be destroyed.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For example, Stream-Entry destroys the first three fetters (*samyojana*) ((1) personality view (*sakkāya diṭṭhi*), (2) doubt about The Buddha, Dhamma and Saṅgha, (3) clinging to rule-&-rite), and cuts off lust, hatred and delusion powerful enough to lead to a rebirth lower than a human one. Complete destruction of the defilements is achieved only at Arahantship.

<sup>2</sup> If no 'preliminary work' (*parikamma*) consciousness arose, these consciousnesses will be a fifth, sixth and seventh (three) to complete the necessary seven impulsion consciousnesses. Please see also Table 6, p.213.

<sup>3</sup> 1, 2, 4, and 5 you need to do deliberately, and require that you know how to do it.



Then you will have attained true knowledge of the Four Noble Truths, and will for yourself have realized Nibbāna. With this realization, your mind will have become purified and free from wrong views. If you continue in this way, you will be able to attain arahantship and Parinibbāna.

There are many more details about this development of insight, but we have had to leave them out, so as to make this explanation as brief as possible. The best way to learn about this practice is by undertaking a meditation course with a competent teacher, because then you can learn in a systematic way, step by step.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For contact addresses, please see Appendix 2, p.345.

## Questions and Answers 7

**Question 7.1** What is the difference between perception (*saññā*) and the perception-aggregate (*saññākkhandha*), and between feeling (*vedāna*) and the feeling-aggregate (*vedānākkhandha*)?

**Answer 7.1** The eleven types of perception (*saññā*) together are called the perception-aggregate (*saññākkhandha*). The eleven types of feeling (*vedānā*) together are called the feeling-aggregate (*vedānākkhandha*). What are the eleven? Past, present, future, internal, external, gross, subtle, inferior, superior, near, and far. All five aggregates should be understood in the same way. Please refer to the ‘*Khandha Sutta*’<sup>1</sup> of the ‘*Khandha Vagga*’ in the *Saṃyutta Nikāya* for the explanation.

**Question 7.2** To which associated mental factors do memory, inference and creativity belong? They are part of the five aggregates, but how do they become suffering (*dukkha*)?

**Answer 7.2** What is memory? If you remember Samatha meditation-objects, such as a kasiṇa- or ānāpāna-nimitta is right mindfulness (*sammā sati*). If you can see past, present, and future ultimate mentality-materiality (*paramattha nāma-rūpa*) and their causes, and see them as impermanence (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*), this is also right mindfulness (*sammā sati*); the mindfulness associated with insight-knowledge. This mindfulness is associated with thirty-three mental formations, which together are the four mentality aggregates (*nāmakkhanda*). Remembering The Buddha, the Dhamma, the Saṅgha, and offerings made in the past is also right mindfulness (*sammā sati*). When the remembering of actions produces wholesome dhammas (*kusala dhammā*), it is also right mindfulness, but not when it produces unwholesome dhammas (*akusala dhammā*). These are unwholesome perceptions (*akusala saññā*), perceptions associated with unwholesome dhammas; they are also the four mentality aggregates.

<sup>1</sup> ‘*Khandha Sutta*’ (‘Aggregates Sutta’) quoted p.5

The wholesome and unwholesome mentality aggregates are impermanent. As soon as they arise, they pass away; they are subject to constant arising and passing-away, which is why they are suffering.

**Question 7.3** Which associated mental factor does ‘Taking an object’ involve?

**Answer 7.3** All consciousnesses (*citta*) and associated mental factors (*cetasika*) take an object. Without an object they cannot occur. Consciousness and associated mental factors are the subject. The subject, *ārammaṇika dhamma*, cannot arise without an object (*ārammaṇa*). *ārammaṇika* is the dhamma or phenomenon that takes an object. In other words, the dhamma that knows an object. If there is no object to be known, then there is no dhamma that knows. Different groups of consciousness and associated mental factors take different objects. There are eighty-nine types of consciousness (*citta*), and fifty-two types of associated mental factor (*cetasika*); they all take their respective object. For example, the path- and fruition-consciousnesses and associated mental factors (*magga-citta cetasika* and *phala-citta cetasika*) take only one object, Nibbāna; an ānāpānā jhāna-consciousness and associated mental factors take only one object, the ānāpānā paṭibhāga-nimitta; the earth-kasiṇa jhāna takes only the earth-kasiṇa paṭibhāga-nimitta as object. They are supramundane and fine-material sphere consciousnesses. But a sensual-realm consciousness (*kāmāvacara citta*) takes different objects, good or bad. If you want to know in detail, you should study the Abhidhamma; more exactly the *Ārammaṇa* section of the *Abhidhammattha Saṅgaha*.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 7.4** Does work for the Saṅgha affect one’s meditation? Does it depend on the individual, or can one achieve a certain degree of concentration, after which work has no effect?

**Answer 7.4** In many suttas The Buddha criticizes bhikkhus who practise the following:

<sup>1</sup> e.g. *A Comprehensive Manual of Abhidhamma*, Ed. Bhikkhu Bodhi, BPS

- Pleasure in working .....(*kammārāmatā*)
- Pleasure in talking ..... (*bhassārāmatā*)
- Pleasure in sleeping ..... (*niddārāmatā*)
- Pleasure in company .....(*saṅghaṇikārāmatā*)
- Not controlling the faculties.....(*indriyesu aguttadvāratā*)
- Not knowing the proper amount of food to take.... (*bhojāne amattaññūtā*)
- Not trying to practise Samatha-Vipassanā with vigilance (moderate sleep).....(*jāgariye ananuyuttā*)
- Laziness in Samatha-Vipassanā practice .....(*kusita [or] kosajja*)

So if there is any work you have to do for the Saṅgha or yourself, try to do it as quickly as possible, and then return to your meditation with a peaceful mind.

If you enjoy working too much, it is a hindrance to meditation, because strong and powerful mindfulness on the meditation object can then not be attained: enjoying work does not produce good concentration.

**Question 7.5** Can a person who develops the jhānas with evil intent benefit from attaining them? And how about a person who has, for example, spent the money of a Saṅgha<sup>1</sup> for his personal use, and does not think it is wrong. When he attains jhāna up to the fourth jhāna, does his mind or view change?

**Answer 7.5** In this case you should distinguish between a layman and a bhikkhu. If a bhikkhu has committed an offence (*āpatti*), it is a hindrance to attain jhāna. For example, if he has appropriated the allowable requisite of a Saṅgha for his personal use, it is not easy for him to attain jhāna, unless he corrects that offence (*āpatti*). That means he must pay it back with requisites of equal value to the allowable requisites he used. Then he should confess his offence in front of the Saṅgha, or to another bhikkhu. That means he should do a confession of offence (*āpattiṭṭidesanā*). After correct-

<sup>1</sup> The Buddha made it a serious offence against the monastic rule (*Vinaya*) for a monk to accept, receive, possess, or handle money. This prohibition is observed by the Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw.

ing his fault, if he practises Samatha-Vipassanā, he can attain jhāna, path, and fruition. If, without correcting his fault he really did attain jhāna, then maybe he is not a real bhikkhu, and so the offence was in fact not an offence.

For lay-people, purification of conduct is also necessary, and it is better if they purify their conduct before meditating, that is, if they undertake either the five or eight precepts. That way, while meditating, their conduct is pure, and they can attain jhāna, although they were evil before meditation. For example, in the *Dhammapada Commentary*, there is a story about the servant Khujjuttarā.<sup>1</sup> She was a servant of King Udena's wife Queen Sāmāvātī. Every day King Udena gave her eight coins to buy flowers for the queen, and every day Khujjuttarā put four of the coins into her pocket, and bought flowers with only the other four. One day, The Buddha came with the Saṅgha for almsfood at the florist's house. Khujjuttarā helped the florist give the almsfood. After the meal The Buddha gave a Dhamma-talk, during which Khujjuttarā developed shame at having stolen the money, and decided not to steal any more. Her decision is an example of morality purified while listening to the Dhamma. With meditation, Khujjuttarā became a stream-enterer (*sotāpanna*). On that day she did not put four coins in her pocket, but bought flowers for all eight coins. When she gave the flowers to Queen Sāmāvātī, the queen was surprised because there were more flowers than usual. Then Khujjuttarā confessed.

Consider also the case of the Venerable Aṅgulimāla. Before he became a bhikkhu, he was a notorious murderer. But as a bhikkhu, he purified his conduct and strove hard in meditation. So he was able to attain arahantship.

Consider also this fact: in the round of rebirths everybody has done good and bad actions. There is no one who is free from bad actions.<sup>2</sup> But if they purify their conduct while meditating, then

<sup>1</sup> DhA.I.ii.1 'Sāmāvātī Vatthu' ('Sāmāvātī Case')

<sup>2</sup> In other words, if bad actions in the past made it impossible to attain jhāna, no one would be able to jhāna.

previous bad actions cannot prevent them from attaining jhāna. That is, however, only as long as those previous bad actions are not any of the five immediate kammās (*anantariya kamma*).<sup>1</sup>

The five immediate kammās are:

1. Killing one's mother,
2. Killing one's father,
3. Killing an arahant,
4. With evil intention shedding the blood of a Buddha,
5. Causing a schism in the Saṅgha.

If any of these evil actions has been done one cannot attain jhāna, path, and fruition, just like King Ajātasattu. King Ajātasattu had enough pāramī s to become a stream-enterer (*sotāpanna*) after listening to the '*Sāmaññaphala Sutta*'.<sup>2</sup> But because he had killed his own father, King Bimbisāra, it did not happen.

You asked whether after attaining jhāna, such people's mind or view changes. Jhāna can remove the hindrances for a long time. 'A long time' mean, if they enter jhāna for about an hour, then within that hour the hindrances do not occur. When they emerge from jhāna, the hindrances may recur because of unwise attention. So we cannot say for certain whether such a person's mind will change with jhāna. We can say only that so long as he is in jhāna, the hindrances do not occur.<sup>3</sup>

There are exceptions, as for example, with the Mahāthera Mahānāga.<sup>4</sup> Although he had practised Samatha and Vipassanā meditation for more than sixty years, he was still a worldling (*puttuhijjana*). Even so, because of his strong, powerful Samatha and Vipassanā practices, no defilements appeared in those sixty years. Due to this, he thought he was an arahant. But one of his disci-

<sup>1</sup> Please see e.g. A.V.ix.3 '*Parikuppa Sutta*' ('Festering Sutta'). These five kammās are called 'immediate', because they will definitely ripen in the present life, and give rise to rebirth in the big hell of Avīci, or one of its minor hells, as was the case for King Ajātasattu.

<sup>2</sup> D.2 'Fruits of Recluseship Sutta'

<sup>3</sup> Regarding jhāna and Vipassanā and views, please see also Answer 7.7, and Answer 7.9

<sup>4</sup> Vs.xx '*Vipassanupakkilesa Kathā*' B733 ('Insight Imperfection Explanation' Ñ110-113)

ples, the arahant Dhammadinna, knew he was still a worldling, and helped him realize indirectly that this was so. When Mahānāga Mahāthera discovered that he was still a worldling, he practised Vipassanā, and within a few minutes attained arahantship. But this is a most exceptional case.

You should remember another thing too: he was expert in the scriptures (*pariyatti*) as well as practice (*paṭipatti*). He was also a meditation teacher (*kammaṭṭhānācariya*), and there were many arahants who, like Dhammadinna, were his disciples. Although he was expert in Samatha and Vipassanā, sometimes misunderstandings occurred in his mind, because of a similarity in experiences. So if you think to yourself, 'I have attained the first jhāna, etc.', you should examine your experience thoroughly over many days, and many months. Why? If it is real jhāna and real Vipassanā, then they are beneficial to you, as they can help you attain real Nibbāna, which is the 'Pureland'<sup>1</sup> of Theravāda Buddhism. But artificial jhāna and artificial Vipassanā cannot give rise to this benefit. Do you want the real benefit or the artificial benefit? You should ask yourself this question.

So we should like to suggest, that you do not say to others, 'I have attained the first jhāna, etc.' too soon, because there may be someone who does not believe you. It could be that your experience is genuine, but it could also be false like with Mahānāga Mahāthera. You should be aware of this problem.

**Question 7.6** What is the difference between rūpa-kalāpas and ultimate materiality (*paramattha rūpa*)?<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **Pureland** The so-called 'Western Land', 'Land of Ultimate Bliss' in Mahāyāna teaching, where a Buddha called Amitabha Buddha is waiting. Rebirth there is obtained by reciting his name. The aim in the Mahāyāna tradition is, on the whole, rebirth in Pureland, as all who go there will become Buddhas, and then go and save all beings of all world systems. The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw speaks here of 'the "Pureland" of Theravāda Buddhism' only as a metaphor for Nibbāna that will suit his Mahāyāna audience: he is not suggesting that Nibbāna is a place, or in any way to be compared with the 'Western Land' etc. Please see 'supramundane realm' (*lokuttara bhūmi*) explained Answer 3.12, p. 127

<sup>2</sup> For details between rūpa-kalāpas and ultimate materiality, please see further p. 152

**Answer 7.6** Rūpa-kalāpas are small particles. When a yogi analyses those little particles, he sees ultimate materiality (*paramattha rūpa*). In a rūpa-kalāpa, there are at least eight types of materiality: earth, water, fire, wind, colour, odour, flavour, and nutritive essence. These eight types of materiality are ultimate materiality. In some rūpa-kalāpas there is a ninth too: life-faculty materiality (*jīvita rūpa*); and in others a tenth: sex-materiality (*bhāva rūpa*) or transparent-element materiality (*pasāda rūpa*). These eight, nine or ten types of materiality are all ultimate materiality.

**Question 7.7** When a yogi is able to see rūpa-kalāpas or ultimate materiality, will his mind (*citta*) and views (*diṭṭhi*) change?

**Answer 7.7** When he with insight-knowledge sees ultimate materiality in each rūpa-kalāpa, his mind and views change, but only temporarily, because insight-knowledge removes wrong views and other defilements only temporarily. It is the noble path (*ariyamagga*) that stage by stage destroys wrong views and other defilements totally.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 7.8** How does concentration purify the mind (*citta visuddhi*)? What kinds of defilement (*kilesa*) are removed by concentration?

**Answer 7.8** Concentration practice is directly opposite the five hindrances. Access- and first-jhāna concentration remove the five hindrances for a long time. Second-jhāna concentration removes applied thought (*vitakka*) and sustained thought (*vicāra*). Third-jhāna concentration removes joy (*pīti*). Fourth-jhāna concentration removes bliss (*sukha*). In this way, the mind is purified by concentration and that is called purification of mind (*citta visuddhi*).<sup>2</sup>

**Question 7.9** How does Vipassanā purify views (*diṭṭhi visuddhi*)? What kinds of defilement (*kilesa*) are removed by Vipassanā?

**Answer 7.9** Before seeing ultimate mentality-materiality, their causes, and nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self, a

yogi may have wrong views or wrong perceptions, such as, ‘This is a man, a woman, a mother, a father, a self, etc.’ But when he sees ultimate mentality-materiality, their causes, and nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self clearly, this wrong view is removed temporarily. Why is it removed? He sees that there are only ultimate mentality-materiality and their causes. He sees also that as soon as they arise, they pass away, which is their nature of impermanence. They are always subject to arising and passing-away, which is their nature of suffering. There is no self in these mentality-materiality and causes, which is their nature of non-self. This is insight-knowledge (*vipassanā ñāṇa*). It is right view (*sammā diṭṭhi*), and removes wrong views (*micchā diṭṭhi*). Insight-knowledge also removes defilements such as attachment and conceit, which are ‘partners’ to wrong view. So while a yogi is practising Vipassanā, right view is present. But it is only temporary, because when he stops meditating, wrong view recurs because of unwise attention (*ayoniso manasikāra*). He again perceives: ‘this is a man, a woman, a mother, a father, a self, etc.,’ and the associated defilements such as attachment, conceit, and anger, will also recur. But, when he goes back to Vipassanā meditation, this wrong view again disappears. So insight-knowledge removes wrong views and other defilements only temporarily. When he reaches the path and fruition, however, his Path Knowledge (*magga ñāṇa*) will destroy those wrong views and other defilements completely, stage by stage.<sup>1</sup>

**Question 7.10** What is the difference between *citta* and *diṭṭhi*?

**Answer 7.10** *Citta* means mind, but in *citta visuddhi* (purification of mind), it refers especially to a consciousness: an access-concentration consciousness (*upacāra-samādhi citta*) or absorption-jhāna consciousness (*appanā-jhāna citta*).<sup>2</sup> *Diṭṭhi* means wrong view, and is a associated mental factor (*cetasika*). It arises together with the four

<sup>1</sup> Regarding jhāna and Vipassanā and views, please see also Answer 7.5, and Answer 7.9

<sup>2</sup> For details regarding the different jhānas, please see ‘How You Attain Jhāna’, p.55ff

<sup>1</sup> Regarding jhāna and Vipassanā and views, please see also Answer 7.5, and Answer 7.7

<sup>2</sup> Regarding the different kinds of concentration etc., please see Answer 3.1, p.115

consciousnesses rooted in greed. A consciousness rooted in greed (*lobhamūla citta*) is associated with either wrong view or conceit.

One wrong view is the perception of self (*atta saññā*). There are two types of perception of self.

1. The world's general perception of self.....(*loka samañña attavāda*)  
This is wrong view as a consequence of convention: the perception that there is a man, woman, father, mother, etc.
2. Wrong view of self.....(*atta diṭṭhi*)  
This is wrong view as a consequence of craving (*taṇhā*): the perception of an indestructible self (*atta*), which may include the perception that the indestructible self is created by a creator (*paramatta*).

In the thirty-one realms there is no self, only mentality-materiality and their causes. They are always impermanent, suffering, and non-self. Outside the thirty-one realms there is no self either. This insight-knowledge is Vipassanā right view (*vipassanā sammā diṭṭhi*). It destroys wrong view (*micchā diṭṭhi*) temporarily, including wrong view of self. But the Path Knowledge (*magga ñāna*), which is path right view (*magga sammā diṭṭhi*), destroys wrong view completely. So what we have is in fact three types of view:

1. Wrong view.....(*micchā diṭṭhi*)
2. Vipassanā right view .....(*vipassanā sammā diṭṭhi*)  
which is mundane (*lokiya*).
3. Path right view .....(*magga sammā diṭṭhi*)  
which is supramundane (*lokuttara*).

In the 'Brahmajāla Sutta', all sixty-two types of wrong view that exist are discussed.<sup>1</sup> They all go under wrong view of self, which is also called 'personality wrong view' (*sakkāya diṭṭhi*). Personality (*sakkāya*) is the five aggregates, so personality wrong view is to see the five aggregates as self. There are also many types of right view, such as the right views called 'Right Views about the Four Noble Truths' (*catusacca sammā diṭṭhi*):

<sup>1</sup> D.i.1 'Brahmajāla Sutta' ('Supreme Net Sutta')

- Jhāna right view .....(*jhāna sammā diṭṭhi*)  
Jhāna knowledge associated with the jhāna factors.
- Discernment-of-mentality-materiality right view..(*nāma-rūpa-pariggaha sammā diṭṭhi*) Knowledge of Ultimate Mentality-Materiality.
- Kamma and kamma-result right view .....(*kammassakatā sammā diṭṭhi*)  
Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition.
- Vipassanā right view .....(*vipassanā sammā diṭṭhi*)  
Insight-knowledge of the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of mentality-materiality and their causes.
- Path right view .....(*magga sammā diṭṭhi*)  
Knowledge of Nibbāna.
- Fruition right view .....(*phala sammā diṭṭhi*)  
Knowledge of Nibbāna.

**Question 7.11** How should a yogi practise wise attention (*yoniso manasikāra*) in his daily life, and how in his Samatha-Vipassanā practice?<sup>1</sup>

**Answer 7.11** The best wise attention is Vipassanā. If you practise up to the Vipassanā level, you will have the truly best wise attention. If you then practise Vipassanā in your daily life, it will produce good results, such as path and fruition that see Nibbāna. But if you cannot practise up to the Vipassanā level, you should consider the fact that all conditioned things are impermanent (*sabbe saṅkhārā aniccā*). This is also wise attention, but very weak, and only second-hand.

You can also practise the four sublime abidings (*brahma vihāra*), and especially the sublime abiding of equanimity (*upekkhā brahmavihāra*). That is superior wise attention, because to practise the sublime abiding of equanimity is to see the law of kamma in 'sabbe sattā kammassakā': 'All beings are the owners of their kamma'. You can also sometimes reflect on the effects of unwise attention. Unwise attention causes many unwholesome kammās to come one by one. These unwholesome kammās will produce much suffering in the four woeful realms (*apāya*). To know this is wise attention. You should practise it in your daily life.

<sup>1</sup> For details regarding wise/unwise attention, please see also 'Wise and Unwise Attention', p. 204.

**Question 7.12** What is the difference between attention (*manasikāra*) and practising the seven enlightenment factors (*bojjhaṅga*)?

**Answer 7.12** When you practise the seven enlightenment factors, they are usually at the head of thirty-four mental formations that include attention. Sometimes the thirty-four mental formations are called ‘insight-knowledge’, because the thirty-fourth mental-formation, wisdom (*paññā*) is the main factor.

In this connection, you should know the three types of attention:

1. Attention  
as the basic cause for the object .....(*ārammaṇa paṭipādaka manasikāra*)
2. Attention  
as the basic cause for the cognitive-process.... (*vīthi paṭipādaka manasikāra*)
3. Attention  
as the basic cause for the impulsion .....(*javana paṭipādaka manasikāra*)

Attention as the basic cause for the object is the associated mental factor of attention. Its function is to make the object clear to the yogi’s mind.

Attention as the basic cause for the cognitive-process is the five-door adverting-consciousness (*pañcadvārāvajjana*) in the five-door cognitive-process (*pañcadvāra vīthi*). Its function is to enable all five-door cognitive-processes to take their respective object.

Attention as the basic cause for the impulsion is the mind-door adverting-consciousness (*manodvārāvajjana*) in the mind-door cognitive-process (*manodvāra vīthi*), and determining-consciousness (*voṭṭha-pana*) in the five-door cognitive-process. It is either wise attention or unwise attention. Its function is to make the impulsion (*javana*) occur. If it is wise attention, the impulsion (*javana*) is for worldlings (*puthujjana*) and learners (*sekkha*) wholesome, and for arahants only functional (*kiriya*). When it is unwise attention, the impulsion is always unwholesome, and cannot occur in arahants.

**Question 7.13** Could the Sayadaw please explain the diagram? Is it necessary, in this system of meditation, to practise the more than thirty types of meditation subject (*kammaṭṭhāna*)? What are the benefits in doing so?

**Answer 7.13** We are not interested in diagrams. It is based on a diagram drawn by a school teacher, who is very interested in diagrams.

In Pa-Auk we teach many types of Samatha meditation to those who want to practise them. If they do not want to practise all of them, but only one, such as *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), then we teach only that Samatha meditation. When they have jhāna, we take them straight to Vipassanā, systematically, stage by stage.

While practising Samatha-Vipassanā, there may sometimes be hindrances such as lust (*rāga*), anger (*dosa*), and discursive thought (*vitakka*), which will disturb their concentration and Vipassanā meditation. The following meditation subjects are the best weapons to remove those hindrances.

The Buddha gives them in the ‘*Meghiya Sutta*’:<sup>1</sup>

- *Asubhā bhāvetabbā rāgassa pahānāya.*  
(You should practise repulsiveness meditation (*asubha bhāvanā*) to remove lust (*rāga*).
- *Mettā bhāvetabbā byāpādassa pahānāya.*  
(You should practise lovingkindness meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*) to remove hatred or anger (*dosa*).
- *Ānāpānasati bhāvetabbā vitakkupacchedāya.*  
(You should practise *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing) to remove discursive thought (*vitakka*).

Furthermore, a concentrated mind can see ultimate dhammas (*paramattha dhamma*) as they really are.<sup>2</sup> Of the concentration practices, the eight attainments (*samāpatti*) are very high and powerful; so to those who want to practise the eight attainments thoroughly, we teach kasiṇa meditation too. If you want to understand the

<sup>1</sup> U.IV.1 and A.IX.I.i.3 ‘Meghiya Sutta’

<sup>2</sup> These, The Buddha’s words, are quoted above p. 14, and p. 29

diagram thoroughly, you need to practise Samatha-Vipassanā up to the Path and Fruition Knowledges. Only then will you fully understand the diagram.

Why are we not interested in diagrams? Because it is not enough to show the whole system on one page. We have explained the whole system in more than three thousand six hundred pages in Burmese: one page is not enough.

**Question 7.14** Can a hating mind produce many generations of temperature-produced octad-kalāpas (*utuja ojaṭṭhamaka-kalāpa*), and make the eyes flash?

**Answer 7.14** To say ‘a consciousness produces light’ is only a metaphor, because in fact, apart from the rebirth-linking consciousness (*paṭisandhi citta*), all consciousnesses that arise dependent upon the heart-base (*hadaya-vatthu*) produce consciousness-produced rūpa-kalāpas (*cittaja kalāpa*).<sup>1</sup> Among these rūpa-kalāpas there is always colour (*vaṇṇa*). It is brighter if the consciousness is a Samatha-, or Vipassanā-consciousness. This is discussed in the Pāḷi Texts, Commentaries, and Sub-commentaries. But it does not say that consciousness-produced materiality produced by a hating mind also produces light.

**Question 7.15** Is the seeing mind that sees mentality-materiality itself included in mentality-materiality? Is it included in wisdom?

**Answer 7.15** Yes, it is.<sup>2</sup> You can see it at all the stages of Vipassanā, especially at the stage of Knowledge of Dissolution (*bhaṅga ñāṇa*). It says in the *Visuddhi Magga*:<sup>3</sup>

*Ñātaṇca ñāṇaṇca ubhopi vipassati.*

(We must practise Vipassanā on both the known (*ñāta*) and knowledge (*ñāṇa*).

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of consciousness-produced materiality, please see p.163, and in relation to the light produced by Samatha and Vipassanā consciousnesses, please see also Answer 4.10, p. 194

<sup>2</sup> For details in this regard, please see ‘The Seven Ways for Mentality’, p.262ff, and ‘How You Develop the Knowledge of Dissolution’, p.272f.

<sup>3</sup> Vs.xxi ‘*Bhaṅgānupassanāñāna Kathā*’ B742 (‘Dissolution-Contemplation Knowledge’ Ñ13)

‘The known’ means the five aggregates and their causes, which should be known with insight-knowledge. ‘Knowledge’ means the insight-knowledge that knows the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of the five aggregates and their causes, which are all formations (*saṅkhāra dhamma*). Insight-knowledge is wisdom, Vipassanā right view. Usually, Vipassanā right view arises together with thirty-three or thirty-two mental formations, which gives thirty-four or thirty-three mental formations respectively. They are called ‘insight-knowledge’. They are mentality dhammas, because they incline towards the object of the impermanent, suffering or non-self nature of formations.

Why do you need to see the insight-knowledge itself as impermanence, suffering, and non-self? Because some yogis may ask, or think about whether insight-knowledge itself is permanent or impermanent, happiness or suffering, self or non-self. To answer this question, you need to see the Vipassanā cognitive-process itself as impermanence, suffering, and non-self, especially the thirty-four mental formations in each impulsion moment, headed by that insight-knowledge. Furthermore, some yogis may become attached to their insight-knowledge. They may become proud, because they can practise Vipassanā well and successfully. It is also to remove and prevent these defilements that you need to see the insight-knowledge, or Vipassanā cognitive-process itself as impermanence, suffering, and non-self.

**Question 7.16** How to overcome the uninterested and bored mind state that occurs during long periods of meditation, or staying alone in the forest? Is this kind of mind state an unwholesome dhamma?

**Answer 7.16** This type of mind state is called indolence (*kosajja*), and is usually a weak unwholesome dhamma associated with greed or hatred, etc. This type of mind state occurs because of unwise attention. If a person’s unwise attention is changed to and replaced with wise attention, then he may succeed in his meditation.

To overcome this mind state you should sometimes recall that our Sakyamuni Bodhisatta’s success was due to his perseverance.



You should also recall the stories of arahants who had striven hard and with great difficulty to succeed in their meditation, to eventually attain arahantship. No one can have great success without striving. It is necessary especially in meditation to persevere. Wise attention too is very important. You should try to pay attention to the nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self in conditioned things. If you do like this, you may one day succeed.

**Question 7.17** Could the Sayadaw please give an example of a wish that is not associated with ignorance (*avijjā*), craving (*taṇhā*) and clinging (*upādāna*)?

**Answer 7.17** If you practise Vipassanā when performing wholesome kammās, and also see the impermanence, suffering, or non-self nature of those wholesome kammās, then ignorance (*avijjā*), craving (*taṇhā*) and clinging (*upādāna*) do not arise. If you cannot practise Vipassanā, then make the following wish: ‘*Idaṃ me puññāṃ Nibbānassa paccayo hotu*’: ‘May this merit be a contributing cause for the realization of Nibbāna.’

**Question 7.18** If the five aggregates are non-self, then who, Sayadaw, is giving a Dhamma talk? In other words, if the five aggregates are non-self, no Sayadaw is giving a Dhamma talk. So is there a relationship between the five aggregates and the self?

**Answer 7.18** There are two types of truth: conventional truth (*sammūti sacca*) and ultimate truth (*paramattha sacca*).

You should differentiate clearly between these two types of truth. According to conventional truth there is a Buddha, a Sayadaw, a father, a mother, etc. But according to ultimate truth, there is no Buddha, no Sayadaw, no father, no mother, etc. This you can see if you have strong enough insight-knowledge. If you look at The Buddha with insight-knowledge, you see ultimate mentality-materiality, which are the five aggregates. They are impermanent, suffering, and non-self. There is no self. In the same way if you look at me, or at a father, or mother etc., with insight-knowledge, you see only ultimate mentality-materiality, the five aggregates, which are impermanent, suffering, and non-self. There is

no self. In other words, there is no Buddha, Sayadaw, father, mother, etc. The five aggregates and their causes are called formations. So, formations are talking about formations, sometimes about Nibbāna. There is no self at all. So how can we speak of a relationship?

For example, if someone were to ask you, ‘Are rabbit horns long or short?’, how should you answer? Or if they asked, ‘Is the body hair on a tortoise black or white?’, how should you answer? If the self does not exist at all, we cannot speak of a relationship between it and the five aggregates. Even The Buddha did not answer this type of question. Why? Suppose you said rabbit horns are long; that would mean you accept that rabbits have horns. And if you said rabbit horns are short; that too would mean you accept that they have horns. Again, if you said a tortoise has black body hair, that would mean you accept that a tortoise has hair. If you said tortoise hair is white, that too would mean you accept it has hair. In the same way, if The Buddha said the five aggregates and the self are related, it would mean he accepted that there is a self. And if he said the five aggregates and the self are not related, it would also mean he accepted that there is a self. That is why The Buddha did not answer this type of question. So we should like to suggest that you try to practise meditation up to the Vipassanā level. Only then can you remove this view of self.

**Question 7.19** The Buddha taught the Snake Mantra to bhikkhus. Is chanting the Snake Mantra the same as loving-kindness? Is chanting a mantra a Brahmanic tradition brought into Buddhism?

**Answer 7.19:** What is a mantra? What is the Snake Mantra? We do not know whether mantras have been handed down from Hinduism. But in the Theravāda Texts there is a protective sutta (*paritta sutta*) called the ‘*Khandha Paritta*’.<sup>1</sup> The Buddha taught this pro-

<sup>1</sup> A.IV.II.ii.7 ‘*Ahirāja Sutta*’ (‘Snake Kings Sutta’), called the *Khandha* (Group) *Paritta* (Protective Chant) because *mettā* is extended to all beings in groups: the four types of snake, beings with no legs (leeches, worms, fish etc.), with two legs (devas, human beings, birds), with four legs (elephants, dogs, lizards etc.), and with many legs (ants, scorpions, centipedes, spiders etc.).

protective sutta for bhikkhus to recite every day. There is a disciplinary rule (*Vinaya*) which says that if a forest-dwelling bhikkhu or bhikkhuni fails to recite this protective sutta at least once a day, he or she will have committed an offence.

Once, in The Buddha's time, a bhikkhu was dwelling in the forest when a venomous snake bit him. He died. Because of this, The Buddha taught the '*Khandha Paritta*'. The purpose of this protective sutta is similar to lovingkindness meditation. In that sutta there are different ways of extending lovingkindness to different types of snake or dragon. There is also an assertion of truth concerning the Triple Gem, and the qualities of The Buddha and arahants. We shall recite this protective sutta tonight. It is very powerful. You may call it the 'Snake Mantra'. The name is not important. You can call it whatever you like. Some bhikkhus in Myanmar use this protective sutta for those who have been bitten by a venomous snake. It is effective. When they chant this protective sutta many times, and when the victims drink the protective water, the venom slowly decreases in them. Usually they recover. But the effect is not the same in every case. The Buddha taught this protective sutta to prevent bhikkhus from being bitten by venomous snakes. If a bhikkhu recites this protective sutta with respect, and extends lovingkindness to all beings, including snakes, he will meet with no danger. Usually, if he also observes the monastic code, no harm will come to him.

## Talk 8

### The Buddha's Wishes for His Disciples and His Teachings

(Talk given on Vesākha Day)

#### The Buddha' Relinquishes the Will to Live

The Buddha spent His last rains (*vassa*) in the village of Veḷuva. At that time there arose in Him a severe affliction. On the full-moon day of Asāḷha, a sharp and deadly back pain came upon Him, because of previous kamma.

In one of his past lives, the bodhisatta, who was to become Sakyamuni Buddha, was a wrestler. Once he threw down an opponent and broke the opponent's back. When mature, that unwholesome kamma (*akusala kamma*) produced its result, which was ten months before Sakyamuni Buddha's Parinibbāna. The effect of that kamma was so powerful that it would last until death. Such an affliction is called 'feeling ending at death' (*maraṇantika vedāna*). It ceases only when death occurs.<sup>1</sup>

The Buddha prevented that affliction from arising through entering an Arahant Fruition and making a determination (*adhiṭṭhāna*). First The Buddha entered the Arahant-Fruition Attainment (*arahat-taphala samāpatti*) based on the Seven Ways for Materiality (*rūpa sattaka vipassanā*) and Seven Ways for Mentality (*arūpa sattaka vipassanā*).<sup>2</sup> After those Vipassanā practices and just before entering the arahant fruition-attainment, The Buddha determined, 'From today until the day of my Parinibbāna, may this affliction not occur', and then He entered the arahant fruition-attainment. Arahant fruition-attainment means that the arahant fruition-consciousness, with Nibbāna as object, occurs continuously for a long time. Because the Vipassanā practices were strong and powerful, the arahant fruition-attainment too was strong and powerful. Because of the

<sup>1</sup> DA.II.3 'Mahāparinibbāna Sutta' 164 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> For the Seven Ways for Materiality/Mentality, please see above, p.260ff

effort of the Vipassanā and the effort of the fruition-attainment the affliction did not occur in the ten months that were left until the day of The Buddha's Parinibbāna. But He had to enter that fruition-attainment every day until then.<sup>1</sup>

After the vassa, The Buddha wandered from place to place, and eventually reached Vesālī. Three months before Vesākha full-moon day, on the full-moon day of February, at the Cāpāla Cetiya, The Buddha decided to relinquish the will to live (*āyusañk-hāra ossajjana*). What does that mean? On that day He decided:<sup>2</sup>

*Temāsamattameva pana samāpattiṃ samāpajjivā tato paraṃ na samāpaj-jissāmīti cittaṃ uppādesi.*

(From today until the full-moon day of Vesākha I shall practise this fruition attainment. Then I shall no longer practise it.)

#### The Buddha Declares His Wishes

So on that day, in front of the assembled Bhikkhu Saṅgha, in the assembly hall of the Mahāvāna monastery, The Buddha announced that He had relinquished the will to live. He said to the Bhikkhu Saṅgha:<sup>3</sup>

*Tasmātiha bhikkhave ye te mayā dhammā abhiññā desitā, te vo sādhu-kam ug-gahetva āsevitabbā bhāvetabbā bahulīkātabbā.*

(Bhikkhus, you, to whom I have made known the Truths about which I have direct knowledge, having thoroughly learnt them, should cultivate them, develop them, and frequently practise them.)

The Buddha taught only the Dhamma about which He had direct experience. Here The Buddha declared His wishes for His teachings, and instructed the Saṅgha as follows:

<sup>1</sup> For details with regard to these The Buddha's practices and attainments, please see endnote, p.314

<sup>2</sup> DA.II.3 'Mahāparinibbāna Sutta' 169 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

<sup>3</sup> D.ii.3 'Mahāparinibbāna Sutta' 184 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

1. They should learn His Teachings (Dhamma) thoroughly by heart, but learning by heart alone is not enough. This was The Buddha's first wish.
2. He instructed them to cultivate His Teachings (Dhamma). In Pāḷi it is called *āsevitabbā*, and means that we must try to know this Dhamma in practice again and again. It is translated as cultivation. This was The Buddha's second wish.
3. Finally, He instructed them to develop (*bhāvetabbā*) the Truths. When we cultivate, growth and progress are necessary. What does that mean? When we practise the Dhamma, only wholesome dhammas (*kusala dhamma*) must occur in our cognitive-processes. That is, wholesome morality dhammas (*sīla kusala dhamma*), wholesome concentration dhammas (*samādhi kusala dhamma*) and wholesome wisdom dhammas (*paññā kusala dhamma*). These wholesome dhammas must occur without a break until arahantship. If a disciple (*sāvaka*) of The Buddha attains arahantship, his practice (*bhāvanā*) is over. So a disciple of The Buddha must practise The Buddha's Teachings until he attains that goal: the cultivation must be developed until arahantship. To reach arahantship we must practise again and again. For that reason The Buddha gave the instruction of *bahulī kātābbā*, which means we must practise frequently. This was The Buddha's third wish.

These wishes occurred in The Buddha's cognitive-processes. Why?<sup>1</sup>

*Yathayidam brahmacariyam addhaniyam assa ciraṭṭhitikam.*  
(So that the pure Teaching may be established and last long.)

That is, to maintain the pure Teaching so that it can last for a long time.

---

<sup>1</sup> ibid.

### Our Duty as Buddhists

It is very important that every Buddhist maintains the pure Teaching, so that it is not lost. We must try. What should we try to do? We repeat:

1. We should try to learn The Buddha's Teachings (Dhamma) thoroughly by heart.
2. We should try to practise The Buddha's Teachings so as to know them through personal experience.
3. We should try to practise The Buddha's Teachings until arahantship.

These are the duties of all Buddhists. If one is a Buddhist one must follow these three instructions. If one does not follow them then one is a Buddhist in name only: not a real Buddhist. If one follows these three instructions thoroughly, then one is a real Buddhist. So you can today determine:

1. We will try to learn The Buddha's Teachings thoroughly by heart.
2. We will try to practise The Buddha's Teachings so as to know them through personal experience.
3. We will try to practise The Buddha's Teachings until arahantship.

### How We May Benefit the World

If we do that, it can be said that we breathe according to The Buddha's instructions. Why should we do so?<sup>1</sup>

*Tadassa bahujanahitāya bahujanasukhāya lokānukampāya athāya hitāya suk-  
hāya devamanussānam.*

(For the welfare and happiness of the multitude,  
out of compassion for the world,  
for the welfare and happiness of devas and human beings.)

---

<sup>1</sup> ibid.

If we practise according to The Buddha's instructions, we will be able to give the Dhamma to future generations as an inheritance. We will be able to teach devas and human beings the following:

1. To try to learn The Buddha's Teachings thoroughly by heart.
2. To practise The Buddha's Teachings, so as to know them through personal experience.
3. To practise The Buddha's Teachings until arahantship.

By doing that, those devas and human beings will receive benefits and happiness in this world, up to the attainment of Nibbāna. But if we do not learn the Teachings by heart, and do not practise those teachings, how can we teach devas and human beings to learn the Teachings of The Buddha, and teach them how to practise those Teachings, since we have no knowledge of them? So, if we have strong enough faith (*saddhā*) in the Teachings of The Buddha, we Buddhists should try to learn those Teachings by heart, cultivate them in practice, and develop them until arahantship.

### How We May Show Our Faith

Do you have strong enough faith in the teachings of The Buddha?

It is said in the '*Ghaṭṭikāra Sutta*' Commentary:<sup>1</sup>

*Pasanno ca pasannākāraṃ kātum sakkhissati.*

(True devotees of the Triple Gem can show their devotion through practice.)

If a man or woman cannot show devotion, we cannot say that he or she is a real devotee. If you have real faith in The Buddha's Teachings, you should learn those teachings thoroughly, practise them, and not stop before attaining arahantship. These are important words of The Buddha before He passed away. If we have faith in The Buddha we should obey those words. If we have faith

<sup>1</sup> MA.II.iv.1 '*Ghaṭṭikāra Sutta*' ('*Ghaṭṭikāra Sutta*')

in our parents we should obey their instructions. In the same way we should obey our Father's words; our Father is The Buddha.

### What We Must Learn and Practise

So, what are those Teachings? They are:<sup>1</sup>

- The Four Foundations of Mindfulness..... (*cattaro satipaṭṭhānā*)
- The Four Right Efforts .....(*cattaro sammappadhānā*)
- The Four Bases of Success .....(*cattaro iddhipādā*)
- The Five Controlling Faculties.....(*pañcīndriyāni*)
- The Five Powers .....(*pañca balāni*)
- The Seven Factors of Enlightenment.....(*satta bojjhaṅgā*)
- The Noble Eightfold Path. ....(*ariyo atthaṅgiko maggo*)

There are altogether Thirty-Seven Requisites of Enlightenment (*bodhipakkhiyadhamma*). Let us discuss them briefly. In the Pāḷi Canon, The Buddha taught the Thirty-Seven Requisites of Enlightenment in different ways, according to the inclination of his listeners. The teachings in the Pāḷi Canon can be reduced to just the Thirty-Seven Requisites of Enlightenment. If they are condensed, there is only the Noble Eightfold Path. If it is condensed, there are only the three trainings: morality, concentration, and wisdom.

### The Basis for Practice

We must first learn the training of morality to practise. If we do not know the training of morality, we cannot purify our conduct. Then we must learn Samatha meditation to control and concentrate our mind. If we do not know about Samatha meditation, how can we cultivate concentration? If we do not practise concentration, how can we control our mind? Then we must learn how to cultivate wisdom. If we do not know the training of wisdom, how can we cultivate wisdom?

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.3 '*Mahāparinibbāna Sutta*' 184 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

So, to purify our conduct, to control our mind, and to develop our wisdom, we must first learn the Dhamma by heart. Secondly, we must cultivate and develop it up to arahantship.

Therefore, in the '*Mahāparinibbāna Sutta*', The Buddha urged His disciples many times:<sup>1</sup>

*Iti sīlaṃ, iti samādhi, iti paññā.*

*Sīlaparibhāvito samādhi mahapphalo hoti mahānisamsa;*

*samādhiparibhāvita paññā mahapphalā hoti mahānisamsā.*

*Paññāparibhāvitaṃ cittaṃ sammadeva āsavehi vimuccati,  
seyyathidaṃ kāmāsavā bhavāsavā diṭṭhāsavā avijjāsavā.*

(Such is morality; such is concentration; such is wisdom.

Great is the result, great is the gain of concentration

when it is fully developed based on morality;

great is the result, great is the gain of wisdom

when it is fully developed based on concentration.

The mind that is fully developed in wisdom

is utterly free from the taints of lust, becoming, wrong views and ignorance.)

We all have a mind. If, based on morality, we can control our mind, then the power of that concentrated mind is wonderful. That mind can penetrate into ultimate materiality. Materiality arises as rūpa-kalāpas. They are smaller than atoms. Our body is made of those rūpa-kalāpas. The concentrated mind can analyse those rūpa-kalāpas. The concentrated mind can also penetrate into the ultimate reality of mentality. The concentrated mind can penetrate into their causes. The concentrated mind can penetrate into the nature of arising and passing-away of mentality, materiality, and their causes. This insight-knowledge is called wisdom. This wisdom progresses because of concentration based on morality. The concentrated mind and wisdom are will-power. This will-power can lead to the attainment of Nibbāna, the destruction of all attachment, all defilements and all suffering.

<sup>1</sup> *ibid.* e.g.186

Everybody has a mind. When the mind is fully developed through concentration, the insight-knowledge, the wisdom, can free one from the taints of lust and the round of rebirths completely. But that concentration must be based on morality. For laypeople, the five precepts are necessary. They are:

1. To abstain from killing any beings
2. To abstain from stealing
3. To abstain from sexual misconduct
4. To abstain from telling lies
5. To abstain from taking intoxicants

These five precepts are necessary for all lay-Buddhists. If one breaks any of these five precepts, one is automatically not a real lay-Buddhist (*upāsaka/upāsikā*). One's refuge in the Triple Gem has been made invalid. Buddhists must also abstain from wrong livelihood. They must not use possessions acquired by killing, by theft, by sexual misconduct, by lies, by slander, by harsh speech, or by frivolous speech. They must not engage in the five types of wrong trade: trading in weapons, in humans, in animals for slaughter, in intoxicants, or in poisons.

So morality is very important for all Buddhists, not only to attain Nibbāna, but also to reach a happy state after death. If one's conduct is not purified, it is not easy to reach a happy state after death, because at the time of death, those misdeeds usually stick to one's mind, appear in one's mind. By taking one of those misdeeds as the object of the mind, usually one goes to one of the four woeful realms after death.

Morality is also important to find happiness and peace in the present life. Without purification of conduct, one cannot find happiness or peace. Someone with a bad character is naturally surrounded by enemies. One who has many enemies cannot find any happiness.

### Samatha and Vipassanā Meditation

Then The Buddha taught the following:<sup>1</sup>

*Yo ca vassasatam jīve, dussīlo asamāhito;  
Ekāhaṃ jīvitaṃ seyyo, sīlavantassa jhāyino.*

(Though one should live a hundred years  
without virtue and without concentration,  
one's life is not worthy of praise;

It is better to live a single day with the practice of virtue and concentration.)

Why? Because the mind that is fully developed through concentration can produce great wisdom, which can see Nibbāna, the end of the round of rebirths, and can destroy all defilements and suffering.

So we must practise Samatha and Vipassanā meditation based on morality. When we practise Samatha and Vipassanā meditation, we must practise the Four Foundations of Mindfulness (*cattāro satipaṭṭhānā*):

1. Mindfulness of the body .....(*kāyānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna*)
2. Mindfulness of feeling .....(*vedanānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna*)
3. Mindfulness of consciousness .....(*cittānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna*)
4. Mindfulness of dhammas ..... (*dhammānupassanā satipaṭṭhāna*)

What is 'the body' (*kāya*)? There are two types of body in Vipassanā: the materiality-body (*rūpa-kāya*) and the mentality-body (*nāma-kāya*). The materiality-body is a group of twenty-eight types of materiality. The mentality-body is a group of consciousnesses and their associated mental factors. In other words, the two bodies are the five aggregates (*khandha*): materiality, feeling, perception, formations, and consciousness.

But Samatha meditation objects such as the breath, the thirty-two parts of the body as foulness (*asubha*), and the four-elements are also called body. Why? They are also compactness of materi-

ality. For example, breath is a group of rūpa-kalāpas produced by consciousness. If we analyse those rūpa-kalāpas, we see that there are nine types of materiality in each one: earth-, water-, fire-, and wind-element, colour, odour, flavour, nutritive essence, and sound. The skeleton too is compactness of rūpa-kalāpas. If the skeleton is alive, there are a total of five types of rūpa-kalāpa. If we analyse those rūpa-kalāpas, we see that there are forty-four types of materiality.<sup>1</sup>

Under mindfulness of the body (*kāyānupassanā*), The Buddha taught two types of meditation: Samatha and Vipassanā. Under contemplation of the body, He included *ānāpānasati* (mindfulness-of-breathing), and the thirty-two parts of the body etc. So, if you are practising *ānāpānasati*, you are practising contemplation of the body. All those Samatha practices go under contemplation of the body. After you have succeeded in Samatha practice, you change to Vipassanā meditation, and see the twenty-eight types of materiality. That is also practising contemplation of the body. At the time of practising discernment of mentality (*nāma kammaṭṭhāna*), when you discern feelings, it is contemplation of feelings; when you discern consciousnesses, it is contemplation of consciousnesses; when you discern contact it is contemplation of dhammas. But discerning only feelings, consciousnesses, and contact is not enough to attain the insight-knowledges. So we must discern the remaining associated mental factors. After having discerned mentality and materiality, we must discern their causes in the past, present, and future. This is the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition (*paccaya-pariggaha ñāṇa*). After the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition, when you will have reached Vipassanā, you can emphasize either materiality, feelings, consciousnesses or contact. 'Emphasize' does not mean you should discern one state only. You can emphasize materiality, but you must not

<sup>1</sup> For details, please see 'How You Analyse the Rūpa-Kalāpas', p.152, and Table 3, p.172

<sup>1</sup> Dh.p.viii.10 'Sahassa Vagga' ('Thousands Chapter')

omit mentality. That is, you must discern feeling, consciousness, and dhammas too.<sup>1</sup>

You may emphasize feelings instead. But feelings alone are not enough. You must also discern their associated mental formations, their sense-bases, and their objects. The five sense-bases and their objects are materiality. It is the same for the consciousnesses and dhammas.<sup>2</sup>

So here, Vipassanā is contemplating the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of mentality-materiality and their causes. Those dhammas pass away as soon as they arise, so they are impermanent. They are oppressed by constant arising and passing-away, so they are suffering. In those dhammas there is no soul, nothing is stable, permanent and immortal, so they are non-self. Discernment of the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of mentality-materiality, and their causes and effects, is called Vipassanā meditation. When you practise Samatha and Vipassanā meditation, we can say you are practising the Four Foundations of Mindfulness.

When you practise the Four Foundations of Mindfulness you must arouse enough of the Four Right Efforts (*cattāro sammappadhāna*). They are:

1. The effort to prevent unwholesome states from arising.
2. The effort to eradicate unwholesome states that have arisen.

<sup>1</sup> There are four foundations of mindfulness: (1) body (2) feeling (3) consciousness (4) dhammas. Dhammas are the remaining constituents of the mentality body (*nāma-kāya*). The Buddha explains dhammas also as the five aggregates, twelve bases, five hindrances, seven enlightenment factors, and Four Noble Truths. It is in fact not possible to separate these many aspects of the Dhamma, because each one includes all the others. For, example, to fully understand the Four Noble Truths is to fully understand the Noble Eightfold Path. To fully understand the Noble Eightfold Path is also to fully understand the Seven Factors of Enlightenment. It is also to fully understand mentality-materiality; and the five aggregates, and the twelve bases etc. Hence, all thirty-seven factors of enlightenment (*Bodhipakkhiyadhamma*) need to be fully understood for enlightenment to take place.

<sup>2</sup> The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw discusses Vipassanā by way of discerning only feelings in Answer 4.6 above, p. 186.

3. The effort to produce wholesome states that have not yet arisen (concentration wholesome-dhammas, Vipassanā wholesome-dhammas, path wholesome-dhammas, etc.).
4. The effort to develop those wholesome states up to arahantship.

How should you practise? You should practise according to the Four Foundations of Mindfulness. When practising you must arouse enough of the four types of effort just mentioned: 'Even if my flesh and blood were to dry up, leaving bones and sinews only, I will not give up my meditation.'

When you practise you should have the Four Bases of Success (*cattāro iddhipādā*):

1. Desire.....(*chanda*)  
We must have strong and powerful desire to reach Nibbāna.
2. Energy.....(*vīriya*)  
We must have strong and powerful energy to reach Nibbāna.
3. Consciousness.....(*citta*)  
We must have strong and powerful consciousness to reach Nibbāna,
4. Investigation.....(*vimaṃsa*)  
We must have strong and powerful insight-knowledges to reach Nibbāna.

If we have strong enough desire we will attain our goal. There is nothing we cannot achieve if we have enough desire. If we have strong enough energy we will attain our goal. There is nothing we cannot achieve if we have enough energy. If we have strong enough consciousness we will attain our goal. There is nothing we cannot achieve if we have a strong and powerful mind. If we have strong enough insight-knowledge we will attain our goal. There is nothing we cannot achieve if we have enough wisdom.

When we practise Samatha and Vipassanā based on morality, we should also have the Five Controlling Faculties<sup>1</sup> (*pañcindriyāni*). They are:

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of the Five Controlling Faculties, please see p.50ff



1. Faith ..... (*saddha*)  
We must have sufficiently strong faith in The Buddha and His teachings.
2. Effort.....(*vīriya*)  
We must make sufficiently strong effort.
3. Mindfulness ..... (*sati*)  
We must have sufficiently strong mindfulness on the meditation object. If it is a Samatha object, it must be an object like the ānāpānimitta or kasiṇa-nimitta. If it is a Vipassanā object, it must be mentality, materiality, and their causes.
4. Concentration ..... (*samādhi*)  
We must have sufficiently strong concentration on the Samatha and Vipassanā objects.
5. Wisdom.....(*paññā*)  
We must have sufficient understanding about Samatha and Vipassanā objects.

These five controlling faculties control the yogi's mind, so it does not go away from the Noble Eightfold Path, which leads to Nibbāna. If you do not have any of these controlling faculties, you cannot reach your goal. You cannot control your mind. These controlling faculties have the power to control your mind, so that it does not go away from your meditation object. This power is also called will-power (*bala*). From the point-of-view of will-power, the Five Controlling Faculties are called the Five Powers (*pañca balāni*).

Apart from the Four Foundations of Mindfulness, there are also the Seven Factors of Enlightenment (*satta bojjhaṅgā*), which are very important. They are:

1. Mindfulness ..... (*sati*)
2. Investigation of Phenomena.....(*dhamma vicaya*)  
(This is insight-knowledge.)
3. Effort.....(*vīriya*)
4. Joy.....(*pīti*)
5. Tranquillity.....(*passaddhi*)
6. Concentration ..... (*samādhi*)
7. Equanimity .....(*upekkhā*)

Finally, there is the Noble Eightfold Path (*ariyo aṭṭhaṅgiko maggo*):

1. Right View ..... (*sammā diṭṭhi*)
2. Right Thought ..... (*sammā saṅkappa*)
3. Right Speech.....(*sammā vācā*)
4. Right Action ..... (*sammā kammanta*)
5. Right Livelihood ..... (*sammā ājīva*)
6. Right Effort ..... (*sammā vāyāma*)
7. Right Mindfulness ..... (*sammā sati*)
8. Right Concentration.....(*sammā samādhi*)

It is, in other words, morality (*sīla*), concentration (*samādhi*), and wisdom (*paññā*): the three trainings. We must practise these three trainings systematically.

Altogether, there are Thirty-Seven Requisites of Enlightenment (*bodhipakkhiyadhamma*). It was The Buddha's wish that His disciples learn these Thirty-Seven Requisites of Enlightenment by heart, and practise them until arahantship. If we do that, we can give this inheritance to future generations. Doing so, we and future generations will receive benefits and happiness in this world, up to the attainment of Nibbāna.

### The Buddha's Exhortations to the Saṅgha

The Buddha said further:<sup>1</sup>

*Handa dāni bhikkhave āmantayāmi vo,  
vayadhammā saṅkhārū appamādena sampādettha.*

**(Bhikkhus, all formations are subject to dissolution;  
therefore strive with diligence.)**

All mentality-materiality and their causes are called formations (*saṅkhāra*), because they are produced by their respective causes. Formations are always impermanent.

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.3 'Mahāparinibbāna Sutta' 185 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

You should not forget about the nature of impermanence. It is because you forget about the nature of impermanence, that you aspire for yourself, for sons, daughters, family, etc. If you knew anything of the nature of impermanence, then throughout your life you would try to escape from it. So you should not forget how The Buddha exhorted us:

**Bhikkhus, all formations are subject to dissolution;  
therefore strive with diligence.**

The Buddha then said:

*Na ciraṃ Tathāgataṃ Parinibbānaṃ bhavissati.*

*Ito tinnam māsānaṃ accayena Tathāgato parinibbāyissati.*

(The time of the Tathāgata's Parinibbāna is near.

Three months from now the Tathāgata will attain Parinibbāna.)

That means He would pass away completely. Those words were really sad words to hear.

The Buddha said also:

*Paripakko vayo mayhaṃ, parittam mama jīvitaṃ.*

(My years are now full ripe; the life span left is short.)

He described His old age to the Venerable Ānanda:<sup>1</sup>

Now I am frail, Ānanda, old, aged, far gone in years.

This is my eightieth year, and my life is spent.

Even as an old cart, Ānanda, is held together with much difficulty,  
so the body of the Tathāgata is kept going only with supports.

It is, Ānanda, only when the Tathāgata, disregarding external objects, with the cessation of certain feelings, attains to and abides in the signless concentration of mind,<sup>2</sup> that His body is comfortable.

<sup>1</sup> *ibid.* 165

<sup>2</sup> Arahant Fruition-Attainment with the Signless object of Nibbāna as object. Please see endnote 1 below, p.314

The Buddha said further:<sup>1</sup>

*Pahāya vo gamissāmi, kataṃ me saraṇamattano.*

(Departing, I leave you, relying on myself alone.)

That means He would attain Parinibbāna, and depart from them. He had made His own refuge up to arahantship.

### The Buddha's Advice to Bhikkhus

That is why The Buddha also said:<sup>2</sup>

Therefore, Ānanda, be islands unto yourselves, refuges unto yourselves, seeking no external refuge; with the Dhamma as your island, the Dhamma as your refuge, seeking no other refuge.

And how, Ānanda, is a bhikkhu an island unto himself, a refuge unto himself, seeking no external refuge, with the Dhamma as his island, the Dhamma as his refuge, seeking no other refuge?

The Buddha's answer was as follows:<sup>3</sup>

*Appamattā satimanto susīlā hotha bhikkhavo:*

*Susamāhitasāṅkappā sacittamanurakkhatha.*

(Be diligent, then, O bhikkhus, be mindful and of virtue pure.

With firm resolve, guard your minds.)

*Susīlā hotha bhikkhavo*, means, 'Bhikkhus, you should try to purify your conduct. You should try to be bhikkhus who have complete purification of conduct.' This means we must cultivate the training of morality, that is, right speech, right action and right livelihood.

<sup>1</sup> D.ii.3 'Mahāparinibbāna Sutta' 185 ('Great Parinibbāna Sutta')

<sup>2</sup> *ibid.* 165

<sup>3</sup> *ibid.* 185

*Susamāhitasāṅkappā*: ‘*Susamāhita*’ means we must practise the training of concentration, which is right effort, right mindfulness and right concentration. ‘*Sāṅkappā*’ means the training of wisdom, which is right thought and right view.

*Appamattā* means to see with insight-knowledge the nature of impermanence, suffering, and non-self in formations.

*Satimanto* means that when we practise the three trainings of virtuous conduct, concentration, and wisdom, we must have enough mindfulness.

So we must be mindful and diligent. Mindful of what? Mindful of the Four Foundations of Mindfulness, of mentality-materiality, or in other words, we must be mindful of formations.

Finally, The Buddha said:

*Yo imasmim dhamma-vinaye appamatto vihessati.*

*Pahāya jātisaṃsāraṃ dukkhassantaṃ karissati.*

(Whoever earnestly pursues the Dhamma and the Discipline shall go beyond the round of births, and make an end of suffering.)

So, if we want to reach the end of the round of rebirths, we must follow The Buddha's teachings; that is, the Noble Eightfold Path. Let us strive with effort before death takes place.

May all beings be happy.

## Endnote

Gotama Buddha had three kinds of Arahant Fruition-Attainment:<sup>1</sup>

1. Post-Path Fruition-Attainment .....(*maggānātra phala-samāpatti*)
2. Resorting Fruition-Attainment .....(*vaḷañjana phala-samāpatti*)
3. Lifespan-Maintenance Fruition-Attainment<sup>2</sup> .....(*āyusaṅkhāra phala-samāpatti*)

1. Post-Path Fruition Attainment: This arahant fruition-attainment comes immediately after the Noble Arahant-Path wholesome-kamma: it has the characteristic of immediate fruition, and is referred to as a momentary fruition-attainment (*khaṇika phala-samāpatti*). The three fruition consciousness-moments that arise immediately after a Buddha's Noble Arahant Path consciousness are of this kind.
2. Resorting Fruition Attainment: This is the sustained arahant fruition-Attainment that an arahant may enter at will, is the Fruition-attainment that is the enjoyment of the peaceful bliss of Nibbana, and is also referred to as a momentary fruition-attainment (*khaṇika phala-samāpatti*). The Buddha would enter this attainment at all times, even when, during a discourse, the audience applauded by saying ‘Sādhu, Sādhu’.
3. Lifespan-maintenance Fruition Attainment: This arahant fruition-attainment always follows Vipassanā with the Seven Ways for Materiality and Seven Ways for Mentality:<sup>3</sup> they were practised by the Bodhisatta on the threshold of Enlightenment under the Mahābodhi Tree, and daily by The Buddha from the day his back pain arose at Veḷ uva village until His Parinibbāna. About to complete the Vipassanā, and enter this arahant fruition-attainment, The Buddha would emerge, resolve, ‘From today until Mahāparinibbāna day, may this affliction not occur’, and then resume the Vipassanā to afterwards enter the arahant fruition-attainment.

The difference between the momentary fruition-attainments and the lifespan maintenance fruition-attainment is the preceding Vipassanā. The momentary arahant-fruition attainment that is just the enjoyment of the peaceful bliss of Nibbāna is preceded by an ordinary mode of entering into Vipassanā, whereas the lifespan maintenance arahant-fruition attainment is preceded by a higher

<sup>1</sup> DA.II.3 ‘*Mahāparinibbāna Sutta*’ B164 (‘Great Parinibbāna Sutta’)

<sup>2</sup> The life-span maintenance fruition-attainment (*āyusaṅkhāra-phala-samāpatti*) is also called *āyupālaka-phala-samāpatti* (life-span protection fruition-attainment) and *jīvitasaṅkhāra-phala-samāpatti* (life-faculty maintenance fruition-attainment).

<sup>3</sup> For details on the Seven Ways for Materiality and Seven Ways for Mentality, please see p.260ff

mode of Vipassanā that requires greater effort, namely, the Seven Ways for Materiality (*rūpasattaka*) and the Seven Ways for Mentality (*arūpasattaka*). The difference in effect is that the momentary arahant-fruit attainment suppresses an ailment for only as long as the attainment lasts: like a stone that falls into water clears the water for only as long as the impact of the stone lasts, after which the water-weeds return again. But the lifespan maintenance arahant-fruit attainment can suppress an affliction for a determined period (here ten months): as if a strong man were to descend into a lake and clear away the water-weeds, which would not return for a considerable time.

## Talk 9

**The Most Superior Kind of Offering**  
(Rejoicement Talk to Donors, Organizers and Helpers)<sup>1</sup>

**Introduction**

There are two kinds of offering:

1. The offering with full fruition
2. The offering with no fruition

Which kind of offering do you prefer? Please answer our question.

Let us look at The Buddha's wishes for His disciples (*sāvaka*), regarding offering in this dispensation. Your wish and The Buddha's wish may be the same or different. Let us look at the '*Dakḥiṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*'.<sup>2</sup>

Once The Buddha was living in the Sakyan country, at Kapi-lavatthu in Nigrodha's Park. Then Mahāpajāpatigotamī went to The Buddha with a new pair of cloths, which she had had made by skilled weavers. After paying homage to The Buddha, she sat down to one side and said to The Buddha: 'Bhante, this new pair of cloths has been spun by me, and woven by me, specially for The Buddha. Bhante, let The Buddha out of compassion accept it from me.' The Buddha then said:

**Give it to the Saṅgha, Gotamī. When you give it to the Saṅgha,  
the offering will be made both to Me and to the Saṅgha.**

She asked The Buddha in the same way three times, and The Buddha answered in the same way three times. Then Venerable

<sup>1</sup> A talk given after an offering, such as is the case here, is in Pāli called an *anumodana* talk: *mo-dana* means rejoicing, and *anu* means repeatedly. An *anumodana* talk is thus a rejoicement-talk meant to elevate the minds of the givers, thereby increasing the good kamma and merit of their action, and imprinting it on the mind.

<sup>2</sup> M.III.iv.12 'Offerings Analysis Sutta'

Ānanda said to The Buddha: 'Bhante, please accept the new pair of robes from Mahāpajāpatigotamī . Mahāpajāpatigotamī has been very helpful to The Buddha. Although she was Your mother's sister, she was Your nurse, Your foster mother, and the one who gave You milk. She suckled The Buddha when The Buddha's own mother died.

'The Buddha has been very helpful towards Mahāpajāpatigotamī . It is owing to The Buddha that Mahāpajāpatigotamī has gone for refuge to The Buddha, the Dhamma, and the Saṅgha. It is owing to The Buddha that Mahāpajāpatigotamī abstains from killing living beings, from taking what is not given, from misconduct in sensual pleasures, from false speech, and from wine, liquor and intoxicants, which are the basis of negligence. It is owing to The Buddha that Mahāpajāpatigotamī possesses perfect confidence in The Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṅgha, and that she possesses the virtue loved by noble ones (*ariya*). It is owing to The Buddha that Mahāpajāpatigotamī is free from doubt about the Noble Truth of Suffering (*dukkha sacca*), about the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering (*samudaya sacca*), about the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering (*nirodha sacca*), and about the Noble Truth of the Way Leading to the Cessation of Suffering (*magga sacca*). So The Buddha too has been very helpful towards Mahāpajāpatigotamī .'

**The Disciple's Debts to His Teacher**

Then The Buddha replied as follows:

That is so, Ānanda, that is so. ....(Evametam Ānanda; evametam Ānanda.)

- When a disciple, owing to a teacher,  
has gone for refuge to The Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṅgha,  
I say that it is not easy for that disciple to repay the teacher  
by paying homage to him, rising up for him, according him reverential  
salutation and polite services, and by providing the four requisites.
- When a disciple, owing to the teacher, has come to abstain  
from killing living beings,

from taking what is not given,  
 from misconduct in sensual pleasures,  
 from false speech, and  
 from wine, liquor and intoxicants, which are the basis of negligence,

I say that it is not easy for that disciple to repay the teacher by paying homage to him, rising up for him, according him reverential salutation and polite services, and by providing the four requisites.

- When a disciple, owing to the teacher, has come to possess perfect confidence in The Buddha, the Dhamma and the Saṅgha, and to possess the virtue loved by noble ones (*ariya*),  
 I say that it is not easy for that disciple to repay the teacher by paying homage to him, rising up for him, according him reverential salutation and polite services, and by providing the four requisites.
- When a disciple, owing to the teacher, has become free from doubt about the Noble Truth of Suffering (*dukkha sacca*), about the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering (*samudaya sacca*), about the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering (*nirodha sacca*), and about the Noble Truth of the Way Leading to the Cessation of Suffering (*maggā sacca*), I say that it is not easy for that disciple to repay the teacher by paying homage to him, rising up for him, according him reverential salutation and polite services, and by providing the four requisites.

Here, let us discuss what The Buddha means.

If a disciple knows the Four Noble Truths through the guidance of a teacher, his insight-knowledge of the Four Noble Truths is comparatively more beneficial than his acts of respect, and providing of the four requisites to the teacher. If he knows the Four Noble Truths through Stream-Entry Path Knowledge (*sotāpatti maggañāṇa*), and Stream-Entry Fruition Knowledge (*sotāpatti phalañāṇa*), then that insight-knowledge will help him escape from the four woeful realms (*apāya*). This result is wonderful. Those who neglect to perform wholesome deeds, usually wander the four woeful realms. The four woeful realms are like their home: *Pamattassa ca*

*nāma cattāro apāyā sakagehasadisā*.<sup>1</sup> They only sometimes visit good realms. So it is a great opportunity to be able to escape from the four woeful realms. It cannot be compared to the disciple's acts of respect, and providing of four requisites to the teacher.

Again, if a disciple knows the the Four Noble Truths through Once-Return Path Knowledge (*sakadāgāmi maggañāṇa*) and Once-Return Fruition Knowledge (*sakadāgāmi phalañāṇa*), he will come back to this human world once only. But if he knows the Four Noble Truths through Non-Return Path Knowledge (*anāgāmi maggañāṇa*), and Non-Return Fruition Knowledge (*anāgāmi phalañāṇa*), his insight-knowledge will help him escape from the eleven sensual realms. He will definitely be reborn in a brahma realm. He will never return to this sensual realm. Brahma bliss is far superior to sensual pleasure. In the brahma realm there is no man, no woman, no son, no daughter, no family. There is no fighting and quarrelling. It is not necessary to take any food. Their lifespan is very long. There is no one who can spoil their happiness. They are free from all dangers. But they are subject to decay; subject to death; subject to rebirth again, if they do not attain arahantship.

Again, if a disciple knows the Four Noble Truths through the Arahant Path (*arahatta magga*) and Arahant Fruition (*arahatta phala*), his insight-knowledge will lead to his escape from the round of rebirths. After his Parinibbāna he will definitely attain Nibbāna, and he will have no more suffering at all, no more rebirth, decay, disease, death, etc. So these benefits are more valuable than the disciple's acts of respect, and providing the four requisites to the teacher. Even if a disciple offers a pile of requisites as high as Mount Meru, that offering is not enough to repay his debt, because the escape from the round of rebirths, or the escape from rebirth, decay, disease, and death is more valuable.

What are the Four Noble Truths that the disciple has understood?

<sup>1</sup> DhA.I.i.1 'Cakkhupalathera Vatthu' ('Venerable Cakkhupala Case')

1. The Noble Truth of Suffering.....(*dukkha sacca*):  
This is the five aggregates.  
If a disciple knows the Noble truth of Suffering, dependent upon a teacher, this insight-knowledge is more valuable than acts of respect, and providing the four requisites to the teacher.
2. The Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering.....(*samudaya sacca*):  
This is dependent-origination.  
If a disciple knows dependent-origination dependent upon a teacher, this insight-knowledge is also more valuable than acts of respect, and providing the four requisites to the teacher.
3. The Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering .....(*nirodha sacca*):  
This is Nibbāna.  
If a disciple knows Nibbāna dependent upon a teacher, this insight-knowledge is also more valuable than acts of respect, and providing the four requisites to the teacher.
4. The Noble Truth of the Way Leading to  
the Cessation of Suffering .....(*maggā sacca*):  
This is the Noble Eightfold Path. In other words, this is insight-knowledge (*vipassanā ñāṇa*) and Path Knowledge (*maggāñāṇa*).

If a disciple possesses insight-knowledge and Path Knowledge dependent upon a teacher, these insight-knowledges are more valuable than acts of respect, and providing the four requisites to the teacher, because these insight-knowledges lead to one's escape from the round of rebirths, whereas acts of respect, and providing the four requisites, cannot be a direct cause for escape from the round of rebirths. Offering the four requisites can, however, be an indirect contributing cause for one who is practising Samatha-Vipassanā to attain Nibbāna.

### Opportunities Not to Be Missed

Here again we should like to explain further. The five aggregates are the first Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of Suffering. In the five aggregates is included the materiality-aggregate (*rūpakkhandha*). Materiality (*rūpa*) arises as *rūpa-kalāpas* (small particles). When they are analysed, one sees that there are generally twenty-eight types of materiality. Please consider this problem.

Outside a Buddha's dispensation, there is no teacher who can teach about these types of materiality, and how to classify them. Only a Buddha and his disciples can discern these types of materiality, and teach how to classify them. Again, in the five aggregates are included also the four mentality-aggregates (*nāmakkhanda*). Apart from the rebirth-linking consciousness, *bhavaṅga*-, and death-consciousness, these mental formations arise according to cognitive-processes. The Buddha taught exactly how many associated mental factors (*cetasika*) are associated with one consciousness (*citta*) in a consciousness-moment (*cittakkhaṇa*), and he taught how to discern and classify them. There is no teacher outside a Buddha's dispensation who can show and teach these mental formations clearly, because there is no other teacher who fully understands. But if a disciple of this Sakyamuni Buddha practises hard and systematically, according to the instructions of The Buddha, he can discern these mental formations clearly. This is a unique opportunity for Buddhists. You should not miss this opportunity.

Again, dependent-origination is the second Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of the Origin of Suffering. The Buddha also taught his disciples how to discern dependent-origination. When a disciple of The Buddha discerns dependent-origination according to the instructions of The Buddha, he fully understands the relationship between cause and effect. He can gain the insight-knowledge which knows that the past cause produces the present effect, and that the present cause produces the future effect. He knows that within the three periods, past, present and future, there is no creator to create an effect, and that there is nothing which occurs without a cause. This knowledge can also be gained in only a Buddha's dispensation. You should not miss this opportunity either.

Again, when a disciple discerns dependent-origination, he sees past lives and future lives. If you discern many past lives, you gain the insight-knowledge of knowing which type of unwholesome kamma produces rebirth in the woeful realms, and which type of wholesome kamma produces rebirth in good realms.

Knowledge of the thirty-one realms, and the Law of Karma, can be found in the teachings of only a Buddha. Outside a Buddha's dispensation, there is no one who can come to know the thirty-one realms, and the Law of Karma, that produces rebirth in each realm. You should not miss this opportunity either.

Again, if a disciple discerns cause and effect in future lives, he also sees the cessation of mentality-materiality. He knows fully when his mentality-materiality will cease. This is the third Noble Truth, the Noble Truth of the Cessation of Suffering. This knowledge can be gained in only a Buddha's dispensation. You should not miss this opportunity either.

Again, The Buddha also taught the way, the fourth Noble Truth, that is Samatha-Vipassanā, to reach the state of cessation. Samatha-Vipassanā means the Noble Eightfold Path. The Knowledge of Analysing Mentality-Materiality and the Knowledge of Discerning Cause and Condition are right view (*sammā diṭṭhi*). The Knowledge of the Cessation of Mentality-Materiality is also right view. The Knowledge of the Noble Eightfold Path is also right view. Application of the mind to the Four Noble Truths is right thought (*sammā saṅkappa*). Right view and right thought are Vipassanā. To practise Vipassanā we must have Samatha concentration, which is right effort (*sammā vāyāma*), right mindfulness (*sammā sati*), and right concentration (*sammā samādhi*). When we cultivate Samatha-Vipassanā, we should have purification of morality, that is right speech (*sammā vācā*), right action (*sammā kammanta*), and right livelihood (*sammā ājīva*). To cultivate Samatha-Vipassanā based on morality (*sīla*) is to cultivate the Noble Eightfold Path. This Noble Eightfold Path can be found in only a Buddha's dispensation. You should not miss this opportunity either. Why? Insight-knowledge of the Four Noble Truths leads to a disciple's escape from the round of rebirths.

### The Fourteen Kinds of Personal Offering

As mentioned, this escape can be assisted by the disciple's acts of offering. In the '*Dakkhiṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*', mentioned in the

beginning of this talk, The Buddha explains the fourteen kinds of personal offering (*pāṭipuggalika dakkhiṇa*):

**Ānanda, there are fourteen kinds of personal offering:**

- [1] **One makes an offering to a Buddha:**  
this is the first kind of personal offering.
- [2] **One makes an offering to a Paccekabuddha:**  
this is the second kind of personal offering.
- [3] **One makes an offering to an arahant, a disciple of The Buddha:**  
this is the third kind of personal offering.
- [4] **One makes an offering to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of an arahantship:**  
this is the fourth kind of personal offering.
- [5] **One makes an offering to a non-returner (*anāgāmi*):**  
this is the fifth kind of personal offering.
- [6] **One makes an offering to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of non-return:**  
this is the sixth kind of personal offering.
- [7] **One makes an offering to a once-returner (*sakadāgāmi*):**  
this is the seventh kind of personal offering.
- [8] **One makes an offering to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of once-return:**  
this is the eighth kind of personal offering.
- [9] **One makes an offering to a stream-enterer (*sotāpanna*):**  
this is the ninth kind of personal offering.
- [10] **One makes an offering to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of stream-entry:**  
this is the tenth kind of personal offering.
- [11] **One makes an offering to one outside the dispensation who is free from lust for sensual pleasures due to attainment of jhāna:**  
this is the eleventh kind of personal offering.
- [12] **One makes an offering to a virtuous ordinary person (*puṭhujjana*):**  
this is the twelfth kind of personal offering.
- [13] **One makes an offering to an immoral ordinary person:**  
this is the thirteenth kind of personal offering.



[14] **One makes an offering to an animal:**

**this is the fourteenth kind of personal offering.**

The Buddha then explained the benefits of these fourteen kinds of offering:

- **By making an offering to an animal, with a pure mind, the offering may be expected to repay a hundredfold.**

That means it can produce its result in a hundred lives. Here ‘pure mind’ means offering without expecting anything in return, such as help from the receiver. One makes the offering only to accumulate wholesome kamma, with strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma. Suppose someone feeds a dog with the thought: ‘This is my dog’. Such a thought is not a pure mind state. But if someone gives food to the birds, such as pigeons, then the offering is pure, because he does not expect anything from the birds. This applies also to the instances mentioned later. For example, if a person offers requisites to a bhikkhu, with the thought that it will bring about success in his business it is not offering with a pure mind. This kind of offering does not produce superior benefits.

The Buddha explained further:

- **By making an offering with a pure mind to an immoral ordinary person, the offering may be expected to repay a thousandfold.**
- **By making an offering to a virtuous ordinary person, the offering may be expected to repay a hundred-thousandfold.**
- **By making an offering to one outside the dispensation who is free from lust for sensual pleasures, due to attainment of jhāna, the offering may be expected to repay a hundred-thousand times a hundred-thousandfold.**
- **By making an offering to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of stream-entry, the offering may be expected to repay incalculably, immeasurably.**
- **What then should be said about making an offering to a stream-enterer; or to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of once-return, or to a once-returner; or to one who has entered upon the**

**way to the realization of the fruit of non-return, or to a non-returner; or to one who has entered upon the way to the realization of the fruit of arahantship, or to an arahant; or to a Paccekabuddha, or to a Buddha, a Fully Enlightened One?**

Here, an offering means one offers food enough for one meal only. If a giver offers many times, such as, over many days or many months, there are no words to describe the benefits of those offerings. These are the different kinds of personal offering (*pāṭipuggalika dakkhiṇa*).

### **The Seven Kinds of Offering to the Saṅgha**

The Buddha then explained to the Venerable Ānanda:

**There are, Ānanda, seven kinds of offerings made to the Saṅgha** (*Saṅghika Dāna*).

- [1] **One makes an offering to a Saṅgha of both bhikkhus and bhikkhunis headed by The Buddha:**  
**this is the first kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**
- [2] **One makes an offering to a Saṅgha of both bhikkhus and bhikkhunis after The Buddha has attained Parinibbāna:**  
**this is the second kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**
- [3] **One makes an offering to a Saṅgha of bhikkhus;**  
**this is the third kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**
- [4] **One makes an offering to a Saṅgha of bhikkhunis:**  
**this is the fourth kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**
- [5] **One makes an offering, saying:**  
**‘Appoint so many bhikkhus and bhikkhunis to me from the Saṅgha’:**  
**this is the fifth kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**
- [6] **One makes an offering, saying:**  
**‘Appoint so many bhikkhus to me from the Saṅgha’:**  
**this is the sixth kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.**

[7] One makes an offering, saying:

‘Appoint so many bhikkhunis to me from the Saṅgha’:  
this is the seventh kind of offering made to the Saṅgha.

These are the seven kinds of offering to the Saṅgha. The Buddha then compared personal offerings to offerings to the Saṅgha:

In future times, Ānanda,  
there will be members of the clan who are ‘yellow-necks’,  
immoral, of evil character.  
People will make offerings to those immoral persons on behalf of the Saṅgha.  
Even then, I say,  
an offering made to the Saṅgha is incalculable, immeasurable.  
And I say that in no way does an offering to a person individually,  
ever have greater fruit than an offering made to the Saṅgha.

This means that offerings made to the Saṅgha (*saṅghika dāna*) are more beneficial than personal offerings (*pāṭipuggalika dakkhina*). If Mahāpajāpatigotamī offered the robes to the Saṅgha headed by The Buddha it would be far more beneficial. The result would be incalculable and immeasurable. So The Buddha urged her to offer them to the Saṅgha too.

The Buddha also explained the four kinds of purification of offering:

#### The Four Kinds of Purification of Offering

There are four kinds of purification of offering.

What are the four? They are:

- [1] There is the offering that is purified by the giver, but not the receiver.
  - [2] There is the offering that is purified by the receiver, but not the giver.
  - [3] There is the offering that is purified  
by neither the giver nor the receiver.
  - [4] There is the offering that is purified by both the giver and the receiver.
- [1] What is the offering that is purified by the giver, but not the receiver?  
Here the giver is virtuous, of good character,

and the receiver is immoral, of evil character.

Thus, the offering is purified by the giver, but not the receiver.

- [2] What is the offering that is purified by the receiver, but not the giver?  
Here the giver is immoral, of evil character,  
and the receiver is virtuous, of good character.  
Thus, the offering is purified by the receiver, but not the giver.

- [3] What is the offering that is purified  
by neither the giver nor the receiver?  
Here the giver is immoral, of evil character,  
and the receiver too is immoral, of evil character.  
Thus, the offering is purified by neither the giver nor the receiver.

- [4] What is the offering that is purified by both the giver and the receiver?  
Here the giver is virtuous, of good character,  
and the receiver too is virtuous, of good character.  
Thus, the offering is purified by both the giver and the receiver.

These are the four kinds of purification of offering.  
The Buddha explained further:

When a virtuous person to an immoral person gives,  
With clear and taintless mind<sup>1</sup> a gift that has been righteously obtained,  
Placing faith in that the fruit of kamma is great,  
The giver’s virtue purifies the offering with no attachment, anger, etc.

To get superior benefits, the giver should fulfil the four conditions. Because then, although the receiver is an immoral person, the offering is purified by the giver.

The commentary mentions the case of Vessantara.<sup>2</sup> Our bodhisatta in a past life as Vessantara, offered his son and daughter (the future Rāhula and Uppalavaṇṇā) to Jūjaka Brāhmaṇa, who was immoral, of evil character. That offering was the final one,

<sup>1</sup> With no expectations, attachment, anger, etc.

<sup>2</sup> MA.III.iv.12 ‘*Dakkhīṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*’ (‘Offerings Analysis Sutta’)

for Vessantara's generosity pāramī s to be fulfilled. After fulfilling this last pāramī , he was ready to attain enlightenment: He had only to wait for the time to mature. Because of this generosity pāramī , and other previous pāramī s, he was now certain to attain Omniscient Knowledge (*sabbāññuta ñāṇa*). So we can say that the offering was a support for his attaining enlightenment. It was purified by Vessantara. At that time Vessantara was virtuous, of good character. His offering had been rightly obtained. His mind was clear and taintless, because he had only one desire: to attain enlightenment. He had strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results. So the offering was purified by the giver.

An offering is purified by the receiver, when an immoral person, whose mind is unclear, full of attachment, hatred, etc., who has no faith in the Law of Kamma, makes an unrighteously obtained offering to a virtuous person. The commentary mentions the case of a fisherman. A fisherman living near the mouth of the Kalyāṇī River in Sri Lanka, had three times offered almsfood to a Mahāthera who was an arahant. At the time near death, the fisherman remembered his offerings to that Mahāthera. Good signs of a deva realm appeared in his mind, so before he died he said to his relatives, 'That Mahāthera saved me.' After death he went to a deva realm. In this case the fisherman was immoral and of bad character, but the receiver was virtuous. So the offering was purified by the receiver.

An offering is purified by neither the giver nor the receiver, when an immoral person, whose mind is unclear, full of attachment, hatred, etc., who has no faith in the Law of Kamma, makes an unrighteously obtained offering to an immoral person. The commentary mentions the case of a hunter. When he died, he went to the peta realm. Then his wife offered almsfood on his behalf, to a bhikkhu who was immoral, of bad character; so the peta could not call out, 'It is good (*sādhu*)'. Why? The giver too was immoral, and not virtuous, because she had, as the wife of a hunter, accompanied him when he killed animals. Also, her offering had been unrighteously obtained, as it was acquired through killing animals. Her mind was unclear because had it been clear

and understanding, she would not have accompanied her husband. She did not have enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results, because had she had enough faith in the Law of Kamma, she would never have killed beings. Since the receiver too was immoral, of bad character, the offering could be purified by neither giver nor receiver. She offered almsfood in the same way three times, and no good result occurred; so the peta shouted, 'An immoral person has three times stolen my wealth.' Then she offered almsfood to a virtuous bhikkhu, who then purified the offering. At that time the peta could call out 'It is good' (*Sādhu!*), and escape from the peta realm.

(Here we should like to say to the audience; if you want good results from offering you should fulfil the following four conditions:

1. You must be virtuous,
2. Your offering must have been righteously obtained,
3. Your mind must be clear and taintless,
4. You must have strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results.

Furthermore, if you are the receiver, and your loving-kindness and compassion for the giver is strong enough, you should also be virtuous. If your virtue is accompanied by jhāna and insight-knowledge, it is much better. Why? This kind of offering can produce better results for the giver.)

Now, please note the next kind of offering, the fourth kind of purification of an offering.

4. An offering is purified by both the giver and the receiver, when the giver has fulfilled the four conditions:
  1. The giver is virtuous,
  2. The giver's offering has been righteously obtained,
  3. The giver's mind is clear and taintless,
  4. The giver has strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results,

and the receiver too is virtuous.

As for this kind of offering, The Buddha said:

**Ānanda, I say, this kind of offering will come to full fruition.**

This offering can produce incalculable, immeasurable results. If the receiver's virtue is accompanied by jhāna, insight-knowledge, or Path and Fruition Knowledges, then the virtue of the offering is superior.

### The Six Qualities of an Immeasurable Offering

Here let us look at another sutta: the '*Chaḷ arḡadāna Sutta*' in the *Arḡuttara Nikāya*, '*Chakka Nipāta*'.<sup>1</sup> Once The Buddha was living near Sāvathī, at Jetavana in Anāthapiṇṇika's Park. Then Nanda's mother, a lay disciple of The Buddha, who lived in Velukandaka, offered almsfood. Her offering was endowed with six qualities, and the receiver was the Bhikkhu Saṅgha, headed by the Venerables Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna. The Buddha saw the offering with his divine eye, and addressed the monks thus:

**Bhikkhus, the lay disciple of Velukandaka has prepared an offering endowed with six qualities to the Saṅgha, [which is]**

**headed by Sāriputta and Mahāmoggallāna.**

**How, bhikkhus, is an offering endowed with six qualities?**

**Bhikkhus, the giver should be endowed with three qualities, and the receiver also should be endowed with three qualities.**

**What are the giver's three qualities? Bhikkhus,**

- [1] **Before giving the giver is glad at heart,**
- [2] **While giving the giver's heart is satisfied,**
- [3] **After giving the giver is joyful.**

**These are the three qualities of the giver.**

<sup>1</sup> A.VI.iv.7 'Six-Qualities Offering Sutta'

**What are the three qualities of the receiver? Bhikkhus,**

- [1] **The receiver is either free from attachment, or  
is trying to destroy attachment,**
  - [2] **The receiver is either free from anger, or is trying to destroy anger,**
  - [3] **The receiver is either free from delusion, or is trying to destroy delusion.**
- These are the three qualities of the receiver.**

Altogether there are six qualities. If the offering is endowed with these six qualities, it produces immeasurable and noble results.

The Buddha explained further:

Bhikkhus, it is not easy to grasp the measure of merit of such an offering by saying: 'This much is the yield in merit, the yield in goodliness, accumulated for wholesome kamma hereafter, ripening to happiness, leading to heaven, leading to happiness, longed for and loved.' Verily the great mass of merit, wholesome kamma, is just reckoned unreckonable, immeasurable.

Bhikkhus, just as it is not easy to grasp the measure of water in the great ocean, and to say: 'There are so many pailfuls, so many hundreds of pailfuls, so many thousands of pailfuls, so many hundreds of thousands of pailfuls'; for that great mass of water is reckoned unreckonable, immeasurable; even so bhikkhus, it is not easy to grasp the measure of merit in an offering endowed with the six qualities. Verily the great mass of merit is reckoned unreckonable, immeasurable.

Why? The giver was endowed with the four qualities mentioned in the '*Dakkiṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*':

1. She was virtuous,
2. Her offering had been righteously obtained,
3. Her mind was clear and taintless,
4. She had strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results.

The giver's three qualities, mentioned in the '*Chaḷ arḡadāna Sutta*', were also fulfilled:

1. Before giving she was glad at heart,
2. While giving her heart was satisfied,
3. After giving she was joyful.

It is very important that these conditions are present in a giver, whether male or female. If he or she expects incalculable and immeasurable good results, he or she should try to fulfil them. But according to the '*Dakkhiṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*', the receiver too must be virtuous. According to the '*Chaḷaṅgādāna Sutta*', it should be a bhikkhu or bhikkhunī who either has practised Samatha-Vipassanā meditation up to arahantship, or who is cultivating Samatha-Vipassanā meditation to destroy greed (*lobha*), anger (*dosa*), and delusion (*moha*).

### Offerings at Retreat

There are now, in Yi-Tung Temple, many bhikkhus and bhikkhunīs who are practising Samatha and Vipassanā meditation to destroy attachment, anger, and delusion totally. They are also virtuous. So we may say:

- Now there are worthy receivers here.
- The givers too may be virtuous.
- Their minds may be clear and taintless.
- What they have offered has been righteously obtained.
- They may have strong enough faith in the Triple Gem, and the Law of Kamma and its results.
- They were glad before giving.
- And were satisfied while giving.
- They were joyful after giving.

So we can say that the offerings made in these two months have been in accordance with The Buddha's wishes. They are noble offerings.

### The Giver's Wishes

If the givers expect good results in the future, certainly this wholesome kamma will fulfil their expectation. Why? The Buddha said in the '*Dānūpapatti Sutta*':<sup>1</sup>

*Ijjhati bhikkhave sīlavato cetopaṇidhi visuddhattā.*

(Bhikkhus,  
a virtuous person's wish will certainly be fulfilled by purification of conduct.)

So, a virtuous person's wholesome kamma can make his wish come true:

- If he wants to become a Buddha, he can become a Buddha,
- If he wants to become a Paccekabuddha  
he can become a Paccekabuddha,
- If he wants to become a Chief Disciple (*aggasāvaka*),  
he can become a Chief Disciple,
- If he wants to become a Great Disciple (*mahāsāvaka*),  
he can become a Great Disciple,
- If he wants to become an Ordinary Disciple (*pakatisāvaka*),  
he can become an Ordinary Disciple.

But this is only when his pāramīs have matured. Wishing alone is not enough to attain one of those types of enlightenment (*bodhi*). Again:

- If he wants human happiness after death,  
he can get human happiness in the human realm.
- If he wants to go to the deva realm,  
he can go to the deva realm.
- If he wants to go to the brahma realm after death,  
this wholesome kamma can be a support for him to go  
to the brahma realm.

How? If his offering fulfils the previously mentioned conditions, it means that before, while and after offering, his mind

<sup>1</sup> A.VIII.iv.5 'Almsgiving Rebirth Sutta'

is full of joy, is clear, taintless and happy, and takes the offerings and receivers as object: the receiver becomes his mind's object for the lovingkindness meditation. His loving-kindness for the receiver is strong. If he at that time practises lovingkindness meditation (*mettā bhāvanā*), his loving-kindness jhāna will take him to the brahma realm after death. In this way his offering is a support for him to go to the brahma realm. So, if the giver wants to go to the brahma realm after death, he should practise lovingkindness meditation up to jhāna. If he has practised lovingkindness jhāna, and offers almsfood, his wholesome kamma will be a superior and very powerful support for him to go to the brahma realm. So, if you want good results in the future, you should also practise lovingkindness meditation up to jhāna. Among the three kinds of happiness; human happiness, deva happiness, and brahma happiness, brahma happiness is the highest. There is no mundane happiness higher than brahma happiness. It is the most superior happiness in the thirty-one realms.

### The Most Superior of All Worldly Offerings

That was the first kind of offering mentioned in the beginning of this talk, namely, the offering with full fruition. Do you prefer this kind of offering? If you do, then please listen to the following stanza from the '*Dakkhiṇāvibhaṅga Sutta*':

*Yo vītarāgo vītarāgesu dadāti dānaṃ  
Dhammena laddhaṃ supasannacitto  
Abhisaddahaṃ kammaphalaṃ uḷhāraṃ  
Taṃ ve dānaṃ āmisadānānamagganti.*

(Bhikkhus, I say that when an arahant, with clear and taintless mind, placing faith in that the fruit of kamma is great, offers to an arahant what is righteously obtained, then that offering indeed is the most superior of all worldly offerings.)

In this case, the four qualities present in the giver are:

1. The giver is an arahant,

2. The giver's offering has been righteously obtained,
3. The giver's mind is clear and taintless,
4. The giver has strong enough faith in the Law of Kamma and its results.

But a fifth quality is necessary, namely:

5. The receiver too must be an arahant.

The Buddha taught that this kind of offering, one arahant giving to another arahant, is the most superior kind of worldly offering. He praised this kind of offering as the most superior. Why? This offering has no result. Why? The giver has destroyed delusion and all attachment to life. Ignorance (*avijjā*) and craving (*taṇhā*), are the main causes for kamma, that is volitional-formations (*saṅkhāra*). In this case, volitional-formations means good actions like making an offering to the receiver. But this kamma does not produce any result, because there are no supporting causes: there is no ignorance (*avijjā*), and no craving (*taṇhā*). If the root of a tree is totally destroyed, the tree cannot produce any fruit. In the same way, an arahant's offering cannot produce any result, because he has totally destroyed those roots; ignorance and craving. He has no expectation of a future life. In the '*Ratana Sutta*', The Buddha taught the following stanza:<sup>1</sup>

*Khīnaṃ purāṇaṃ nava natthi sambhavaṃ  
Virattacittā'yatike bhavasmim  
Te khīṇabijā avirūḷhichandā  
Nibbanti dhīrā yathāyaṃ paṭīpo  
Idampi sanghe ratanaṃ paṇītaṃ  
Etena saccena suvatthi hotu.*

(Arahants have exhausted all old wholesome and unwholesome kamma.

New wholesome and unwholesome kamma do not occur in them.

**They have exhausted the seeds of rebirth.**<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sn.ii.1 'Jewel Sutta'

<sup>2</sup> The seeds of rebirth: ignorance, craving, and force of kamma.

**They have no expectation of a future life.**

**All their mentality-materiality will cease like an oil lamp,  
when the oil and wick are exhausted.**

**By this truth may all beings be happy and free from all dangers.)**

This is an assertion of truth. By the assertion of this truth all the people in Vesālī became free from dangers.<sup>1</sup>

An arahant's offering is the most superior because it has no result in the future. If there is no future life, there will be no rebirth, decay, disease and death. This is the most superior. This is the second kind of offering mentioned at the beginning of this Dhamma talk: an offering with no fruition, no result.

But in the case of the first kind of offering mentioned, the offering with result, such as happiness in the human realm, happiness in the deva realm, or happiness in the brahma realm, there is still suffering. The very least is that the giver is still subject to rebirth, subject to disease, subject to decay, and subject to death. If the giver is still attached to sensual objects, animate and inanimate, then when those objects are destroyed or have died, he will experience sorrow, lamentation, physical suffering, mental suffering, and despair.

Please consider this question: Can we say that an offering is superior when it produces rebirth, decay, disease, death, sorrow, lamentation, physical suffering, mental suffering, and despair? Please consider also this question: Can we say that an offering is superior when it produces no result: no rebirth, no decay, no disease, no death, no sorrow, no lamentation, no physical suffering, no mental suffering, and no despair? This is why The Buddha praised the second kind of offering as the most superior. Now you may understand the meaning of this Dhamma talk. At the beginning of this Dhamma talk were mentioned the two kinds of offering:

<sup>1</sup> Vesālī was a city visited by drought, famine, evil yakkhas (lower devas), and epidemic diseases. The people of Vesālī asked The Buddha to help them, and He taught them the '*Ratana Sutta*'

1. The offering with full fruition,
2. The offering with no fruition.

Which kind of offering do you prefer? Now you know the answer.

### **How You Make a Most Superior Offering**

But if the giver is not an arahant, how can he then make the second kind of offering? In the '*Chaḷ aṅgadāna Sutta*' mentioned before, The Buddha taught that there are two ways he can do this: when the receiver either is free from attachment, anger, and delusion, or is trying to destroy attachment, anger, and delusion. You can say that the offering is also most superior, if the giver too is trying to destroy attachment, anger, and delusion; if he at the time of offering practises Vipassanā:<sup>1</sup>

- If he discerns his own mentality-materiality, and discerns their impermanent (*anicca*), suffering (*dukkha*), and non-self (*anatta*) nature;
- If he discerns the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of external mentality-materiality, especially the receiver's mentality-materiality;
- If he discerns the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of the ultimate materiality of the offerings.
- If he discerns the impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature of wholesome mentality dhammas, which arise in him while offering.

When he looks at the four elements in the offerings, he sees the rūpa-kalāpas easily. When he analyses the rūpa-kalāpas, he discerns the eight elements: earth-, water-, fire-, and wind-element, colour, odour, flavour and nutritive essence. The rūpa-kalāpas are generations of temperature-produced materiality (*utuja-rūpa*), pro-

<sup>1</sup> *Paṭṭhāna* (*Conditional Relations*) (fifth book of the *Abhidhamma*) '*Kusalattika*' ('Wholesome Triads' §423

duced by the fire-element in each rūpa-kalāpa.<sup>1</sup> Then he discerns their impermanent, suffering, and non-self nature. If the giver is able to do this type of Vipassanā, his attachment, anger and delusion are suppressed at the time of offering, and also, his offering will usually produce no result. That way, we can say that also this kind of offering is most superior.

The giver can do this type of Vipassanā before, after or while offering. But his Vipassanā must be strong and powerful. He must have practised up to the stage of at least Knowledge of Dissolution (*bhanga nāṇa*). Only then can he practise this type of Vipassanā. We should not miss this opportunity either. This opportunity exists only in a Buddha's dispensation. But you may ask, how can we make this kind of offering if we have no insight-knowledge? We should like to suggest that you then make your offering with the thought: 'May this offering be a contributory cause to attaining Nibbāna.' This is because The Buddha many times taught to make offerings with the wish for Nibbāna.

We should like to conclude our Dhamma talk by repeating the stanza from the '*Ratana Sutta*':

*Khīnaṃ purāṇaṃ nava natthi sambhavaṃ  
Virattacittā'yatike bhavasmim  
Te khīṇabījā avirūḷhichandā  
Nibbanti dhīrā yathāyaṃ padīpo  
Idampi sanghe ratanaṃ paṇītaṃ  
Etena saccena suvatthi hotu.*

**(Arahants have exhausted all old wholesome and unwholesome kamma.  
New wholesome and unwholesome kamma do not occur in them.  
They have exhausted the seeds of rebirth.<sup>2</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> For details regarding the regeneration of temperature-produced materiality, please see p.139

<sup>2</sup> The seeds of rebirth: ignorance, craving, and force of kamma. Please see the three rounds of dependent origination, p.228

**They have no expectation of a future life.**

**All their mentality-materiality will cease like an oil lamp,  
when the oil and wick are exhausted.**

**By this truth may all beings be happy and free from all dangers.)**

May all beings be well and happy.



## Appendix 1

## Glossary of Untranslated Pāḷi

This glossary contains the Pāḷi terms left untranslated in the text. They have been left untranslated because the English translation has, in some way or other, been considered awkward or inadequate, if not misleading. The definitions have been kept as concise as at all possible, and refer to the meaning of the terms as they are used in the text of this book: according to the Theravāda tradition. For more extensive explanations, the reader is referred to the text itself, where most of the terms are, at some time or other, discussed. (An asterisk indicates which of the terms are discussed in the text itself.)

Some of the terms in this glossary do have an adequate translation, but have been retained in the Pāḷi when in compounds, as in for example, ‘ānāpānā-jhāna’, rather than ‘in-and-out-breath jhāna’, for obvious reasons.

**Abhidhamma** third of what are called the Three Baskets (*Tiṭṭaka*) of Theravāda Canon; practical teachings of The Buddha that deal with only ultimate reality, seen in Vipassanā meditation. (cf. sutta)

**ānāpāna\*** in-and-out-breath; subject for Samatha meditation and later Vipassanā. (cf. Samatha)

**arahant\*** person who has attained ultimate in meditation, i.e. enlightenment, and has eradicated all defilements; at his or her death (*Parinibbāna*) there is no further rebirth. (cf. kamma, Parinibbāna)

**Bhante** Venerable Sir.

**bhavaṅga\*** continuity of identical consciousnesses, broken only when cognitive-processes occur; the object is that of near-death consciousness in past-life. (cf. Abhidhamma)

**bhikkhu / bhikkhunī** Buddhist monk / nun; bhikkhu with two hundred and twenty-seven main precepts, and hundreds of lesser precepts to observe; in Theravāda bhikkhunī lineage no longer extant.

**bodhisatta\*** a person who has vowed to become a Buddha; the ideal in Mahāyāna tradition; he is a bodhisatta for innumerable lives prior to his enlightenment, after which he is a Buddha, until He in that life attains Parinibbāna. (cf. Buddha, Parinibbāna)

**brahmā\*** inhabitant of one of twenty in thirty-one realms very much higher than human realm; invisible to human eye, visible in light of concentration. (cf. deva, peta)

**Buddha\*** a person fully enlightened without a teacher, who has by Himself re-discovered and teaches the Four Noble Truths; being also an arahant, there is at His death (*Parinibbāna*) no further rebirth. (cf. arahant, bodhisatta, Paccekabuddha, Parinibbāna)

**deva** inhabitant of realm just above human realm; invisible to human-eye, visible in light of concentration. (cf. brahmā, peta)

**Dhamma\*** (capitalized) the Teachings of The Buddha; the Noble Truth.

**dhamma\*** (uncapitalized) phenomenon; state; mind-object.

**jhāna\*** eight increasingly advanced and subtle states of concentration on a specific object, with mind aware and increasingly pure. (cf. Samatha)

**kalāpa\*** small particle; the smallest unit of materiality seen in conventional reality; invisible to human eye, visible in light of concentration.

**kamma\*** (Sanskrit: *karma*) action; force from volition that makes good actions produce good results, and bad actions produce bad results.

**kaṣiṇa\*** meditation object that represents a quality in conventional reality, e.g. earth, colour, space and light; used for Samatha meditation. (cf. Samatha)

**Mahāyāna** Buddhist tradition prevalent in China, Taiwan, Korea, Japan, Mongolia, Nepal, and Bhutan, and Tibet. (The majority of the listeners at these talks were Mahāyāna monks and nuns.) (cf. Theravāda)

**Mahāthera** Buddhist monk of twenty years standing or more.

**Nibbāna\*** (Sanskrit: *Nirvana*) final enlightenment; the cessation element; an ultimate reality; attained after discerning and surpassing the ultimate realities of mentality-materiality; it is seen after the insight knowledges have matured; it is non-self and uniquely permanent and peaceful: not a place.

**nimitta\*** sign; image upon which yogi concentrates; product of the mind, which depends on perception and level of concentration. (cf. kaṣiṇa)

- **parikamma-nimitta** preparatory sign in meditation.
- **uggaha-nimitta** taken-up sign; image that is exact mental replica of object of meditation.
- **pa ibhāga-nimitta** purified and clear version of uggaha-nimitta; appears at stable perception and concentration.

**Paccekabuddha** person enlightened without a teacher, who has by Himself discovered the Four Noble Truths, but does not teach. (cf. Buddha)

**Pāḷi** ancient Indian language spoken by The Buddha; all Theravāda texts are in Pāḷi, language is otherwise dead.

**pāramī** (*pāra* = other shore = Nibbāna; *mī* = reach) ten pāramī s: generosity, morality, renunciation, wisdom, energy, patience, truthfulness, determination, loving-kindness, and equanimity; qualities developed always for the benefit of others, although the pāramī is distinguished from merit in that the aim is Nibbāna.

**parikamma-nimitta** please see **nimitta**

**Parinibbāna** death of a Buddha, a Paccekabuddha, and all other Arahants, after which there is no further rebirth, no more materiality, and no more mentality. (cf. arahant, Nibbāna)

**pātibhāga-nimitta** please see **nimitta**

**peta** inhabitant of realm lower than human realm, but higher than animals; invisible to human eye; visible in light of concentration.

**rūpa / arūpa\*** materiality / immateriality.

**Samatha\*** serenity; practice of concentrating the mind on an object to develop higher and higher states of concentration, whereby the mind becomes increasingly serene. (cf. jhāna, Vipassanā)

**saṅgha** multitude, assembly; bhikkhus of past, present and future, worldwide, as a group; separate group of bhikkhus, e.g. bhikkhus in one monastery. (cf. bhikkhu)

**sīla** morality, moral factors of the Noble Eightfold Path: right speech, right action, right livelihood; to be observed and cultivated by all Buddhists to varying degrees. (cf. bhikkhu)

**sutta** single discourse in second basket of what is called the Three Baskets (*Tipiṭaka*) of Pāḷi Canon; teachings of The Buddha on a general and conventional level. (cf. Abhidhamma)

**Tathāgata** one who has gone thus; epithet used by The Buddha when referring to Himself.

**Theravāda** Buddhist tradition prevalent in Sri-Lanka, Thailand, Myanmar (Burma), Laos, Cambodia. (The Pa-Auk Sayadaw is a Theravāda monk.) (cf. Mahāyāna)

**uggaha-nimitta** please see **nimitta**

**Vipassanā** insight, discernment of specific characteristics of materiality and mentality, causes and results, in ultimate reality, and their general characteristics of impermanence, suffering, and non-self. (cf. Abhidhamma, arahant, Nibbāna)

**Visuddhi Magga** (*Purification Path*) authoritative and extensive instruction manual on meditation, compiled from ancient, orthodox Sinhalese translations of the even earlier Pāḷi Commentaries (predominantly 'The Ancients' (*Porāṇā*), dating back to the time of The Buddha and the First Council), as well as later Sinhalese Commentaries, and translated back

into Pāḷi by Indian scholar monk Venerable Buddhaghosa (approx. 500 A.C.).

Appendix 2

**Contact Addresses**

For information regarding Pa-Auk Centres, please contact:

**Myanmar**

The Venerable Pa-Auk Tawya Sayadaw  
Pa-Auk Forest Monastery  
c/o Major Kan Saing (Rtd.)  
653 Lower Main Road  
Mawlamyine Mon State

U Nay Tun .....(Tel: (95) 1-661-235)  
2 Thazinmyaing Lane  
Parami Avenue, Yankin Post Office  
Yangon

---

**Singapore**

Cakkavala Meditation Centre.....(e-mail: cakkavala\_sg@yahoo.com.sg)  
Blk 10 Pandan Loop #01-152  
Singapore 128228

*Contact persons:*

Lu Ah Lian Esq. ....(Tel: (65) 65-64-5030)  
Ms Ng Pei Fuen.....(Tel: (65) 98-52-8046)

---

**Sri Lanka**

The Venerable N. Ariyadhamma Mahāthera  
Sri Gunawardāna Yogasramaya  
Galduwa Kahawa 80312

---

**United States of America**

Roland K. Win Esq.....(Tel: (01) 650-994-3750)  
15 Palmdale Avenue (Fax: (01) 650-994-6091)  
Daly City CA 94015 (e-mail: Rolandkwin@aol.com)

